KONICA MINOLTA

The essentials of imaging

bizhub PRO 1200/1051

User's Guide

POD Administrator's Reference



1 Introduction
2 Tray Setting
3 Adjustment
4 Controller Setting
5 Settings on Utility Menu Screen
6 Administrator Setting
7 Web Utilities Setting
8 PageScope Web Connection Setting
9 Appendix
10 Index

bizhub PRO 1200/1051

POD Administrator's Reference

User's Guide

Contents

1 Introduction

1.1 Composition of User's Guide 1-2

1.2 Outline of Machine Status Screen Settings 1-4

1.3 Outline of Utility Menu Settings 1-10

1.4 Outline of Browser Settings 1-12

1.4.1 Web Utilities 1-12

1.4.2 PageScope Web Connection 1-13

2 Tray Setting

2.1 Tray Setting Outlines 2-2

2.1.1 Setting Paper Size 2-2

2.1.2 Setting Items in Paper Setting 2-2

2.1.3 Air Assist Function 2-4

2.1.4 Paper Type Specifications 2-4

2.2 Specifying Tray Setting for Trays 1 to 8 2-7

2.3 Changing Paper Type/Weight Already Specified for a Tray 2-16

2.4 Specifying Tray Setting for PI Trays 2-25

2.4.1 Changing Paper Size Detected for Insert Sheet in PI Trays 2-25

2.4.2 Specifying Tray Setting for Cover of Perfect Binding in PI Trays 2-28

2.5 Specifying Tray Setting for PI-PFU Trays 2-34

2.5.1 Specifying Tray Setting for Cover of Insert Sheet in PI-PFU Trays 2-34

2.5.2 Specifying Tray Setting for Cover of Perfect Binding in PI-PFU Trays 2-41

2.6 Specifying Tray Setting for PB Tray 2-47

2.6.1 Specifying Tray Setting for Cover of Perfect Binding in PB Tray . 2-47

2.7 Registering Paper Setting 2-54

2.8 Deleting Paper Setting 2-61

2.9 Registering/Deleting Custom Sizes 2-63

2.9.1 Registering/Editing Custom Sizes 2-63

2.9.2 Deleting Registered Custom Sizes 2-66

3 Adjustment

3.1 Function Overview 3-2

3.2 Machine Adjustment 3-10

3.2.1 01 Magnification Adjustment \ 01 Printer FD-Mag. Adjustment <Side1> 3-10

3.2.2 01 Magnification Adjustment \ 02 Printer FD-Mag. Adjustment <Side2> 3-12

3.2.3 01 Magnification Adjustment \ 03 Printer CD-Mag. Adjustment <Side1> 3-14

3.2.4 01 Magnification Adjustment \ 04 Printer CD-Mag. Adjustment <Side2> 3-16

3.2.5 02 Timing Adjustment \ 01 Printer Restart Timing <Side1> 3-18

3.2.6 02 Timing Adjustment \ 02 Printer Restart Timing <Side2> 3-20

3.2.7 02 Timing Adjustment \ 03 Scanner Restart Timing Adjustment ..3-22

3.2.8 02 Timing Adjustment \ 04 ADF Restart Timing Adjustment 3-24

3.2.9 03 Centering Adjustment \ 01 Printer Centering Adjustment 3-26

3.2.10 04 LPH Adjustment \ 01 Gap Adjustment between LPH Chips ...3-28

3.3 02 Finisher Adjustment (FS-521) 3-31

3.3.1 01 Stapler Position Adjustment \ 01 Staple Center Position Adjustment 3-31

3.3.2 01 Stapler Position Adjustment \ 02 Paper Width Adjustment 3-33

3.3.3 01 Stapler Position Adjustment \ 03 Exit Guide Center Position Adjustment 3-36

3.3.4 01 Stapler Position Adjustment \ 04 Exit Guide Paper Width Adjustment 3-40

3.4 02 Finisher Adjustment (FD-503) 3-43

3.4.1 02 Multi Folder (Hole-Punch) Adjustment \ 01 Paper Width Adjustment 3-43

3.4.2 02 Multi Folder (Hole-Punch) Adjustment \ 02 Hole-Punch Vertical Position Adjustment 3-45

3.4.3 03 Multi Folder (Fold) Adjustment \ 01 Half Fold Position Adjustment 3-48

3.4.4 03 Multi Folder (Fold) Adjustment \ 02 Tri-Fold-in Position Adjustment 3-50

3.4.5 03 Multi Folder (Fold) Adjustment \ 03 Tri-Fold-out Position Adjustment 3-54

3.4.6 03 Multi Folder (Fold) Adjustment \ 04 Double Parallel Position Adjustment 3-57
3.4.7 03 Multi Folder (Fold) Adjustment \ 05 Z-Fold Position Adjustment 3-60
3.4.8 03 Multi Folder (Fold) Adjustment \ 06 Gate Position Adjustment 3-63
3.5 02 Finisher Adjustment (LS-505) 3-66
3.5.1 04 Stacker Adjustment \ 01 Paper Width Adjustment 3-66
3.5.2 04 Stacker Adjustment \ 02 Paper Length Adjustment 3-68
3.6 02 Finisher Adjustment (SD-506) 3-70
3.6.1 05 Saddle Stitcher Adjustment \ 01 Staple Center Adjustment ... 3-70
3.6.2 05 Saddle Stitcher Adjustment \ 02 Staple Paper Width Adjustment 3-72
3.6.3 05 Saddle Stitcher Adjustment \ 03 Staple Pitch Adjustment 3-75
3.6.4 05 Saddle Stitcher Adjustment \ 04 Half Fold Position Adjustment 3-78
3.6.5 05 Saddle Stitcher Adjustment \ 05 Tri-Fold Position Adjustment 3-80
3.6.6 05 Saddle Stitcher Adjustment \ 06 Fold Paper Width Adjustment 3-83
3.6.7 05 Saddle Stitcher Adjustment \ 07 Trimming Adjustment 3-85
3.6.8 05 Saddle Stitcher Adjustment \ 08 Trimmer Receiver Adjustment 3-88
3.7 02 Finisher Adjustment (PB-502/PB-503) 3-91
3.7.1 06 Perfect Binder Adjustment \ 01 Cover Trimming Adjustment . 3-91
3.7.2 06 Perfect Binder Adjustment \ 02 Cover Lead Edge Adjustment 3-93
3.7.3 06 Perfect Binder Adjustment \ 03 Spine Corner Form Position Adjustment 3-96
3.7.4 06 Perfect Binder Adjustment \ 04 Glue Start Position Adjustment 3-98
3.7.5 06 Perfect Binder Adjustment \ 05 Glue Finish Position Adjustment 3-101
3.7.6 06 Perfect Binder Adjustment \ 06 Glue Form Finish Position Adjustment 3-104
3.7.7 06 Perfect Binder Adjustment \ 07 Temperature Adjustment 3-106
3.7.8 06 Perfect Binder Adjustment \ 08 Sub Compile CD Width Adjustment 3-109

3.7.9 06 Perfect Binder Adjustment \ 09 Clamp CD Width Adjustment 3-111
3.7.10 06 Perfect Binder Adjustment \ 10 Cover Up/Down CD Width Adjustment 3-114
3.7.11 06 Perfect Binder Adjustment \ 11 Clamp FD Position Adjustment 3-116
3.8 Finisher Adjustment (RU-506) 3-118
3.8.1 07 Relay Stacker Adjustment \ 01 Paper Width Adjustment 3-118
3.8.2 07 Relay Stacker Adjustment \ 02 Paper Length Adjustment 3-121
3.9 03 Size Memory Recovery Mode 3-123
3.10 04 Charge Manual Cleaning 3-124
3.11 05 Sensitive Drum Memory Recovery Mode 3-125

4 Controller Setting

4.1 Function Overview 4-2
4.1.1 List of the Controller Setting 4-2
4.2 01 Report Type 4-9
4.3 02 Printer Setting 4-10
4.4 03 Select Printer Setting 4-16
4.5 04 Spool Print Jobs in HDD before RIP 4-17
4.6 05 I/F Timeout 4-18
4.7 06 Plug-in Form Password 4-19
4.8 07 Scan Setting 4-21
4.9 08 Administrator Setting 4-23

5 Settings on Utility Menu Screen

5.1 Outlines of Settings on Utility Menu Screen 5-2
5.1.1 How to Access the Utility Menu Screen 5-2
5.1.2 List of Utility Menu Settings 5-4
5.2 01 System Setting 5-10
5.2.1 01 Language Setting 5-10
5.2.2 02 Unit Setting 5-11
5.2.3 03 Buzzer Setting - 01 Buzzer On/Off, Volume Setting 5-12
5.2.4 03 Buzzer Setting - 02 Buzzer for Job Stop Setting 5-13
5.2.5 04 1 Shot Message Indication Time 5-14
5.2.6 05 Default Screen Setting 5-15

5.2.7 06 Auto Reset Setting 5-16
5.2.8 07 Key Response Time 5-17
5.2.9 08 Change User Password 5-18
5.2.10 09 Shortcut Key Register - 01 Copy Application Register 5-20
5.2.11 09 Shortcut Key Register - 02 Copy Output Setting Register 5-21
5.2.12 09 Shortcut Key Register - 03 Function Key Register 5-22
5.2.13 09 Shortcut Key Register- 04 Scan Application Register 5-24
5.3 02 Function Setting 5-25
5.3.1 01 Feed Tray Setting - 01 Feed Tray Auto Selection 5-25
5.3.2 01 Feed Tray Setting - 02 ATS Permit 5-27
5.3.3 01 Feed Tray Setting - 03 ATS Setting 5-28
5.3.4 01 Feed Tray Setting - 04 PFU Preliminary Dry Setting 5-29
5.3.5 01 Feed Tray Setting - 05 Auto Paper Type 5-30
5.3.6 02 Individual Function Change Setting 5-31
5.3.7 03 Curl Reform Direction 5-34
5.3.8 04 Skew Detection Threshold 5-35
5.3.9 05 Lead Edge Image Erase 5-36
5.3.10 06 Density Setting - 01 Density by Original Type 5-37
5.3.11 06 Density Setting - 02 Preset Density Setting 5-39
5.3.12 06 Density Setting - 03 Photo Mode Density Selection 5-40
5.3.13 06 Density Setting - 04 Image Density Selection 5-41
5.3.14 07 User Preset Zoom Setting 5-42
5.4 03 Copy Setting 5-43
5.4.1 01 Reset Setting - 01 Initial Setting 5-43
5.4.2 01 Reset Setting - 02 Reset Function Setting 5-45
5.4.3 01 Reset Setting - 03 Initial by Key Counter Insert 5-46
5.4.4 02 Individual Function Change Setting 5-47
5.5 04 Scan Setting 5-49
5.5.1 01 Default Destination Setting 5-49
5.5.2 02 Scan Initial Setting 5-51
5.5.3 03 Individual Function Change 5-52
5.6 05 Touch Panel Adjustment 5-54

6 Administrator Setting

6.1 Administrator Setting Outlines 6-2

6.1.1 How to access the Administrator Setting Menu Screen 6-2
6.1.2 List of the Administrator Setting 6-4
6.2 01 System Setting 6-12
6.2.1 01 Power Save Setting 6-12
6.2.2 02 Time and Date Setting 6-14
6.2.3 03 Weekly Timer Setting 6-16
6.2.4 03 Weekly Timer Setting - 01 Weekly Timer On/Off Setting 6-16
6.2.5 03 Weekly Timer Setting - 02 Timer Reserve Setting 6-18
6.2.6 03 Weekly Timer Setting - 03 Timer Action On/Off Setting 6-20
6.2.7 03 Weekly Timer Setting - 04 Lunch Hour Off Setting 6-22
6.2.8 03 Weekly Timer Setting - 05 Timer Interrupt Password 6-23
6.2.9 04 Management List Print 6-24
6.2.10 05 Restrict User Access Setting 6-27
6.2.11 06 Expert Adjustment - 01 Printer Quality Adjustment 6-30
6.2.12 06 Expert Adjustment - 02 Original Scan Area Setting 6-31
6.2.13 06 Expert Adjustment - 03 ADF Frame Erase Setting 6-32
6.2.14 06 Expert Adjustment - 04 Non-Image Area Erase Setting 6-33
6.2.15 06 Expert Adjustment - 05 Scan Quality Adjustment 6-34
6.2.16 07 Size Setting 6-35
6.2.17 08 Annotation Setting 6-36
6.2.18 09Perfect Binding Setting\ 01 Useful Paper Weight 6-44
6.2.19 09 Perfect Binding Setting\ 02 Paper Count Limit 6-46
6.2.20 09 Perfect Binding Setting\ 03 Unfitting Cover Stop 6-47
6.2.21 10 Keyboard Type Setting 6-48
6.2.22 11 Screen Customize Setting\ 01 Font Weight Setting 6-49
6.2.23 11 Screen Customize Setting\ 02 Copy Screen Customize Setting 6-50
6.2.24 11 Screen Customize Setting\ 03 Scan Screen Customize Setting 6-51
6.2.25 11 Screen Customize Setting\ 04 Store Screen Customize Set ...6-52
6.3 02 Admin./Machine Setting 6-53
6.3.1 01 Register Administrator 6-53
6.4 03 User Auth./ Account Track 6-56
6.4.1 01 Authentication Method - 01 Authentication Setting 6-59
6.4.2 01 Authentication Method - 02 Account Track Setting 6-62

6.4.3 02 Account Track 6-64
6.4.4 03 User Authentication Setting 6-71
6.4.5 04 Non Registered User/Output Setting 6-79
6.5 04 Network Setting 6-80
6.5.1 01 Machine NIC Setting - 01 TCP/IP Setting 6-80
6.5.2 01 Machine NIC Setting - 02 http communication setting 6-82
6.5.3 01 Machine NIC Setting - 03 E-mail initial setting 6-83
6.5.4 02 Controller NIC Setting 6-84
6.5.5 List of IP NIC Setting 6-85
6.6 05 Copy/Printer Setting 6-99
6.6.1 01 Offset Setting - 01 Job Offset Operating 6-99
6.6.2 01 Offset Setting - 02 Offset Output Mode Setting 6-101
6.6.3 02 Continuation Print (Printer) 6-102
6.6.4 03 Page No. Position (Booklet) 6-103
6.6.5 04 Fixing Pre-rotation Setting 6-104
6.6.6 05 Sample Print Setting 6-105
6.6.7 06 Proof Print (1st Sheet) Setting 6-107
6.6.8 07 Automatic Image Rotation Setting 6-108
6.6.9 08 Interruption Suspend Setting 6-109
6.6.10 09 Copy Reserve Operation 6-110
6.6.11 10 Scan Stop by Pulling Out Tray 6-111
6.6.12 11 Continuation Print (Copy) 6-112
6.6.13 12 Original Glass SDF Method 6-113
6.6.14 13 SDF Auto Setting 6-114
6.7 06 System Connection 6-115
6.7.1 01 User Call 6-115
6.8 08 Scan Destination Register 6-116
6.8.1 01 Destination Address Edit/Delete 6-116
6.9 07 Security Setting 6-125
6.9.1 01 Administrator Password 6-125
6.9.2 02 HDD Management Setting - 01 Folder/User Box List Delete 6-127
6.9.3 02 HDD Management Setting - 02 HDD Data Auto Delete Period 6-130
6.9.4 02 HDD Management Setting - 03 Change HDD Lock Password 6-131

6.9.5 02 HDD Management Setting - 04 Delete Temporary Data 6-133
6.9.6 02 HDD Management Setting - 05 Delete All Data 6-134
6.9.7 02 HDD Management Setting - 06 HDD Encryption Setting 6-135
6.9.8 03 Security Strengthen Mode 6-136

7 Web Utilities Setting

7.1 Web Utilities Outlines 7-2
7.2 Setting Account Track Data 7-4
7.2.1 Adding Account Track 7-4
7.2.2 Editing Account Track Data 7-7
7.3 Remote Panel Setting/Job History Setting 7-15
7.4 Setting Scan Transmission Function 7-18
7.5 Transmitting Machine Setting File 7-24
7.6 Using Box Explorer 7-32
7.6.1 Displaying the Box Explorer Screen 7-33
7.6.2 Operation for HDD of the Main Body 7-34
7.6.3 Operation for CD/DVD Drive Externally Connected to the Connection Port of the Main Body 7-37
7.6.4 Operation for USB memory/USB-HDD Externally Connected to the Connection Port of the Main Body 7-40
7.6.5 Exiting Box Explorer from Control Panel of the Main Body 7-42
7.7 Displaying Job History 7-44
7.7.1 Turning On/Off Job History 7-44
7.7.2 Displaying Job History List 7-46

8 PageScope Web Connection Setting

8.1 PageScope Web Connection Outlines 8-2
8.1.1 System Requirements 8-2
8.1.2 Web Browser Settings 8-3
8.2 Access 8-4
8.3 Configuration of Administrator Mode Screen 8-6
8.4 Maintenance Tab 8-8
8.4.1 Meter Count 8-8
8.4.2 ROM Version 8-9
8.4.3 Import/Export 8-9

8.4.4 Status Notification Setting 8-10
8.4.5 Machine Setting 8-12
8.4.6 Online Assistance 8-13
8.4.7 Reset - Network Setting Clear 8-14
8.5 Security Tab 8-15
8.5.1 Authentication 8-15
8.5.2 User Registration 8-16
8.5.3 Account Track Registration 8-18
8.5.4 SSL/TLS Setting - SSL/TLS Setting 8-20
8.5.5 SSL/TLS Setting - Action for Invalid Certificate 8-26
8.5.6 Auto Logout 8-27
8.5.7 Administrator Password Setting 8-28
8.6 Box Tab 8-29
8.7 Print Setting Tab 8-30
8.7.1 Default Setting 8-30
8.7.2 Job Spool Setting 8-33
8.7.3 Interface Setting 8-34
8.7.4 Select Printer Setting 8-35
8.8 Scan Tab 8-36
8.8.1 Subject 8-36
8.8.2 Text 8-37
8.8.3 Scanner Setting 8-39
8.9 Network Tab 8-40
8.9.1 TCP/IP Setting - TCP/IP Setting 8-40
8.9.2 TCP/IP Setting - IP Filtering 8-41
8.9.3 TCP/IP Setting - IPsec Setting 8-42
8.9.4 Time Adjustment Setting 8-45
8.9.5 E-mail RX (POP) 8-45
8.9.6 E-mail TX (SMTP) 8-46
8.9.7 IPP Setting 8-47
8.9.8 FTP Setting - FTP Send Setting 8-48
8.9.9 FTP Setting - FTP Server Setting 8-49
8.9.10 SNMP Setting 8-50
8.9.11 SMB Setting - WINS Setting 8-50

8.9.12 SMB Setting - Client Setting 8-51
8.9.13 SMB Setting - Print Setting 8-52
8.9.14 Web Service Setting - Web Service Setting 8-53
8.9.15 Web Service Setting - Print Setting 8-54
8.9.16 Web Service Setting - Scanner Settings 8-55
8.9.17 Bonjour Setting 8-56
8.9.18 NetWare Setting - NetWare Setting 8-57
8.9.19 NetWare Setting - NetWare Status 8-58
8.9.20 AppleTalk Setting 8-58
8.9.21 OpenAPI Setting 8-59
8.9.22 TCP Socket Setting 8-60
8.9.23 JSP Setting 8-61

9 Appendix

9.1 How to Input Characters 9-2
9.2 Importable/Exportable Setting Data - Devices 9-4
9.3 Importable/Exportable Setting Data - Counters 9-10
9.4 Importable/Exportable Setting Data - Authentication 9-11
9.5 Demo Page 9-12
9.6 PCL Font List 9-21
9.7 Glossary 9-24

10 Index

1 Introduction

1 Introduction

1.1 Composition of User's Guide

This machine is provided with the following user's guides.

User's Guide - Copier (Printed matters), (User's Guide CD)

This guide describes an outline of the machine and copy operations.

Please refer to this guide for safety information, turning on/off the machine, paper supply, dealing with machine trouble such as paper jam, and copy operation available on the machine.

User's Guide - POD Administrator's Reference <This book> (Printed matters), (User's Guide CD)

This guide provides you with detailed information about the machine management and how to customize the machine according to your daily use.

Please refer to this guide for a setup and management of the machine including registration of copy paper, tray setting, and a network setup.

User's Guide - Security (Printed matters), (User's Guide CD)

This guide describes the security functions.

Please refer to this guide for how to use the Enhanced Security mode, and for detailed machine operation in Enhanced Security mode.

User's Guide - Network Scanner (Printed matters), (User's Guide CD)

This guide describes the operation of the network scanner function equipped for the machine as standard.

Please refer to this guide for full information on reading data or storing data (Scan to HDD, Scan to E-mail, Scan to FTP, Scan to SMB).

Trademarks/Copyrights (User's Guide CD)

This guide describes trademarks, licenses, and copyrights concerning this machine.

Be sure to read this guide before using the machine.

User's Guide - Printer (User's Guide CD)

This guide describes the operation of the printer function equipped for the machine.

Please refer to this guide for how to use PCL driver, Adobe PS driver, and PageScope Web Connection in user mode.

User's Guide - Printer (PostScript3 Plug-in Driver) (User's Guide CD)

This guide describes the operation of the printer function equipped for the machine as standard.

Please refer to this guide for how to use Plug-in driver in user mode.

Operation Quick Guide (Printed matters)

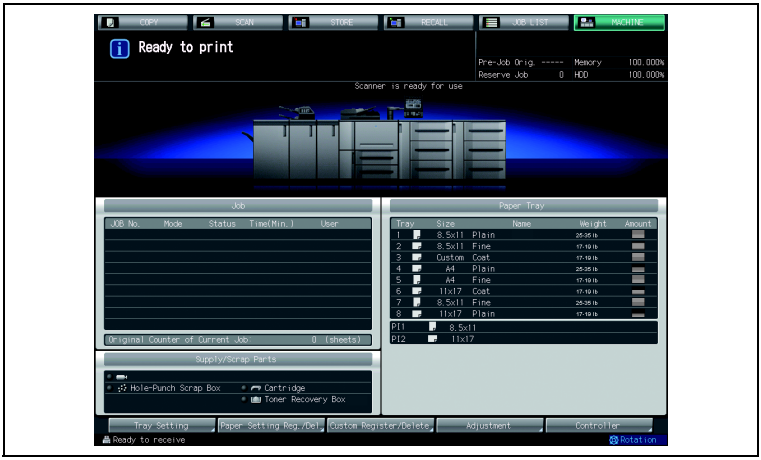
The descriptions given in this guide are excerpts from the operation section of frequently used functions.

Please refer to this guide for quick comprehension of various features available on the machine.

To operate sefely, be sure to read "Section 1: Precautions for Installation and Use" in User's Guide - Copier before using the machine.

1.2 Outline of Machine Status Screen Settings

The [Tray Setting], [Paper Setting Reg./Del.], [Custom Register/Delete], [Adjustment], and [Controller] keys are located at the bottom of the Machine Status Screen to display each setting screen.



Detail

The machine can be set to display the [Both Sides Adj.] key. Contact your service representative for details.

[Tray Setting] key:

Touch [Tray Setting] on the Machine Status Screen. The Tray Setting Screen will be displayed.



Specify each tray size, register paper type/weight setting, and also set air assist function from this screen.

Use [Paper Presetting] provided on the Copy Screen to temporarily change the setting to use paper different from that specified in the tray setting.

Touch [Close] to return to the Machine Status Screen.

[Paper Setting Reg./Del.] key:

Touch [Paper Setting Reg./Del.] on the Machine Status Screen. The Paper Setting Register/Delete Screen will be displayed.

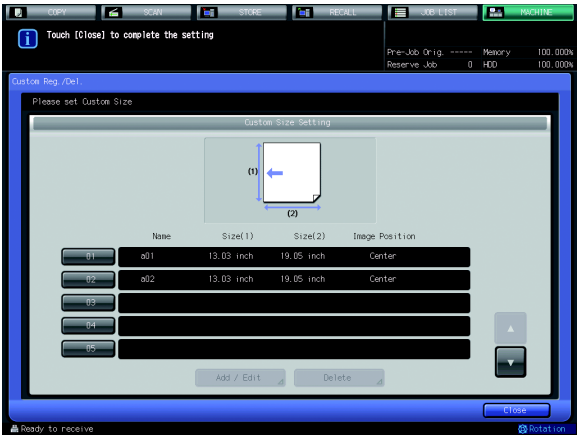


Use this function to register frequently used custom paper setting to be recalled, when specifying the tray setting or paper presetting.

Touch [OK] or [Cancel] to return to the Machine Status Screen.

[Custom Register/Delete] key:

Touch [Custom Register/Delete] on the Machine Status Screen. The Custom Register/Delete Screen will be displayed.

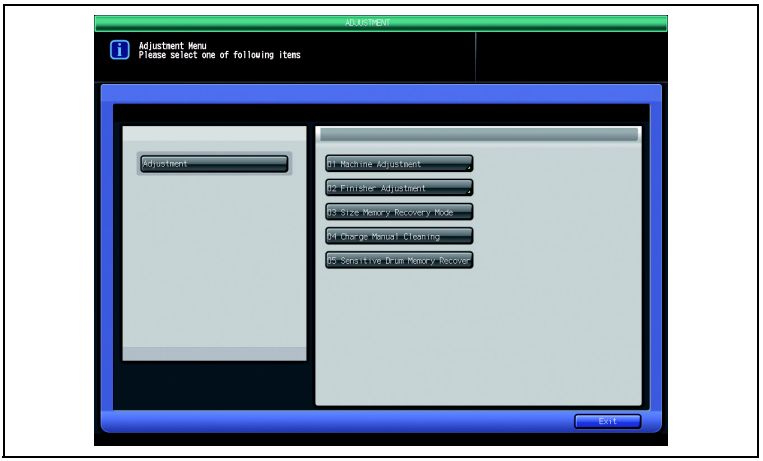


Use this function to register frequently used custom sizes to be recalled in tray setting of the Machine Status Screen and in paper presetting of the Copy Screen.

Touch [Close] to return to the Machine Status Screen.

[Adjustment] key:

Touch [Adjustment] on the Machine Status Screen. The Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

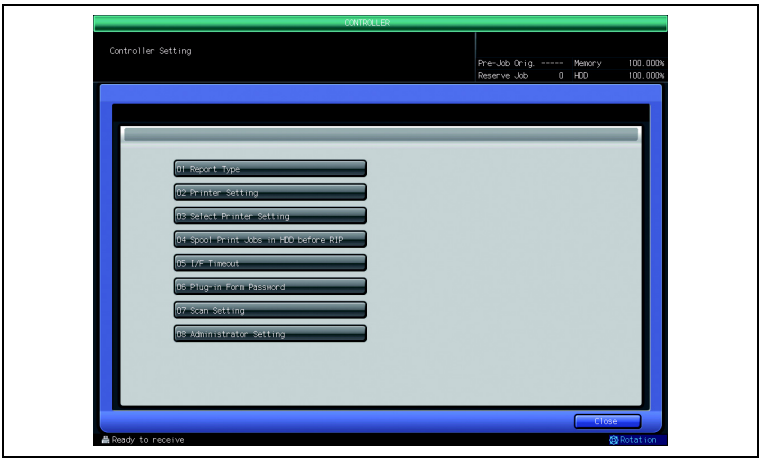


Make adjustments concerning image control and finishing options.

Touch [Exit] to return to the Machine Status Screen.

[Controller] key:

Touch [Controller] on the Machine Status Screen. The Controller Screen will be displayed.



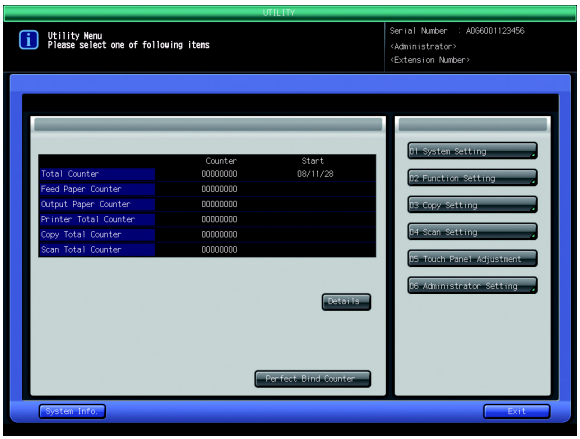
Make settings concerning an optional print controller.

Touch [Close] to return to the Machine Status Screen.

1.3 Outline of Utility Menu Settings

Press the [Utility/Counter] key on the control panel to display the Utility Menu Screen.





The Utility Menu Screen includes two types of setting items: user settings and administrator settings. User settings are available to any user, while administrator settings are supposed to be performed by an administrator, requiring a unique password to access the setting menu.

Note

The administrator settings are initially accessible to the general user. It is recommended to create an administrator who will be the sole person to control the administrator settings. Please contact your service representative to set up an administrator password.

Section 5 includes information on setting items available from the Utility Menu Screen except the administrator settings.

Section 6 provides information on setting items available from the Administrator Setting Menu Screen.

[Exit] on the Utility Menu Screen

Touch [Exit] to exit the Utility mode and resume the screen displayed before pressing [Utility/Counter] on the control panel.

Items available to be forbidden

The following menu item can be forbidden from the Utility Menu Screen. Contact your service representative, if desired.

- Utility Menu - 05 Touch Panel Adjustment

1.4 Outline of Browser Settings



When the machine is connected with a PC over a local network, machine and image controller settings are available using the web browser installed on the PC.

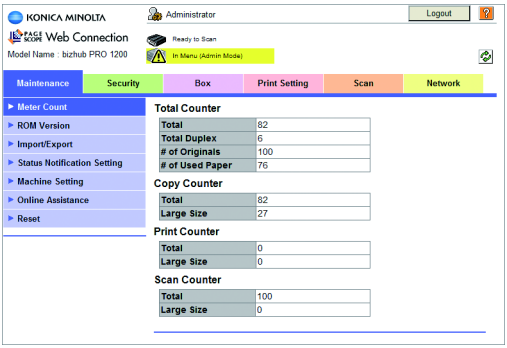
1.4.1 Web Utilities

When the machine is connected with a PC over a network, the web browser activated on the PC provides the following functions.

1. Account Track Setting
   Make the account track settings of the administrator setting using the web browser on a PC.
2. Remote Panel/ Remote Monitor/ Multi Monitor
   Control/monitor the current state of the machine using the web browser on a PC.
3. Scan Transmission Setting
   Register the address for the transmission of the scanned image data using the web browser.
4. Setting Data Import/Export
   Transmit the setting data from the machine to a PC (export) using the web browser, then return the data to the machine (import).
5. Box Explorer
   Perform operation for the box created on the HDD using the web browser on a PC, and also store the data in the CD/DVD or USB memory/USB-HDD, or restore them in the machine.
6. Job History List
   Display the job history list of the machine using the web browser on a PC.

For details, see Section 7: Web Utilities Setting.

1.4.2 PageScope Web Connection



PageScope Web Connection is a device control utility program provided by the HTTP server built into the image controller of the KONICA MINOLTA bizhub PRO 1200/1051.
This utility can be used with a web browser to display the status of the bizhub PRO 1200/1051 printer, scanner and network, and to change default and network settings.

For details, see Section 8: PageScope Web Connection Setting.

2 Tray Setting

2 Tray Setting

2.1 Tray Setting Outlines

This machine provides the optimum print result according to each characteristics of copy paper by specifying paper size, paper type/weight, and air assist function for each tray (Tray Setting).

The paper type/weight can be programmed in advance, and then applied to each tray as required (Register Type/Weight).

The programmed properties can also be altered and newly registered at any time.

2.1.1 Setting Paper Size

Select one of the following four types as paper size.

- Standard
- Custom
- Wide Paper
- Tab Paper (Standard/Custom)

2.1.2 Setting Items in Paper Setting

Paper Type

Select one of the following seven types.
Coat, PrePrinted, Fine, Plain, Book/News, Embossed, Blank Insert

Name

Up to 22 alphanumeric characters can be used.

Weight

Select one of the following ten options.
11–13 lb, 14–16 lb, 17–19 lb, 20–24 lb, 25–35 lb, 36–43 lb, 44–57 lb, 58–65 lb, 66–80 lb, 81–93 lb



Detail

See page 2-4 for details of paper type specifications and relation between paper type and weight.

Colored Paper

Select one of the following six types.
White, Transparent, Yellow, Pink, Blue, Green

Hole-Punch

Select either condition.
Pre-Punched or No Hole-Punch

Both Sides Adjust

Specify the Vertical zoom, Horizontal zoom, Up/Down shift amount, and Right/Left shift amount for both front and back pages.
Vertical: –10 to +10 (in 0.05% increments)
Horizontal: –10 to +10 (in 0.05% increments)
Up/Down: –100 mm to +100 mm (in 0.1 mm increments)
Right/Left: –100 mm to +100 mm (in 0.1 mm increments)

Note

We recommend you performing this adjustment every day or every time the tray is loaded with different type of paper, because the coefficient of contraction varies according to the paper type, brand, or the difference in temperature and humidity of paper repository.

Chart Adjustment

Perform the Both Sides Adjustment by outputting a chart.
Setting range: 0.0–999.9

Process Adjustment

Perform the Transfer Offset Adjustment and Pressure Power Setting.

2.1.3 Air Assist Function

Use the Air Assist function to blow air to the paper from the following paper guides inside the tray in order to prevent feeding troubles such as feeding no paper or feeding multiple sheets.

- Main body tray (Tray 1 and 2)
- Paper Feeding Unit PF-702 (Tray 3 to 8)
- Paper Feeding Unit with Suction Feeding System PF-703 (Tray 3 to 8)
- Cover tray with Perfect Binder PB-502/PB-503

Main body tray (Tray 1 and 2) and Paper Feeding Unit PF-702 (Tray 3 to 8)

Select one of the following three conditions.

Auto: Automatically turned on/off according to the feeding timing.
On: Turned on irrespective of the paper type.
Off: Turned off irrespective of the paper type.

Paper Feeding Unit with Suction Feeding System PF-703 (Tray 3 to 8) and Paper Feeding Unit with Suction Feeding System PI-PFU (PI-PFU 1 to 3)

Select one of the following two conditions.

Auto: Automatically adjust the strength of the air blown to the lead/side edge.
Manual: Manually select the strength of the air blown to the top/side edge.

Cover tray with Perfect Binder PB-502/PB-503

Select one of the following two conditions.

On: Turned on
Off: Turned off

2.1.4 Paper Type Specifications

The following five paper types are provided according to the plainness of paper, etc.

Coat
The coated paper is an art paper or coated paper, applied approximately 20 to 40 g of coating per 1 m^2 to on top of both side of fine paper. The coated paper is mostly used for luxury art books, calendars, car brochures, books, magazines, leaflets, and posters. Always specify [Coat] to a tray to which the coated paper is loaded.

PrePrinted
Specify [PrePrinted] when overlay printing on the offset printed coated paper. If a trouble occurs in feeding the coated paper when [Coat] is specified, select [PrePrinted].



Detail

Load the preprinted paper in Paper Feeding Unit with Suction Feeding System PF-703 (Tray 3 to 8). Do not load in the main body tray (Tray 1 and 2).

To load preprinted paper in Paper Feeding Unit PF-702, the optional Pre-Printed Paper Feeding Kit PP-701 is required to be installed. Contact your service representative, if desired.

Fine

The fine paper is non-coated paper generally used for offset printing. The fine paper has a high degree of whiteness and used for various purposes.

Plain

The plain paper is used for copying in general and is called “PPC paper”. The plain paper is usually not recycled paper; however, select [Plain] for the tray in which recycled paper is loaded.

Book/News

The Book/News paper is used for a body part of a book. It is a highly opaque paper to prevent prints to be seen from the back, or a cream-colored paper for ease of reading. Specify [Book/News] to a tray to which this type of paper is loaded.

Embossed

The embossed paper has a non-smooth surface on which toner is hard to be fixed. Fine paper types such as book paper and cotton paper are included in this category.

Blank Insert

The Blank Insert is not a category of paper type. This is for the paper only to be fed without being printed. When With Cover/Blank or Blank mode of Insert Sheet is used, select [Blank Insert] for the tray in which paper only to be fed is loaded.

Paper Weight Conversion Chart

Paper type / Basic size / Paper weight (g/m^2)	Bond (lb)	Book 25 x 28 (lb)	Bristol 22.5 x 28.5 (lb)	Cover 20 x 26 (lb)	Index 25.5 x 30.5 (lb)	Tag 24 x 36 (lb)
40 - 49 g/m^2	11 - 12	28 - 32	19 - 21	15 - 17	23 - 26	25 - 29
50 - 61 g/m^2	13 - 16	33 -41	22 - 27	18 - 22	27 - 33	30 -36
62 - 71 g/m^2	17 - 19	42 - 49	28 - 32	23 - 26	34 - 39	37 - 44
72 - 91 g/m^2	20 - 24	50 -61	33 - 41	27 - 33	40 - 50	45 - 55
92 - 130 g/m^2	25 - 34	62 - 87	42 - 58	34 - 47	51 - 71	56 - 79
131 - 161 g/m^2	35 - 42	88 - 107	59 - 72	48 - 58	72 - 87	80 - 97
162 - 216 g/m^2	43 - 57	108 - 146	73 - 98	59 - 80	88 - 119	98 - 133
217 - 244 g/m^2	58 - 65	147 - 165	99 - 111	81 - 90	120 -135	134 - 150
245 - 300 g/m^2	66 - 80	166 - 203	112 - 137	91 - 111	136 - 166	151 - 185
301 - 350 g/m^2	81 - 93	204 - 235	138 - 159	112 - 129	167 - 193	186 - 215

...

Note

The Help Screen provides the paper weight conversion table.
Press [Help] on the control panel to display the Help Screen and find it from the Top Menu, if desired.

2.2 Specifying Tray Setting for Trays 1 to 8

Select a paper size, programmed paper type/weight, and air assist function for each tray.

Reminder

When setting a wide paper size, be sure to specify actual dimensions of the paper to be used. The dimensions of wide sizes provided on the screen are not precisely specified in the initial setting.

Procedure

1 Touch [Tray Setting] on the Machine Status Screen.

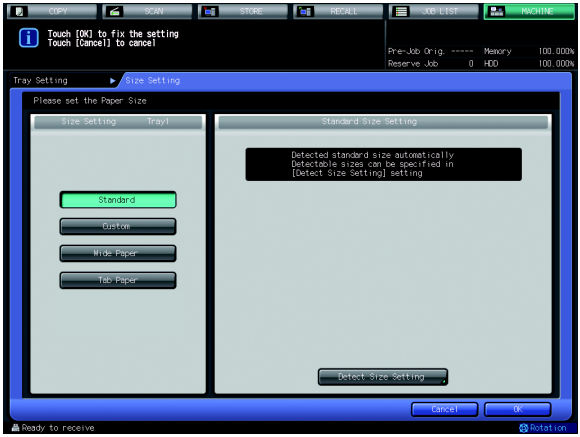


2 Touch the tray key ([Tray 1] to [Tray 8]) to be specified, then touch [Change Set] on the right side of “Paper Size”.



The Size Setting Screen will be displayed.

3 To set a standard size, touch [Standard] to highlight it.

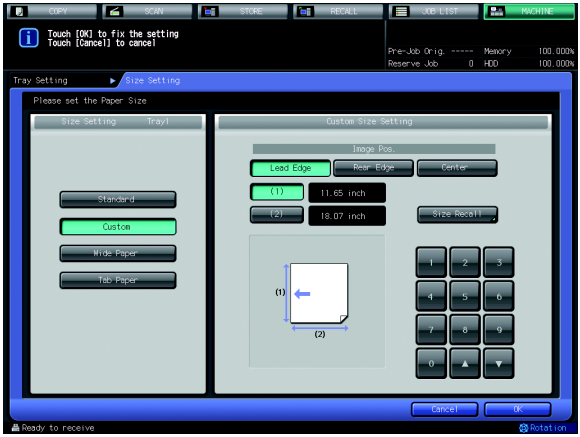


– If the selected tray is to be loaded with one of the following sizes, touch [Detect Size Setting] to specify the desired size from the screen: 5.5" × 8.5" ▯, 12" × 18" ▭, 8" × 13" ▭, 8.12" × 13.2" ▭, 8.25" × 13" ▭, 8.5" × 13" ▭
If 5.5" × 8.5" ▯ is selected on the Detect Size Setting Screen, the machine will automatically detect 5.5" × 8.5" ▯ instead of A5 ▯. Similarly, 12" × 18" ▭ will be detected instead of SRA3 ▭, and 8" × 13" ▭, 8.12" × 13.2" ▭, 8.25" × 13" ▭, 8.5" × 13" ▭ instead of 8.5" × 14" ▭.



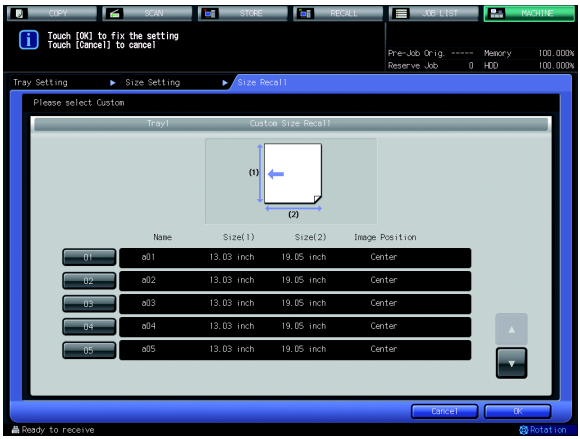
– Touch [OK] to complete the setting, then proceed to step 7.

4 To set a custom size, touch [Custom] to highlight it, then specify its dimensions.



– Use the vertical/horizontal size key and touch panel keypad, or arrow keys [▲] [▼] to enter the dimensions.
Available dimensions vary depending on the tray to be specified.
For details, see Section 3 of the User's Guide - Copier.

– Touch [Lead Edge], [Rear Edge], or [Center] to specify the desired image position.
– To use a custom size previously registered, touch [Size Recall]. Using [▲] [▼] buttons to scroll to the desired entry on the list, touch its number key to highlight it, then touch [OK].

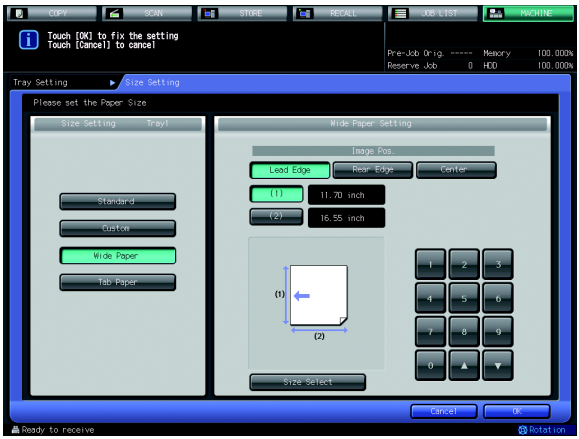


– Touch [OK] to complete the setting, then proceed to step 7.

5 To set a wide size, touch [Wide Paper] to highlight it, then select the desired wide size and specify its dimensions.



– Touch the desired wide size key to highlight it, then touch [Size Input]. Use the vertical/horizontal size key and touch panel keypad, or arrow keys [▲] [▼] to enter the dimensions of selected wide size. The entered number should fall within the range from the vertical/horizontal size of the standard size corresponding to the selected wide size, to a maximum of 324 × 463 mm.
– Touch [Lead Edge], [Rear Edge], or [Center] to specify the desired image position.

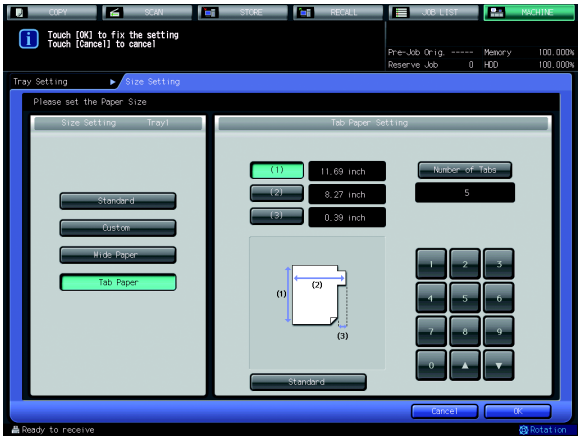


– Touch [OK] to complete the setting, then proceed to step 7.

6 To set a tabbed paper size, touch [Tab Paper] to highlight it, then select the desired size or specify the dimensions of custom size.

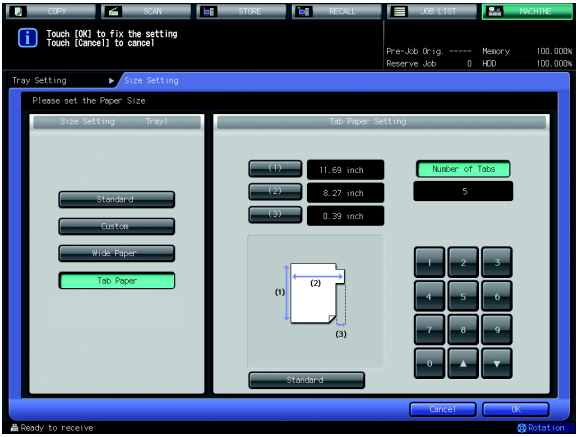


– Touch the desired tabbed paper size key to highlight it.
– If a custom tabbed paper size is desired, touch [Custom Size].



– Use the vertical/horizontal/index size key and touch panel keypad, or arrow buttons [▲] [▼] to enter the dimensions.

– Touch [Number of Tabs] to specify the number of tabs. Setting range is from 1 to 15.



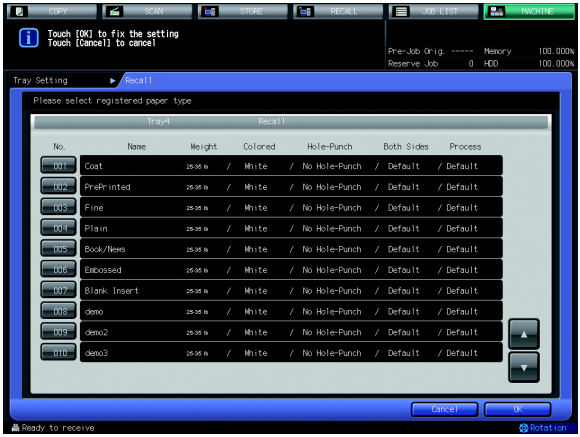
– Touch [OK] to complete the setting, then proceed to step 7.

7 Touch [Recall] on the Tray Setting Screen.



The Paper Setting Recall Screen will be displayed.

8 Using [▲] [▼] buttons to scroll to the required paper setting entry on the list, touch the No. button to highlight it.

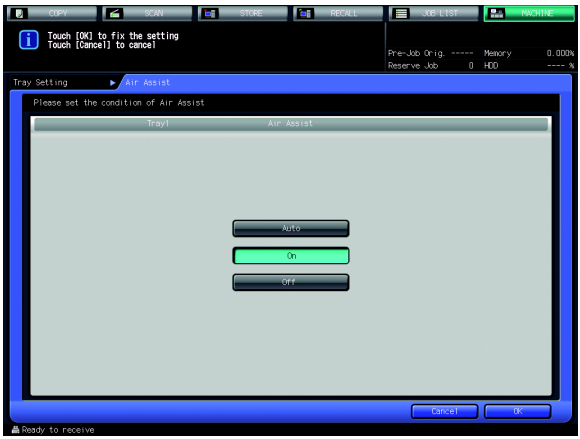


9 Touch [OK] to return to the Tray Setting Screen.

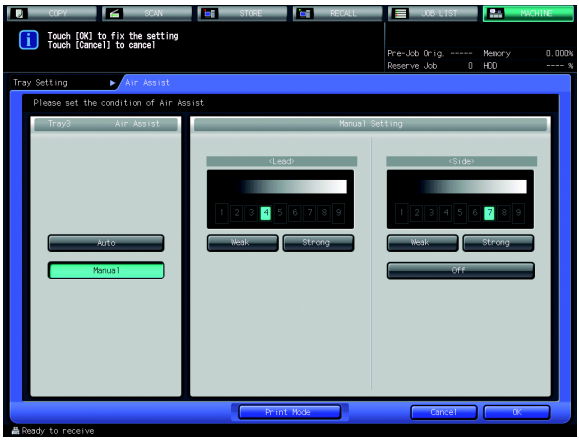
– If retouching the recalled paper setting, touch [Change Set], and refer to “Changing Paper Type/Weight Already Specified for a Tray” for details.

10 Touch [Change Set] on the right side of “Air Assist”, and select the air assist function for the tray selected in step 2.

– Select one from [Auto], [On], or [Off] for the main body tray or the tray of Paper Feeding Unit PF-702.



– Select either [Auto] or [Manual] for the tray of Paper Feeding Unit with Suction Feeding System PF-703.
With [Manual] selected, the level of the air can be adjusted using [Weak]/[Strong] for each of lead and side edges. Touch [Off] to stop the air assist for side edge.
Touching [Print Mode] enables you to check the setting in actual printing.



11 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to cancel the setting. The Tray Setting Screen will be restored.

12 Touch [Close] repeatedly to return to the Machine Status Screen.

Detail

The minimum size provided in Custom size setting can be changed as desired. For details, contact your service representative.

2.3 Changing Paper Type/Weight Already Specified for a Tray

To make a partial change of Paper Type/Weight already specified for a tray, follow the procedure below. The modified setting can be registered as a new entry of Paper Type/Weight list.

Note

Both Sides Adjustment is required every time the paper type is changed or as a daily maintenance, because a shrinkage ratio varies depending upon the paper type, paper brand, and temperature and/or humidity of storage location.

For details of Process Adjustment, contact your service representative.

Procedure

1 Touch [Tray Setting] on the Machine Status Screen.



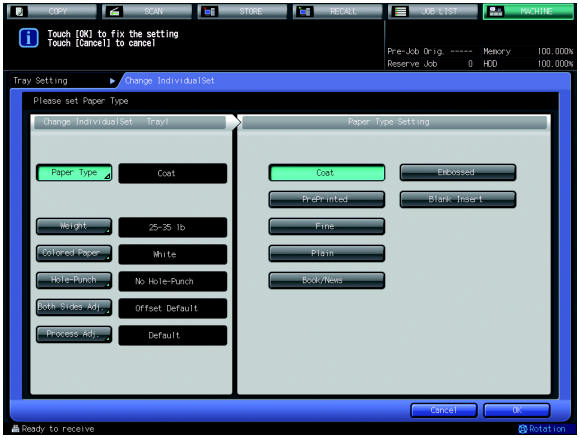
2 Touch the tray key ([Tray 1] to [Tray 8]) to be specified.

3 Touch [Change Set] on the lower right of “Paper Size”

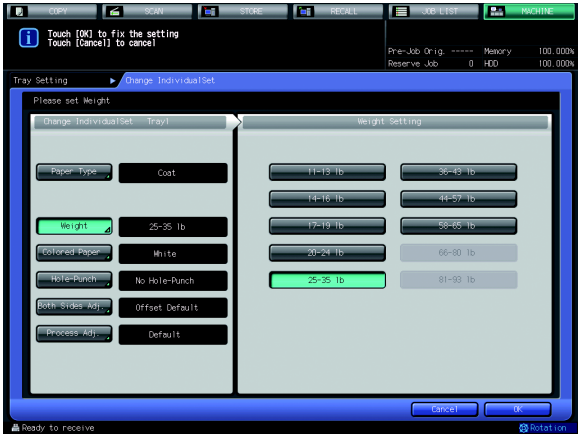


The Change Individual Setting Screen will be displayed.

4 Touch [Paper Type], and then touch one from the seven paper type buttons in the right side area.



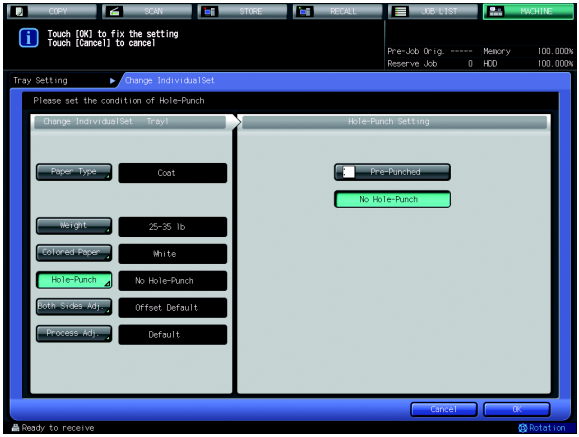
5 Touch [Weight], and then touch one from the ten weight buttons in the right side area.



6 Touch [Colored Paper], and then touch one from the six color buttons in the right side area.



7 Touch [Hole-Punch], and then touch [Pre-Punched] or [No Hole-Punch].



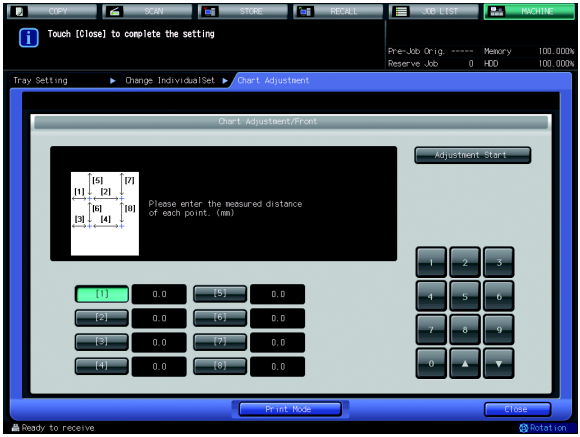
8 Touch [Both Sides Adj.], then enter an adjustment value.

- Touch [Front Side] or [Back Side] to select the printed side, then select an adjustment item from [Vertical], [Horizontal], [Up/Down], and [Right/Left].
- Use the touch panel keypad or arrow keys [▲] [▼] to enter the desired value, then touch [+<->-] to specify the adjustment value to be positive or negative.



9 Touch [Front Side] and touch [Chart Adjustment], then output a chart for setting an adjustment value.

- Touch [Print Mode] to display the Copy Screen, then press Start on the control panel to out put a chart.
- Use a scale to measure each point, then enter the value from the touch panel keypad or arrow keys [▲] [▼].
  Measurement point: (1) to (8)
  Adjustment range: 0.0–999.9, 1 step = 0.1 mm
- To start the adjustment, touch [Adjustment Start].
- Repeat this procedure till the desired result is obtained.



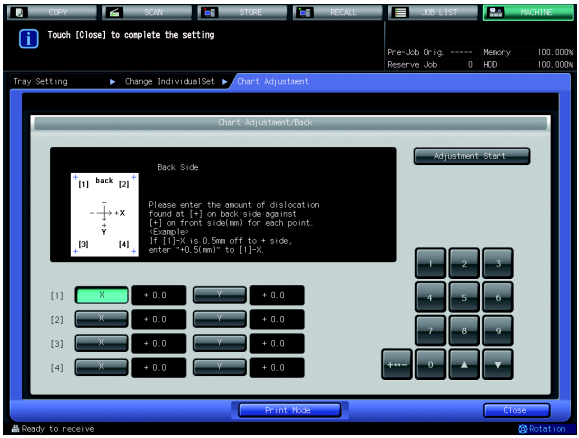
- Touch [Close] to return to the Change Individual Setting Screen.

10 Touch [Back Side] and touch [Chart Adjustment], then output a chart for setting an adjustment value.



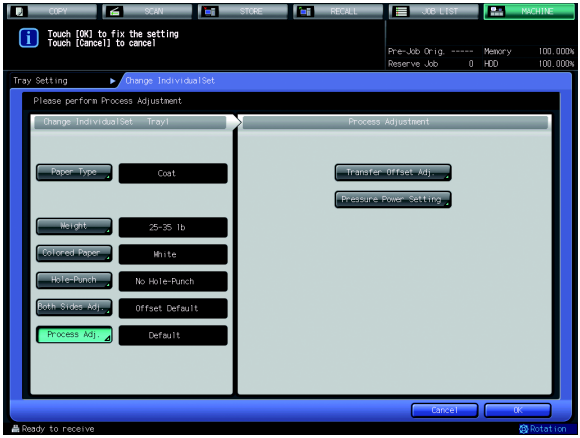
– Touch [Print Mode] to display the Copy Screen, then press Start on the control panel to out put a chart.
– Measure the positional gap between the front side and back side.
Measurement point: (1) to (4)
– Enter the value from the touch panel keypad or arrow keys [▲] [▼], then touch [+<->-] to specify the adjustment value to be positive or negative.

– Measure the positional gap between the front side and back side.
Measurement point: (1) to (4)
Adjustment range: X (horizontal) –99.9 (left) to +99.9 (right), Y (vertical) –99.9 (top) to +99.9 (bottom), 1 step = 0.1 mm
– To start the adjustment, touch [Adjustment Start].
– Repeat this procedure till the desired result is obtained.



– Touch [Close] to return to the Change Individual Setting Screen.

11 Touch [Process Adj.] and [Transfer Offset Adj.]

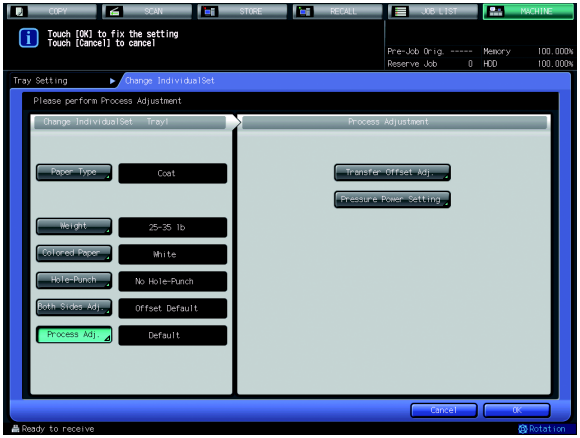


– Touch the desired item key to be adjusted.
– Use the touch panel keypad to enter the adjustment data, then touch [+<->-] to specify the adjustment value to be positive or negative.
Adjustment range: –128 to +127

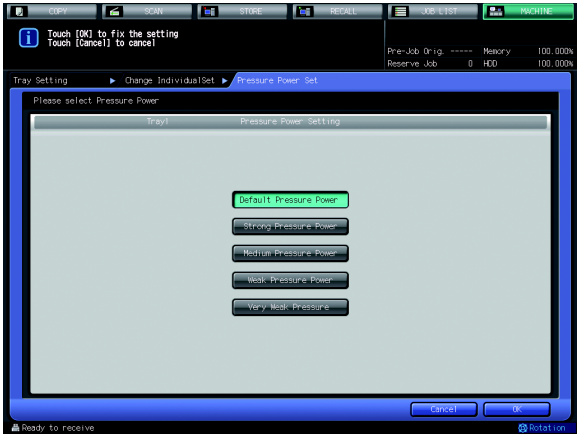


– Touch [OK] to complete the setting.

12 Touch [Process Adj.] and [Pressure Power Setting]



– Touch the desired item key to highlight it.



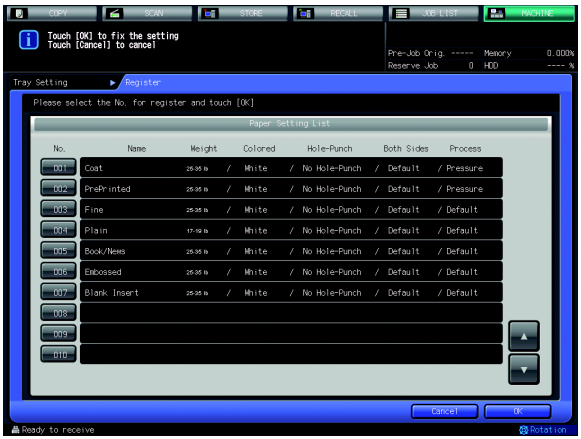
– Touch [OK] to complete the setting.

13 Touch [OK] repeatedly to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to cancel the setting.

The Tray Setting Screen will be displayed.

14 Touch [Register] to register the modified setting

- To simply change the setting, touch [Close] repeatedly to return to the Machine Status Screen.
- Using [▲] [▼] buttons to scroll to the required register item on the list, touch the No. button to highlight it.
  Touch a No. button of the blank item to newly register the modified setting.
  Touch a No. button of the entry item to overlap it.



- Enter the desired name, then touch [OK].



- Touch [OK] repeatedly to complete the registration, or touch [Cancel] to cancel it.

15 Touch [Close] repeatedly to return to the Machine Status Screen.

2.4 Specifying Tray Setting for PI Trays

The PI trays refer to the post inserter trays mounted on Folding Unit FD-503.

Load paper in PI trays for the following use.

- Front covers/back covers/insertions for Insert Sheet
- Covers for perfect binding
- Sheets to be punched/folded/stapled manually

Detectable standard sizes can be changed in tray setting in order to load the front covers/back covers/insertions for Insert Sheet into the PI tray. Any other tray setting is not required.

Make custom size, paper type, and paper weight settings in tray setting in order to load covers for perfect binding.

Tray setting is not necessary for paper to be punched/folded/stapled manually.

2.4.1 Changing Paper Size Detected for Insert Sheet in PI Trays

Use this function to change the paper (cover/sheet) size for Insert Sheet to be detected in the post inserter with the Folding Unit FD-503.

Changing list of cover/sheet size detected:

- A5 or 5.5" × 8.5"
- SRA4 or (A4 and 8.5" × 14"),
  SRA4 or (8.5" × 11" and 8.5" × 14"),
  SRA4 or (A4 and 8" × 13"/8.12" × 13.2"/8.25" × 13"/8.5" × 13"), or
  SRA4 or (8.5" × 11" and 8" × 13"/8.12" × 13.2"/8.25" × 13"/8.5" × 13")
- 8.5" × 11" or 9" × 11"

Procedure

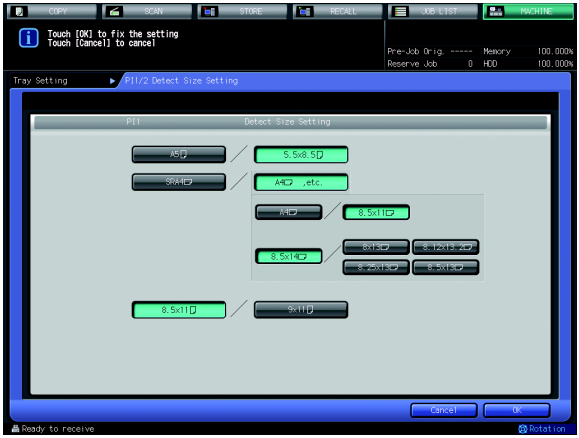
1 Touch [Tray Setting] on the Machine Status Screen.



2 Touch [PI1] or [PI2] of “PI Tray” item below, then touch [Detect Size Set] of “Normal Use Setting” item below.



3 Touch the desired paper size keys to highlight them.



4 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to cancel it.

5 Touch [Close] repeatedly to return to the Machine Status Screen.

2.4.2 Specifying Tray Setting for Cover of Perfect Binding in PI Trays

Specify a custom size for cover, and select programmed paper type/weight for the post inserter with the Folding Unit FD-503.

Procedure

1 Touch [Tray Setting] on the Machine Status Screen.



2 Touch [PI1] or [PI2] under “PI Tray”, then touch [Change Set] on the right side of “Paper Size” in the “Perfect binding cover setting” area.

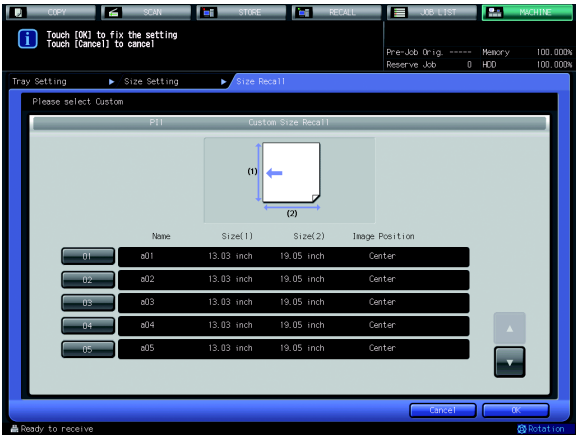


3 Specify the custom size for cover.

– Use the vertical/horizontal size button and touch panel keypad, or arrow keys [▲] [▼] to enter the dimensions. From the minimum size of 182 × 279 mm to the maximum size of 307 × 483 mm can be entered.
– To use a custom size previously registered, touch [Size Recall].



– Using [▲] [▼] buttons to scroll to the desired entry on the list, touch its number key to highlight it, then touch [OK].



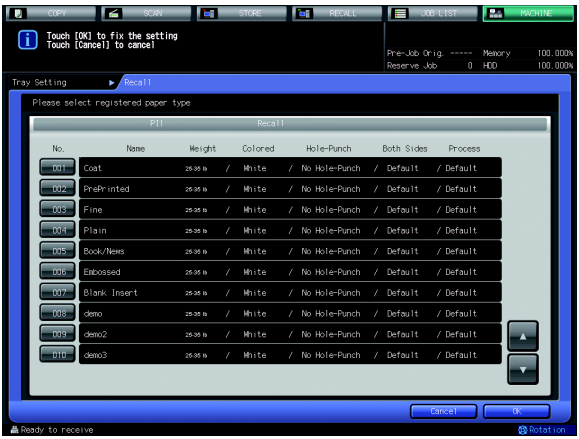
– Touch [OK] on the Size Setting Screen.

4 Touch [Recall] of the [Name], [Paper Type] and [Weight] item below.



5 Specify the paper setting for cover.

– Using [▲] [▼] buttons to scroll to the desired entry on the list, touch its number key to highlight it, then touch [OK].

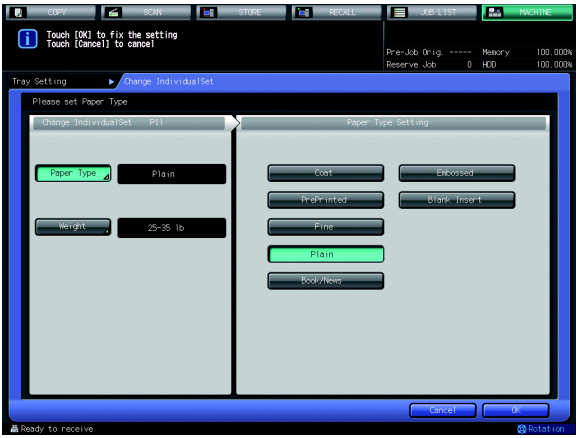


– If not necessary to change the recalled paper setting, touch [Close] repeatedly to return to the Machine Status Screen.

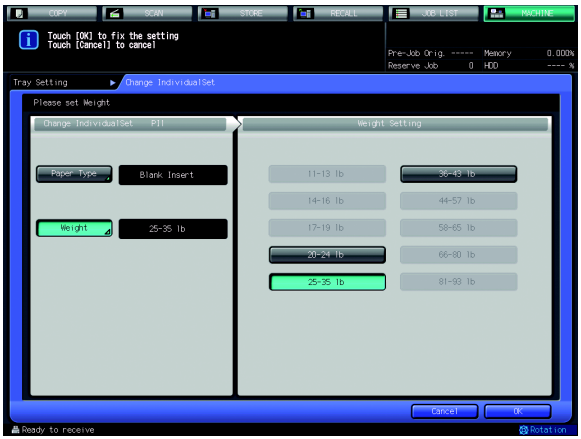
– Touch [Change Set] of the [Name], [Paper Type] and [Weight] item below.



– Touch [Paper Type], and then touch one from the seven paper type setting buttons in right side area.



– Touch [Weight], and then touch one from the three weight setting buttons in right side area.

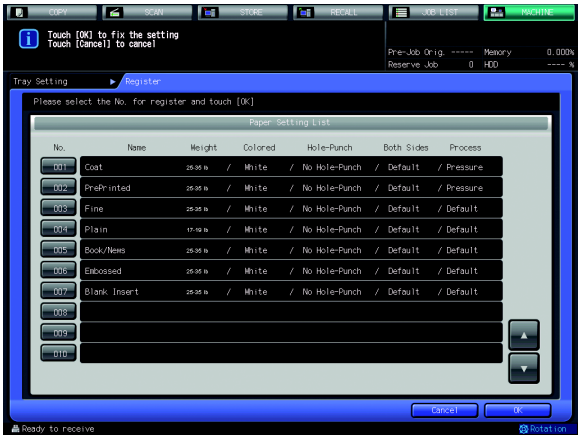


– Touch [OK] to return to the Tray Setting Screen.

6 Touch [Register] to register the modified setting.

– If not necessary to register the changed paper setting, touch [Close] repeatedly to return to the Machine Status Screen.

– Using [▲] [▼] buttons to scroll to the required register item on the list, touch the No. button to highlight it.
Touch a No. button of the blank item to newly register the modified setting.
Touch a No. button of the entry item to overlap it.



– Enter the desired name, then touch [OK].



– Touch [OK] repeatedly to complete the registration, or touch [Cancel] to cancel it.

7 Touch [Close] repeatedly to return to the Machine Status Screen.

2.5 Specifying Tray Setting for PI-PFU Trays

The PI-PFU trays refer to the post inserter trays mounted on Paper Feeding Unit with Suction Feeding System.

Load paper in PI-PFU trays for the following use.

- Front covers/back covers/insertions for Insert Sheet
- Covers for perfect binding

Detectable standard sizes can be changed in tray setting in order to load the front covers/back covers/insertions for Insert Sheet into the PI-PFU tray. Also make the paper type, paper weight, and air assist settings.

Make custom size setting in tray setting in order to load covers for perfect binding. Also make the paper type, paper weight, and air assist settings.

2.5.1 Specifying Tray Setting for Cover of Insert Sheet in PI-PFU Trays

Use this function to change the paper (cover/sheet) size for Insert Sheet to be detected for the PI-PFU Trays of the Paper Feeding Unit with Suction Feeding System PF-703.

Changing list of cover/sheet size detected:

- A5▯ or 5.5" × 8.5"▯
- SRA3▭ or 12"× 18"▭
- 8.5"× 14"▯, 8"× 13"▭, 8.12"× 13.2"▭, 8.25"× 13"▭, or 8.5"× 13"▭

And select programmed paper type/weight, and air assist function for each tray.

Procedure

1 Touch [Tray Setting] on the Machine Status Screen.



2 Touch [PI-PFU1], [PI-PFU2] or [PI-PFU3] of “PI-PFU Tray” item below, then touch [Detect Size Set] of “Normal Use Setting” item below.



3 Touch the desired paper size keys to highlight them.



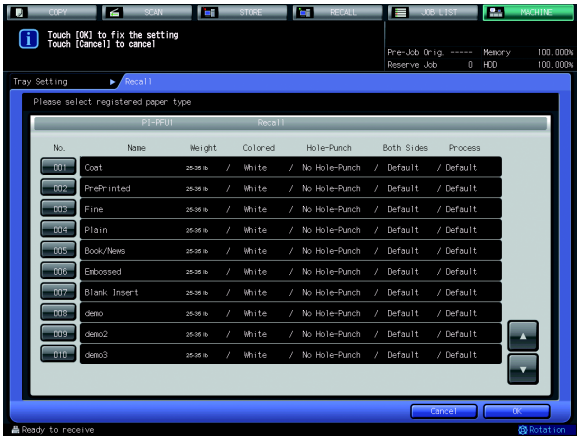
4 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to cancel it.

5 Touch [Recall] of the [Name], [Paper Type] and [Weight] item below.



6 Specify the paper setting for cover.

– Using [▲] [▼] buttons to scroll to the desired entry on the list, touch its number key to highlight it, then touch [OK].

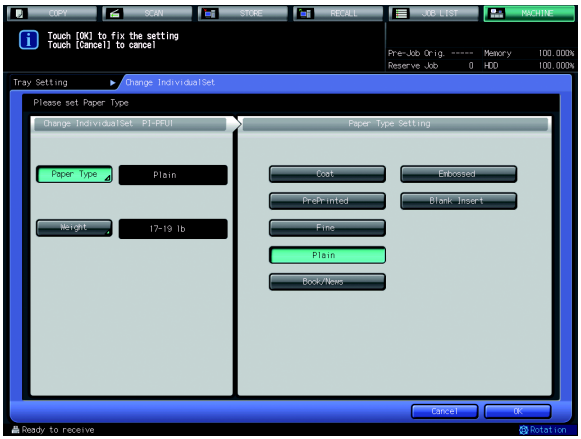


– If not necessary to change the recalled paper setting, touch [Close] repeatedly to return to the Machine Status Screen.

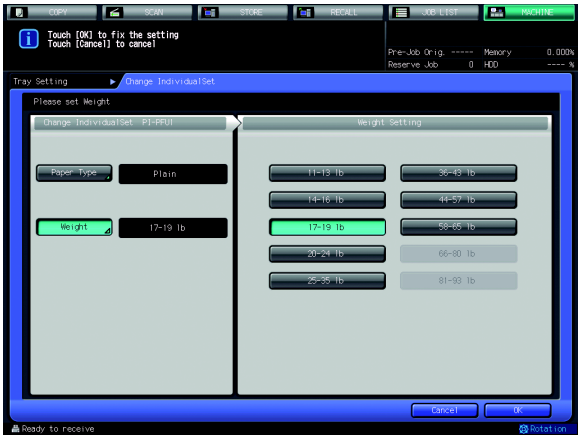
– Touch [Change Set] of the [Name], [Paper Type] and [Weight] item below.



– Touch [Paper Type], and then touch one from the seven paper type setting buttons in right side area.



– Touch [Weight], and then touch one from the ten (PI-PFU2)/eight (PI-PFU1/PI-PFU3) weight setting buttons in right side area.



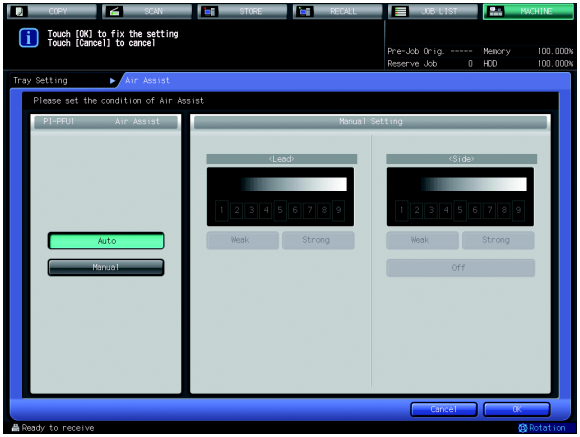
– Touch [OK] to return to the Tray Setting Screen.

7 Touch [Change Set] on the right side of the “Air Assist”, and select the air assist function.

8 Select the air assist function.

– Touch [Auto] or [Manual].

– In case of [Manual], touch [Weak] and [Strong] of <lead> and <side> items below to select the airflow (1 to 9). Touch [Off] of <side> item below to stop the air assist of the side positions.

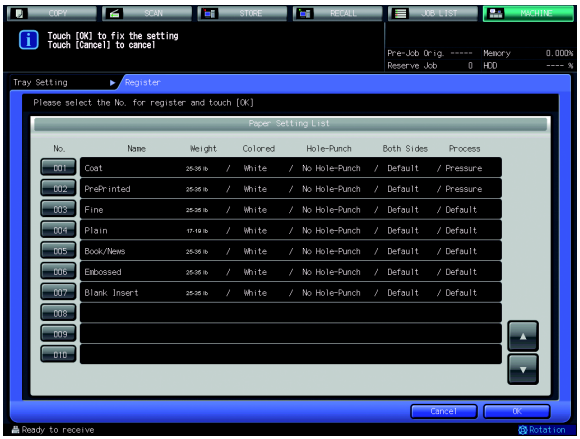


– Touch [OK] to return to the Tray Setting Screen.

9 Touch [Register] to register the modified setting.

– If not necessary to register the changed paper setting, touch [Close] repeatedly to return to the Machine Status Screen.

– Using [▲] [▼] buttons to scroll to the required register item on the list, touch the No. button to highlight it.
Touch a No. button of the blank item to newly register the modified setting.
Touch a No. button of the entry item to overlap it.



– Enter the desired name, then touch [OK].



– Touch [OK] repeatedly to complete the registration, or touch [Cancel] to cancel it.

10 Touch [Close] repeatedly to return to the Machine Status Screen.

2.5.2 Specifying Tray Setting for Cover of Perfect Binding in PI-PFU Trays

Specify a custom size for cover, and select programmed paper type/weight, and air assist function for the PI-PFU Trays of the Paper Feeding Unit with Suction Feeding System PF-703.

Procedure

1 Touch [Tray Setting] on the Machine Status Screen.



2 Touch [PI-PFU1], [PI-PFU2] or [PI-PFU3] of “PI-PFU Tray” item below, then touch [Change Set] on the right side of “Paper Size” in “Perfect binding cover setting” item below.

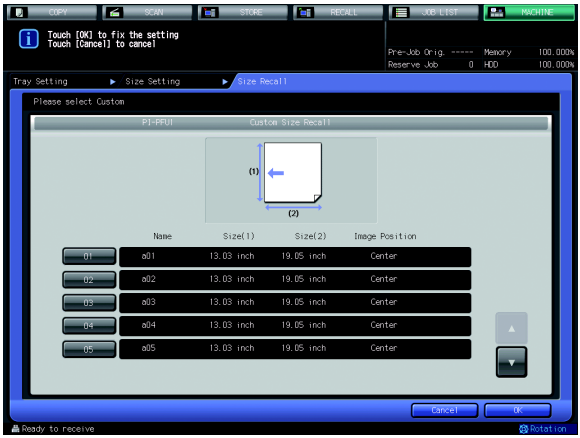


3 Specify the custom size for cover.

– Use the vertical/horizontal size button and touch panel keypad, or arrow keys [▲] [▼] to enter the dimensions. From the minimum size of 95 × 133 mm to the maximum size of 324 × 463 mm can be entered.
– To use a custom size previously registered, touch [Size Recall].



– Using [▲] [▼] buttons to scroll to the desired entry on the list, touch its number key to highlight it, then touch [OK].



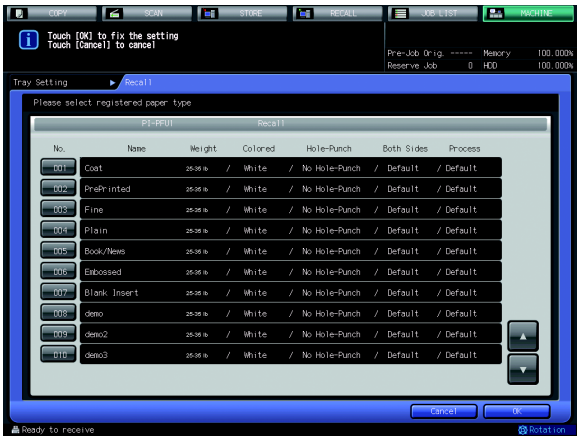
– Touch [OK] on the Size Setting Screen.

4 Touch [Recall] of the [Name], [Paper Type] and [Weight] item below.



5 Specify the paper setting for cover.

– Using [▲] [▼] buttons to scroll to the desired entry on the list, touch its number key to highlight it, then touch [OK].

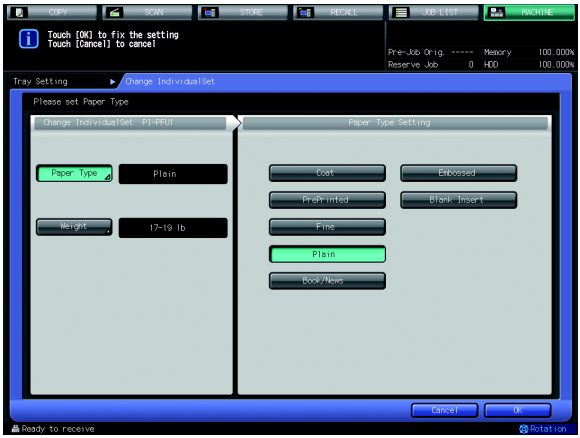


– If not necessary to change the recalled paper setting, touch [Close] repeatedly to return to the Machine Status Screen.

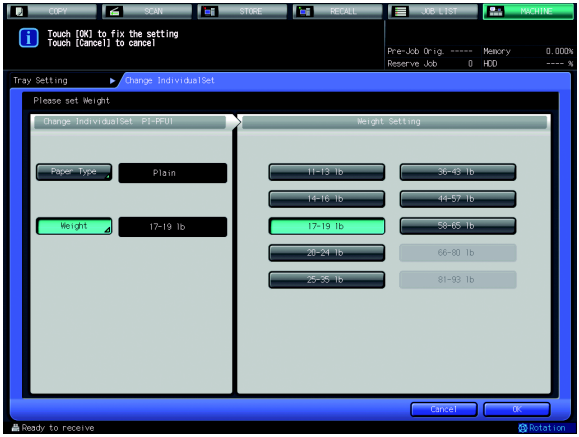
– Touch [Change Set] of the [Name], [Paper Type] and [Weight] item below.



– Touch [Paper Type], and then touch one from the seven paper type setting buttons in right side area.



– Touch [Weight], and then touch one from the ten (PI-PFU2)/eight (PI-PFU1/PI-PFU3) weight setting buttons in right side area.

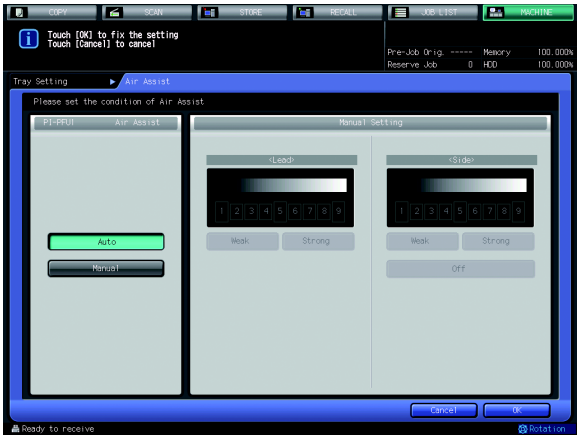


– Touch [OK] to return to the Tray Setting Screen.

6 Touch [Change Set] on the right side of the “Air Assist”, and select the air assist function.

7 Select the air assist function.

– Touch [Auto] or [Manual].
– In case of [Manual], touch [Weak] and [Strong] of <lead> and <side> items below to select the airflow (1 to 9). Touch [Off] of <side> item below to stop the air assist of the side positions.

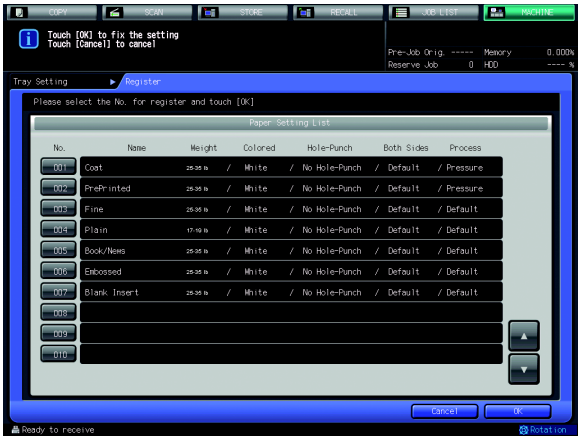


– Touch [OK] to return to the Tray Setting Screen.

8 Touch [Register] to register the modified setting.

– If not necessary to register the changed paper setting, touch [Close] repeatedly to return to the Machine Status Screen.

– Using [▲] [▼] buttons to scroll to the required register item on the list, touch the No. button to highlight it.
Touch a No. button of the blank item to newly register the modified setting.
Touch a No. button of the entry item to overlap it.



– Enter the desired name, then touch [OK].



– Touch [OK] repeatedly to complete the registration, or touch [Cancel] to cancel it.

9 Touch [Close] repeatedly to return to the Machine Status Screen.

2.6 Specifying Tray Setting for PB Tray

The PB tray refers to the cover feeding tray of Perfect Binder PB-502/PB-503.

This tray is available only for covers used in perfect binding.

Make custom size setting in order to load covers for perfect binding. Also make the paper type, paper weight, and air assist settings.

2.6.1 Specifying Tray Setting for Cover of Perfect Binding in PB Tray

Procedure

1 Touch [Tray Setting] on the Machine Status Screen.



2 Touch [PB] of “PB Tray” item below, then touch [Change Set] on the right side of “Paper Size”.

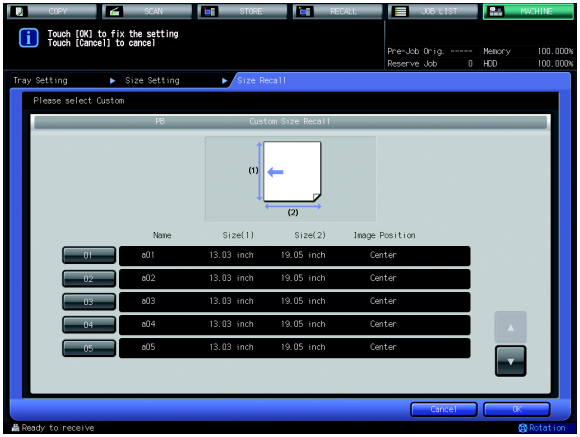


3 Specify the custom size for cover.

– Use the vertical/horizontal size button and touch panel keypad, or arrow keys [▲] [▼] to enter the dimensions. From the minimum size of 139 × 279 mm to the maximum size of 307 × 472 mm can be entered.
– To use a custom size previously registered, touch [Size Recall].



– Using [▲] [▼] buttons to scroll to the desired entry on the list, touch its number key to highlight it, then touch [OK].



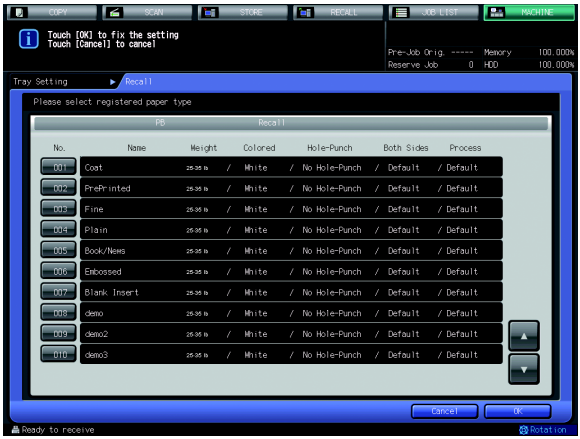
– Touch [OK] on the Size Setting Screen.

4 Touch [Recall] of the [Name], [Paper Type] and [Weight] item below.



5 Specify the paper setting for cover.

– Using [▲] [▼] buttons to scroll to the desired entry on the list, touch its number key to highlight it, then touch [OK].

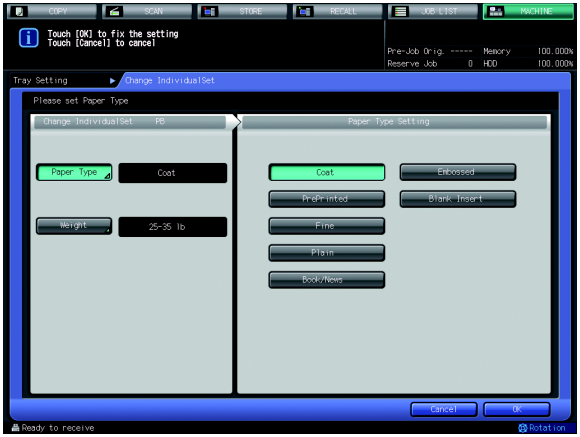


– If not necessary to change the recalled paper setting, touch [Close] repeatedly to return to the Machine Status Screen.

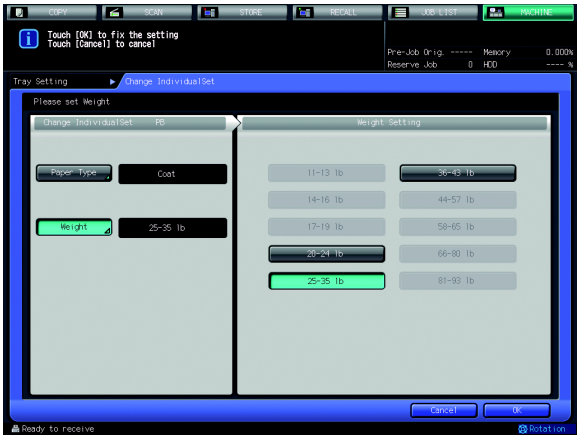
– Touch [Change Set] of the [Name], [Paper Type] and [Weight] item below.



– Touch [Paper Type], and then touch one from the seven paper type setting buttons in right side area.



– Touch [Weight], and then touch one from the 3 weight setting buttons in right side area.

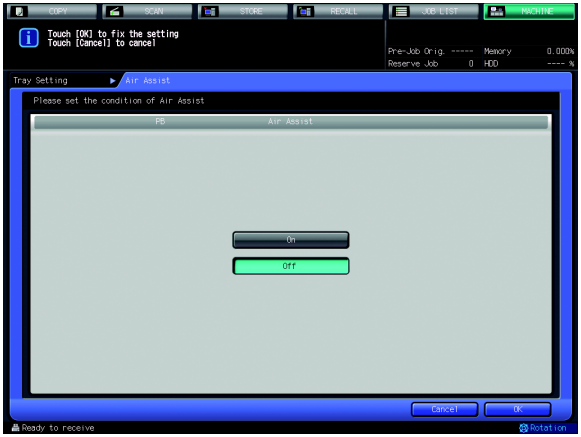


– Touch [OK] to return to the Tray Setting Screen.

6 Touch [Change Set] on the right side of the “Air Assist”, and select the air assist function.

7 Select the air assist function.

– Touch [On] or [Off].

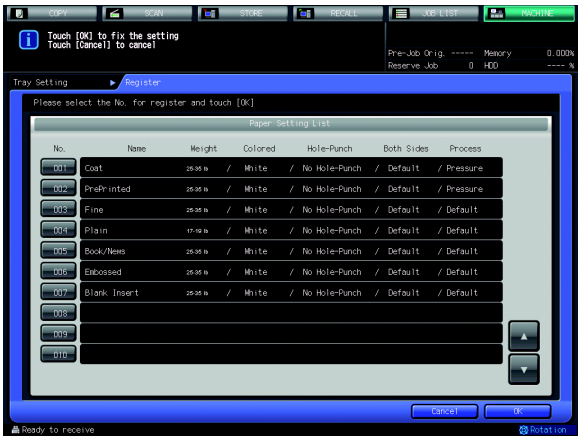


– Touch [OK] to return to the Tray Setting Screen.

8 Touch [Register] to register the modified setting.

– If not necessary to register the changed paper setting, touch [Close] repeatedly to return to the Machine Status Screen.

– Using [▲] [▼] buttons to scroll to the required register item on the list, touch the No. button to highlight it.
Touch a No. button of the blank item to newly register the modified setting.
Touch a No. button of the entry item to overlap it.



– Enter the desired name, then touch [OK].



– Touch [OK] repeatedly to complete the registration, or touch [Cancel] to cancel it.

9 Touch [Close] repeatedly to return to the Machine Status Screen.

2.7 Registering Paper Setting

Follow the procedure below to register the paper type/weight according to the paper to be used.

Note

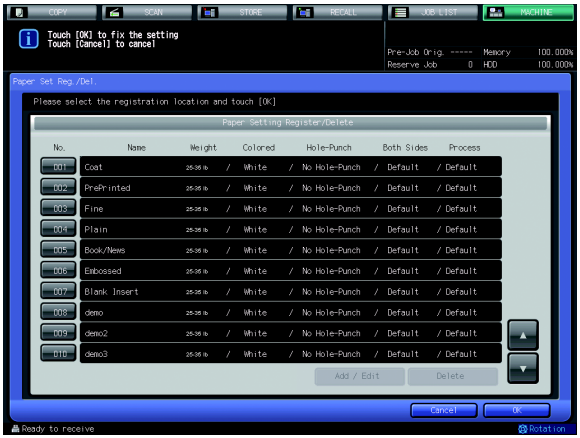
Paper size setting is not included in this procedure.

Procedure

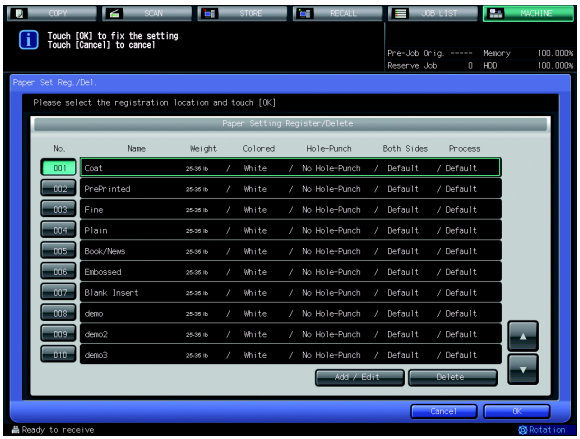
1 Touch [Paper Setting Reg./Del.] on the Machine Status Screen.



2 Touch the No. button to be registered.
Use [▲] [▼] to scroll to the desired No. button. The buttons are provided from 001 to 256.
To register a new setting, select a No. button without a name displayed.
To modify the paper setting already registered, select the No. button with the corresponding name displayed.

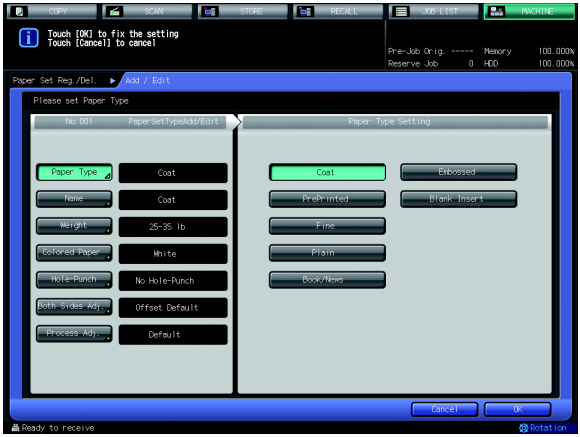


3 Touch [Add/Edit].



The Paper Setting Add/Edit Screen will be displayed.

4 Touch [Paper Type], and then touch one from the seven paper type setting buttons in right side area.

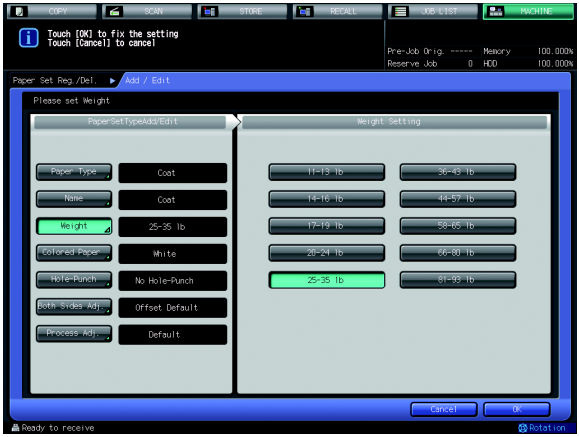


5 Touch [Name], and then enter the desired name from the touch panel keypad.



– Touch [OK] to complete the name, or touch [Cancel] to cancel it.

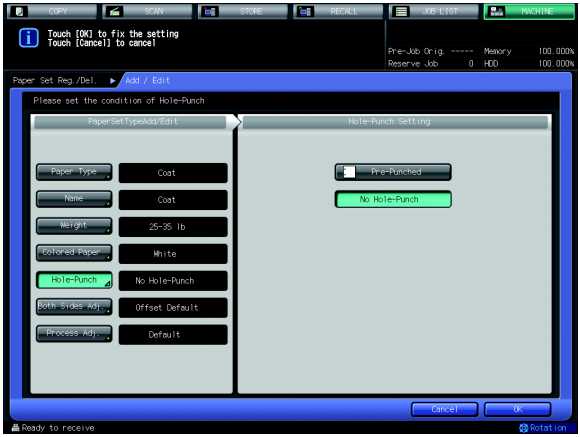
6 Touch [Weight], and then touch one from the ten weight setting buttons in right side area.



7 Touch [Colored Paper], and then touch one from the six colored setting buttons in right side area.



8 Touch [Hole-Punch], and then touch [Pre-Punched] or [No Hole-Punch].

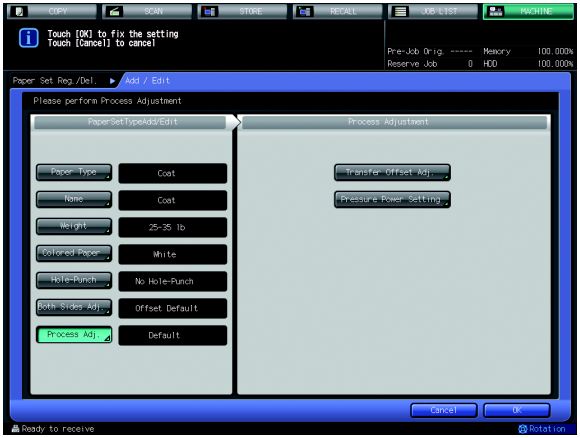


9 Touch [Both Sides Adj.], then enter an adjustment value.

– Touch [Front Side] or [Back Side] to select the printed side, then select an adjustment item from [Vertical], [Horizontal], [Up/Down], and [Right/Left].
– Use the touch panel keypad or arrow keys [▲] [▼] to enter the desired value, then touch [+<->-] to specify the adjustment value to be positive or negative.



10 Touch [Process Adj.] and [Transfer Offset Adj.]

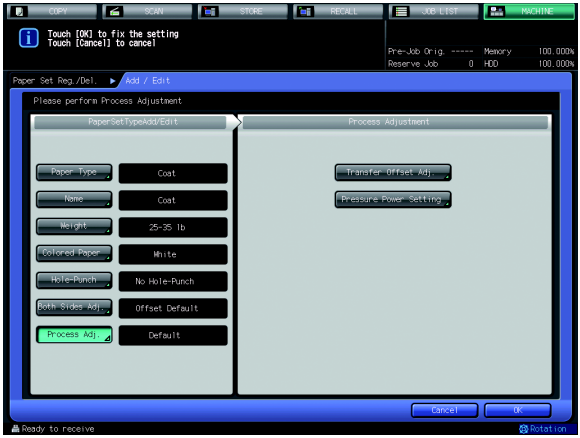


– Touch the desired item key to be adjusted.
– Use the touch panel keypad to enter the adjustment data, then touch [+<->-] to specify the adjustment value to be positive or negative.
Adjustment range: –128 to +127

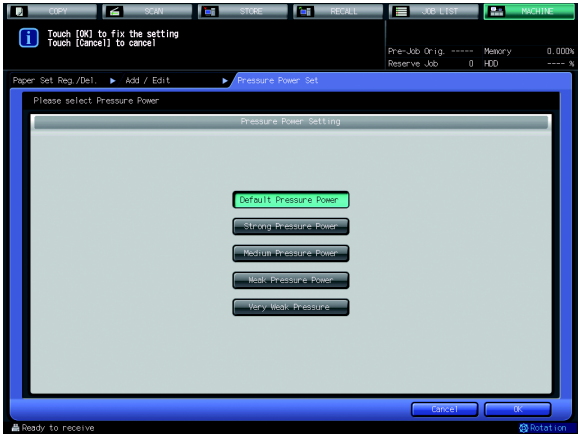


– Touch [OK] to complete the setting.

11 Touch [Process Adj.] and [Pressure Power Setting].



– Touch the desired item key to highlight it.



– Touch [OK] to complete the setting.

12 Touch [OK] repeatedly to complete the setting, then touch [Close] on the Paper Setting Screen.

The Machine Status Screen will be restored.

Detail

For available setting range of the Both Sides Adjustment, see page 2-3.

Chart Adjustment is not available when programing paper conditions. For details of this adjustment, see page 2-3.

2.8 Deleting Paper Setting

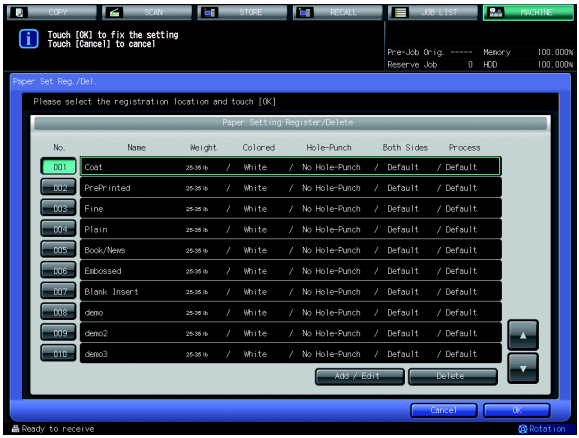
Follow the procedure below to delete a paper type/weight previously registered.

Procedure

1 Touch [Paper Setting Reg./Del.] on the Machine Status Screen.

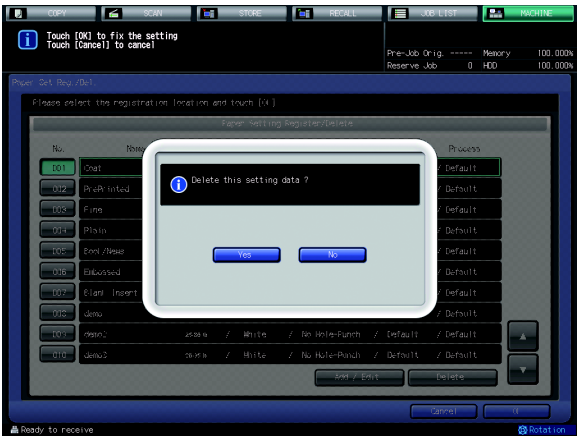


2 Using [▲] [▼] buttons to scroll to the desired entry on the list, touch the No. button to be deleted.



3 Touch [Delete].

4 Touch [Yes] to delete it, or touch [No] to cancel.



– If more than one entry is to be deleted, repeat steps 2 to 4.

5 Touch [OK] to complete the setting.

The Machine Status Screen will be restored.

2.9 Registering/Deleting Custom Sizes

Follow the procedure below to register/delete custom paper sizes.

Note

A custom size specified for a tray in Size Setting of Paper Setting cannot be registered as in this procedure.

2.9.1 Registering/Editing Custom Sizes

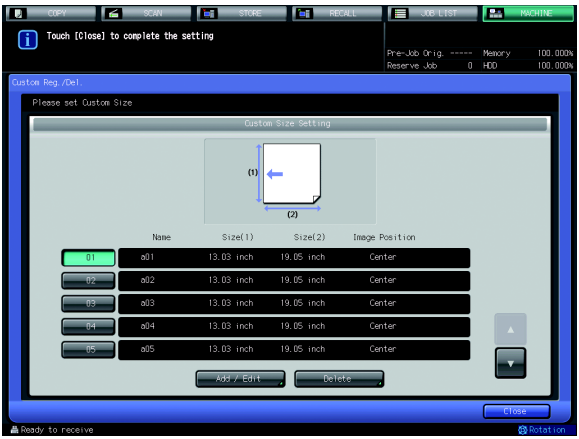
Procedure

1 Touch [Custom Register/Delete] on the Machine Status Screen.



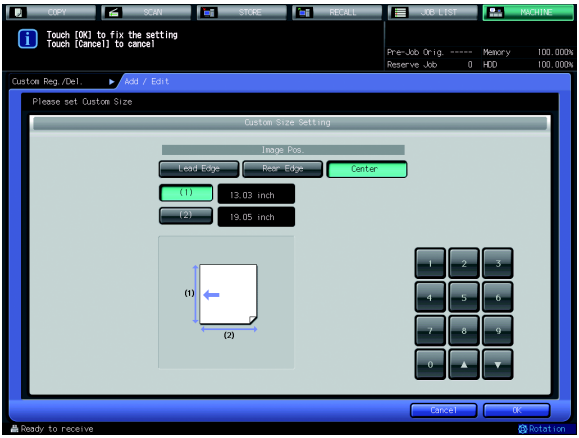
The Custom Reg./Del. Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch the number key to be registered, then touch [Add/Edit].



3 Specify the dimensions of the custom size.

– Use the vertical/horizontal size key and touch panel keypad, or arrow keys (▲/▼) to enter the dimensions. From the minimum size of 95 × 133 mm to the maximum size of 324 × 463 mm can be entered.
– Touch [Lead Edge], [Rear Edge], or [Center] to specify the desired image position.



The maximum size of 324 × 463 mm is the paper size that can be loaded in the cover tray of perfect binder. The paper sizes that can be loaded in the trays depend on the paper trays to be used. Check the specification of the tray for detail.

4 Touch [OK].

The Name Input Screen will be displayed.

5 Enter the desired name, then touch [OK].



6 When setting is completed, touch [Close].

The Machine Status Screen will be restored.

2.9.2 Deleting Registered Custom Sizes

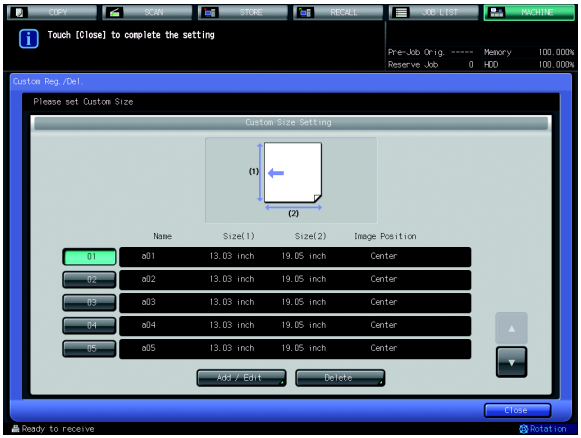
Procedure

1 Touch [Custom Register/Delete] on the Machine Status Screen.



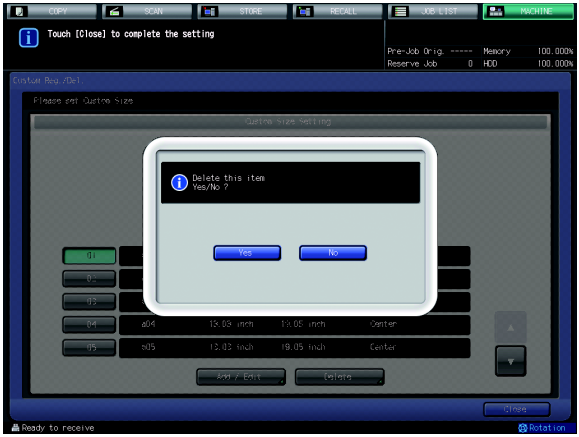
The Custom Reg./Del. Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch the number key to be deleted, then touch [Delete].



A popup screen will appear to confirm that the selected entry is to be deleted.

3 Touch [Yes] to delete it, or touch [No] to cancel.



4 When setting is completed, touch [Close].

The Machine Status Screen will be restored.

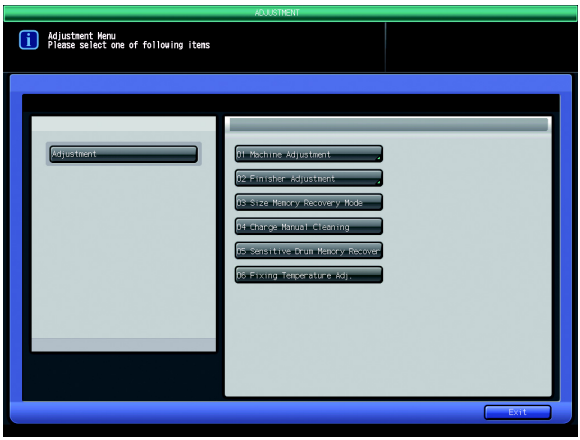
3 Adjustment

3 Adjustment

3.1 Function Overview

This section describes various adjustments for finishing options and image control functions available from the Adjustment Menu Screen.

Touch [Adjustment] on the Machine Status Screen to display the Adjustment Menu Screen.



The menu comprises the following adjustments.

Menu item and description	Available range
01 Machine Adjustment	
01 Magnification Adjustment	
01 Printer FD-Mag. Adj. <Side1> Adjust magnification in paper feed direction of printer engine.	(short) -10~10 (long) 1 step = 0.05%
02 Printer FD-Mag. Adj. <Side2> Adjust magnification offset amount on reverse side in paper feed direction of printer engine. Condition: Printer front side vertical adj. is completed.	Tray 1~Tray 8 (short) -10~0 (long) 1 step = 0.05%
03 Printer CD-Mag. Adj. <Side1> Adjust magnification in crosswise direction of printer engine.	(short) -10~10 (long) 1 step = 0.05%

Menu item and description	Available range
04 Printer CD-Mag. Adj. <Side2> Adjust magnification offset amount on reverse side in crosswise direction of printer engine. Condition: Printer front side horizontal adj. is completed.	Tray 1~Tray 8 (short) -10 to 0 (long) 1 step = 0.05%
02 Timing Adjustment	
01 Printer Restart Timing <Side1> Adjust lead edge in paper feed direction of printer engine. Condition: Magnification adjustment is completed.	All Tray, Tray 1 Offset to Tray 8 Offset (short) -30 to 30 (long) 1 step = 0.1 mm
02 Printer Restart Timing <Side2> Adjust lead edge offset amount on reverse side in feeding direction of printer engine. Condition: Magnification adjustment is completed.	Tray 1 Offset to Tray 8 Offset (short) -30 to 30 (long) 1 step = 0.1 mm
03 Scanner Restart Timing Adj. Adjust starting position of original image scanned from original glass. Condition: Magnification adjustment is completed.	(forward) -40 to 40 (backward) 1 step = 0.1 mm
04 ADF Restart Timing Adj. Adjust starting position of original image scanned from ADF. Condition: Magnification adjustment is completed.	Side1, Side2 (forward) -50 to 50 (backward) 1 step = 0.1 mm
03 Centering Adjustment	
01 Printer Centering Adjustment Adjust image position in crosswise direction of printer engine. Condition: Printer F/B side CD-Mag adj. is completed.	(forward) -64 to 63 (backward) 1 step = 0.1 mm
04 LPH Adjustment	
01 Gap adj. between LPH chips Adjust the gap (39 points) between LPH chips.	-8 to 8 1 step = 1 %
02 Finisher Adjustment	
01 Stapler Position Adjustment	
01 Staple Center Position Adj. Adjust center position of staples in finisher.	(forward) -20 to 20 (backward) 1 step = 0.1 mm
02 Paper Width Adjustment Staple Mode: Adjust width of staple adjustment plate in finisher. Straight Mode: Change adjustment width for straight delivery of finisher. Output position may vary if width is too narrow.	All Size, 11 × 17□, A3□, B4□, 8.5 × 14□, A4□, 8.5 × 11□, 8.5 × 11▯, A4▯, B5▯, A5▯, 5.5 × 8.5▯, 8 × 13□, 8.125 × 13.25□, 8.5 × 13□, 8.25 × 13□, 8K□, 16K▯, 16K□, 12 × 18□, A3W□, B4W□, A4W▯, A4W□, B5W▯, A5W▯, 12 × 18W□, 11 × 17W□, 8.5 × 11W▯, 8.5 × 11W□, 5.5 × 8.5W▯, Custom, SRA3□, SRA4□, 9 × 11▯ (wide) -20 to 20 (narrow) 1 step = 0.1 mm

Menu item and description			Available range
		03 Exit Guide Center Pos. Adj. Adjust finisher exit guide unit to center pos. of paper.	Straight (Small size), Straight (Large size), Shift-front (Small size), Shift-front (Large size), Shift-rear (Small size), Shift-rear (Large size) (forward) -50 to 50 (backward) 1 step = 0.1 mm
		04 Exit Guide Paper Width. Adj. Change adjustment width for exit guide unit of finisher.	All Size, 11 × 17□, A3□, B4□, 8.5 × 14□, A4□, 8.5 × 11□, 8.5 × 11▯, A4▯, B5▯, A5▯, 5.5 × 8.5▯, 8 × 13□, 8.125 × 13.25□, 8.5 × 13□, 8.25 × 13□, 8K□, 16K▯, 16K□, 12 × 18□, A3W□, B4W□, A4W▯, A4W□, B5W▯, A5W▯, 12 × 18W□, 11 × 17W□, 8.5 × 11W▯, 8.5 × 11W□, 5.5 × 8.5W▯, Custom, SRA3□, SRA4□, 9 × 11▯ (wide) -50 to 50 (narrow) 1 step = 0.1 mm
	02 Multi Folder (Hole-Punch) Adj.		
		01 Paper Width Adjustment Adjust paper width of each size carried through multi folder.	All Size, 11 × 17□, A3□, B4□, 8.5 × 14□, A4□, 8.5 × 11□, B5□, 8.5 × 11▯, A4▯, A5□, B5▯, A5▯, 5.5 × 8.5▯, 8 × 13□, 8.125 × 13.25□, 8.5 × 13□, 8.25 × 13□, 8K□, 16K▯, 16K□, 12 × 18□, SRA4□, 9 × 11▯ (narrow) -20 to 20 (wide) 1 step = 0.1 mm
		02 Hole-Punch Vertical Pos. Adj. Adjust vertical position of holes punched by multi folder from edge to hole.	2 holes: All Size, 11 × 17□, A3□, B4□, 8.5 × 14□, A4□, 8.5 × 11□, B5□, 8.5 × 11▯, A4▯, A5□, B5▯, A5▯, 5.5 × 8.5▯, 8 × 13□, 8.125 × 13.25□, 8.5 × 13□, 8.25 × 13□, 8K□, 16K▯, 16K□, 12 × 18□, SRA4□, 9 × 11▯ 3 holes: All Size, 11 × 17□, A3□, B4□, 8.5 × 11▯, A4▯, B5▯, 8K□, 16K▯, 12 × 18□, 9 × 11▯ (wider) -40 to 40 (narrower) 1 step = 0.1 mm

Menu item and description			Available range
	03 Multi Folder (Fold) Adj.		
		01 Half Fold Position Adjustment Adjust fold position in Half Fold fixed by multi folder for the top of output set.	All Size, 11 × 17◪, A3◪, B4◪, 8.5 × 14◪, A4◪, 8.5 × 11◪, 8K◪, 12 × 18◪, Custom, SRA4◪ (shorter) -50 to 50 (longer) 1 step = 0.1 mm
		02 Tri-Fold-in Position Adj. Adjust fold position in Tri-Fold-in fixed by multi folder for 1st/2nd fold. When adjusting both, start with 2nd fold.	All Size, 11 × 17◪, A3◪, B4◪, 8.5 × 14◪, A4◪, 8.5 × 11◪, 8K◪, 12 × 18◪, Custom, SRA4◪ (shorter) -50 to 50 (longer) 1 step = 0.1 mm
		03 Tri-Fold-out Position Adj. Adjust fold position in Tri-Fold-out fixed by multi folder for 1st (top of set)/2nd fold. When adjusting both, start with 2nd fold.	All Size, 11 × 17◪, A3◪, B4◪, 8.5 × 14◪, A4◪, 8.5 × 11◪, 8K◪, 12 × 18◪, Custom, SRA4◪ (shorter) -50 to 50 (longer) 1 step = 0.1 mm
		04 Double Parallel Position Adj. Adjust fold pos. in Double Parallel fixed by multi folder for 1st (inside)/2nd (top) fold. When adjusting both, start with 1st fold.	All Size, 11 × 17◪, A3◪, B4◪, 8.5 × 14◪, A4◪, 8.5 × 11◪, 8K◪, 12 × 18◪, Custom, SRA4◪ (shorter) -50 to 50 (longer) 1 step = 0.1 mm
		05 Z-Fold Position Adjustment Adjust fold position in Z-Fold fixed by multi folder for 1st/2nd fold. When adjusting both, start with 1st fold.	All Size, 11 × 17◪, A3◪, B4◪, 8.5 × 14◪, A4◪, 8.5 × 11◪, 8K◪, 12 × 18◪, Custom, SRA4◪ (shorter) -50 to 50 (longer) 1 step = 0.1 mm
		06 Gate Position Adjustment Adjust fold position in Gate Fold fixed by multi folder for 1st(inner top)/3rd(bottom) and 2nd(inner bottom) in order.	All Size, 11 × 17◪, A3◪, B4◪, 8.5 × 14◪, A4◪, 8.5 × 11◪, 8K◪, 12 × 18◪, Custom, SRA4◪ 1st/3rd: (shorter) -50~50 (longer) 1 step = 0.1 mm 2nd: (longer) -50 to 50 (shorter) 1 step = 0.1 mm
	04 Stacker Adjustment		
		01 Paper Width Adjustment Adjust position of adjustment plate if output sheets shift in crosswise direction on stacker tray.	Stacker No.1 Stacker No.2 (narrow) -20 to 20 (wide) 1 step = 0.1 mm
		02 Paper Length Adjustment Adjust position of front stopper if output sheets shift in paper feed direction on stacker tray.	Stacker No.1 Stacker No.2 (narrow) -20 to 20 (wide) 1 step = 0.1 mm
	05 Saddle Stitcher Adjustment		
		01 Staple Center Adjustment Adjust center position of staples fixed by saddle stitch unit.	(right) -20 to 20 (left) 1 step = 0.1 mm

Menu item and description	Available range
02 Staple Paper Width Adj. Adjust space between adjustment plates of saddle stitch unit.	All Size, 11 × 17□, A3□, B4□, 8.5 × 14□, A4□, 8.5 × 11□, B5□, 8 × 13□, 8.125 × 13.25□, 8.5 × 13□, 8.25 × 13□, 8K□, 16K□, 12 × 18□, A3W□, B4W□, A4W□, B5W□, 12 × 18W□, 11 × 17W□, 8.5 × 11W□, Custom, SRA3□, SRA4□ (narrow) -20 to 20 (wide) 1 step = 0.1 mm
03 Staple Pitch Adjustment Adjust the staple pitch of saddle stitch unit.	All Size, 11 × 17□, A3□, B4□, 8.5 × 14□, A4□, 8.5 × 11□, B5□, 8 × 13□, 8.125 × 13.25□, 8.5 × 13□, 8.25 × 13□, 8K□, 16K□, 12 × 18□, A3W□, B4W□, A4W□, B5W□, 12 × 18W□, 11 × 17W□, 8.5 × 11W□, Custom, SRA3□, SRA4□ (narrow) -20 to 20 (wide) 1 step = 1.0 mm
04 Half Fold Position Adjustment Adjust fold position in Half Fold fixed by saddle stitch unit for 1st fold (top of output set)	All Size, 11 × 17□, A3□, B4□, 8.5 × 14□, A4□, 8.5 × 11□, B5□, 8 × 13□, 8.125 × 13.25□, 8.5 × 13□, 8.25 × 13□, 8K□, 16K□, 12 × 18□, A3W□, B4W□, A4W□, B5W□, 12 × 18W□, 11 × 17W□, 8.5 × 11W□, Custom, SRA3□, SRA4□ (shorter) -50 to 50 (longer) 1 step = 0.1 mm
05 Multi Tri-Fold Position Adj. Adjust fold position in Multi Tri-Fold fixed by saddle stitch unit. When adjusting both, start with 1st fold.	All Size, A4□, 8.5 × 11□ 1st: (longer) -100 to 100 (shorter) 1 step = 0.1 mm 2nd: (shorter) -100 to 100 (longer) 1 step = 0.1 mm
06 Fold Paper Width Adjustment Change adjustment width if sheets cannot be aligned using Half Fold or Multi Tri-Fold.	All Size, 11 × 17□, A3□, B4□, 8.5 × 14□, A4□, 8.5 × 11□, B5□, 8 × 13□, 8.125 × 13.25□, 8.5 × 13□, 8.25 × 13□, 8K□, 16K□, 12 × 18□, A3W□, B4W□, A4W□, B5W□, 12 × 18W□, 11 × 17W□, 8.5 × 11W□, Custom, SRA3□, SRA4□, PI Paper (narrow) -50 to 50 (wide) 1 step = 0.1 mm

Menu item and description			Available range
		07 Trimming Adjustment Adjust trim width in Trimming. May not function properly if adjusted less than 2mm.	All Size, 11 × 17□, A3□, B4□, 8.5 × 14□, A4□, 8.5 × 11□, B5□, 8 × 13□, 8.125 × 13.25□, 8.5 × 13□, 8.25 × 13□, 8K□, 16K□, 12 × 18□, A3W□, B4W□, A4W□, B5W□, 12 × 18W□, 11 × 17W□, 8.5 × 11W□, Custom, SRA3□, SRA4□ (small) -400 to 400 (large) 1 step = 0.1 mm
		08 Trimming Receiver Adjustment Frequent trimming operations may cause damage to the receiver, resulting in trimming failures. Move the receiver automatically or manually.	Count Select for move Moving Pitch Select
	06 Perfect Binder Adjustment		
		01 Cover Trimming Adj. Adjust trim width of right cover lead edge. To align right and left cover lead edges, perform Cover Lead Edge Adj.	PB Tray, Main Body Tray (including PI Tray) (short) -128 to 127 (long) 1 step = 0.1 mm
		02 Cover Lead Edge Adj. Adjust position of left cover lead edge against body. Paper size used here refers to body size.	Main Body Tray: All Size, 8.5 × 11▯, A4▯, A5□, B5▯, A5▯, 5.5 × 8.5▯, Custom, 16K▯, 8.5 × 11W▯, 5.5 × 8.5W▯, A4W▯, A5W▯, B5W▯ PB Tray: All Size, 8.5 × 11▯, A4▯, A5□, B5▯, A5▯, 5.5 × 8.5▯, Custom, 16K▯, 8.5 × 11W▯, 5.5 × 8.5W▯, A4W▯, A5W▯, B5W▯ (short) -128 to 127 (long) 1 step = 0.1 mm
		03 Spine Corner form Pos. Adj. Adjust forming position of spine corner.	Front Adj., Rear Adj. (down, curved) -128 to 127 (up, angular) 1 step = 0.1 mm
		04 Glue Start Position Adj. Adjust position to start glue on body. Paper size used here refers to body size.	Ahead: All Size, 8.5 × 11▯, A4▯, B5▯, A5▯, 5.5 × 8.5▯, 16K▯, A4W▯, B5W▯, A5W▯, 8.5 × 11W▯, 5.5 × 8.5W▯, Custom Back: All Size, 8.5 × 11▯, A4▯, B5▯, A5▯, 5.5 × 8.5▯, 16K▯, A4W▯, B5W▯, A5W▯, 8.5 × 11W▯, 5.5 × 8.5W▯, Custom (sooner) -128 to 127 (later) 1 step = 0.1 mm

Menu item and description	Available range
05 Glue Finish Position Adj. Adjust position to finish glue on body. Paper size used here refers to body size.	Ahead: All Size, 8.5 × 11▯, A4▯, B5▯, A5▯, 5.5 × 8.5▯, 16K▯, A4W▯, B5W▯, A5W▯, 8.5 × 11W▯, 5.5 × 8.5W▯, Custom Back: All Size, 8.5 × 11▯, A4▯, B5▯, A5▯, 5.5 × 8.5▯, 16K▯, A4W▯, B5W▯, A5W▯, 8.5 × 11W▯, 5.5 × 8.5W▯, Custom (sooner) -128 to 127 (later) 1 step = 0.1 mm
06 Glue Form Finish Pos. Adj. Adjust position to even glue applied to body. Paper size used here refers to body size.	All Size, 8.5 × 11▯, A4▯, B5▯, A5▯, 5.5 × 8.5▯, 16K▯, A4W▯, B5W▯, A5W▯, 8.5 × 11W▯, 5.5 × 8.5W▯, Custom (sooner) -128 to 127 (later) 1 step = 0.1 mm
07 Temperature Adj. • Glue Tank-Top: Supply glue pellet when machine detects temperature of liquid surface lower than set point. Set higher in thermal environment.	Initial: 132°C Recommended: 128 to 136°C
• Glue Tank-Mid: Temperature to reach when warm up completed. Roller starts rotation. Setting higher helps glue temperature to be stable sooner.	Initial: 145°C Recommended: 140 to 145°C
• Glue Tank-Low Temperature to control tank heater. UP: viscosity decreased/DOWN: viscosity increased	Initial: 185°C Recommended: 180 to 190°C
• Glue Apply Roller Temperature to control roller heater and to support heating glue. UP: viscosity decreased/DOWN: viscosity increased	Initial: 165°C Recommended: 160 to 170°C
08 Sub Compile CD Width Adj. Change adjustment width if sheets cannot be aligned in body set at sub-compile part. Paper size used here refers to body size.	All Size, 8.5 × 11▯, A4▯, B5▯, A5▯, 5.5 × 8.5▯, 16K▯, A4W▯, B5W▯, A5W▯, 8.5 × 11W▯, 5.5 × 8.5W▯, Custom (wide) -20 to 20 (narrow) 1 step = 0.1 mm
09 Clamp CD Width Adj. Change adjustment width in crosswise direction if sheets cannot be aligned in body set. Paper size used here refers to body size.	All Size, 8.5 × 11▯, A4▯, B5▯, A5▯, 5.5 × 8.5▯, 16K▯, A4W▯, B5W▯, A5W▯, 8.5 × 11W▯, 5.5 × 8.5W▯, Custom (wide) -20 to 20 (narrow) 1 step = 0.1 mm
10 Cover Up/Down CD Width Adj. Change adjustment width for matching body set and cover in order to adjust their positions in crosswise direction.	PB Tray, Main Body Tray (including PI Tray) (wide) -20 to 20 (narrow) 1 step = 0.1 mm

Menu item and description	Available range
11 Clamp FD Position Adj. Change adjustment width in paper feed direction if sheets cannot be aligned in body set. Paper size used here refers to body size.	All Size, 8.5 × 11▯, A4▯, B5▯, A5▯, 5.5 × 8.5▯, 16K▯, A4W▯, B5W▯, A5W▯, 8.5 × 11W▯, 5.5 × 8.5W▯, Custom (wide) -20 to 20 (narrow) 1 step = 0.1 mm
07 Relay Stacker Adjustment	
01 Paper Width Adjustment Adjust position of relay stacker (RU) adjustment plate in crosswise direction. Perform if punch holes shift in crosswise direction.	All Size, 11 × 17▭, A3▭, B4▭, 8.5 × 14▭, A4▭, 8.5 × 11▭, 8.5 × 11▯, A4▯, B5▯, A5▯, 5.5 × 8.5▯, 8 × 13▭, 8.125 × 13.25▭, 8.5 × 13▭, 8.25 × 13▭, 8K▭, 16K▯, 16K▭, 12 × 18▭, A3W▭, B4W▭, A4W▯, A4W▭, B5W▯, A5W▯, 12 × 18W▭, 11 × 17W▭, 8.5 × 11W▯, 8.5 × 11W▭, 5.5 × 8.5W▯, Custom, SRA3▭, SRA4▭, 9 × 11▯ (narrow) -20 to 20 (wide) 1 step = 0.1 mm
02 Paper Length Adjustment Adjust position of relay stacker (RU) adjustment plate in paper feed direction. Perform if punch holes shift in paper feed direction.	All Size, 11 × 17▭, A3▭, B4▭, 8.5 × 14▭, A4▭, 8.5 × 11▭, 8.5 × 11▯, A4▯, B5▯, A5▯, 5.5 × 8.5▯, 8 × 13▭, 8.125 × 13.25▭, 8.5 × 13▭, 8.25 × 13▭, 8K▭, 16K▯, 16K▭, 12 × 18▭, A3W▭, B4W▭, A4W▯, A4W▭, B5W▯, A5W▯, 12 × 18W▭, 11 × 17W▭, 8.5 × 11W▯, 8.5 × 11W▭, 5.5 × 8.5W▯, Custom, SRA3▭, SRA4w, 9 × 11▯ (narrow) -50 to 50 (wide) 1 step = 0.1 mm
03 Size Memory Recovery Mode Perform drum pre-rotation for one minute if difference of density appears on the end of paper, using paper wider than that used in previous job.	Start
04 Charge Manual Cleaning Perform charging corona cleaning, if line or uneven density appears on half-tone image.	Start
05 Sensitive Drum Memory Recovery Mode Perform drum pre-rotation for 3 minutes, if uneven density caused by image pattern appears.	Start

3.2 Machine Adjustment

3.2.1 01 Magnification Adjustment \ 01 Printer FD-Mag. Adjustment <Side1>

Adjust the magnification in paper feed direction of printer engine.

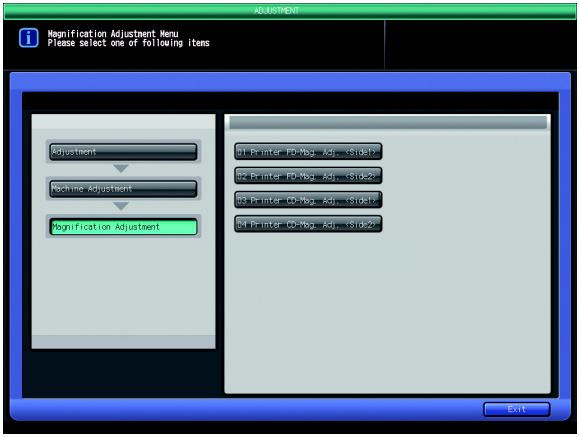
Available range:
(short) -10 to 10 (long), 1 step = 0.05%

Procedure

1 Touch [Adjustment] on the Machine Status Screen.

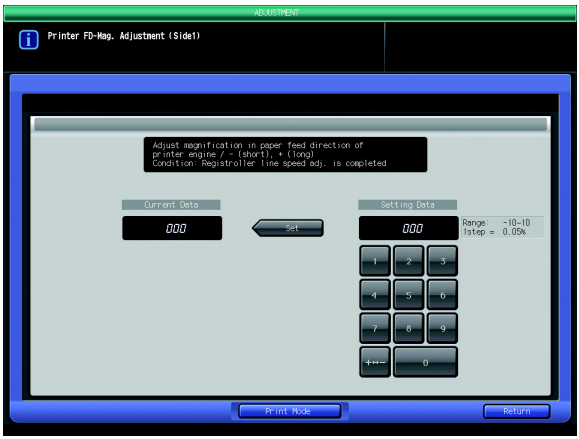
The Adjustment Menu Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch [01 Machine Adjustment], [01 Magnification Adjustment], and then [01 Printer FD-Mag. Adj. <Side1>].



The Printer FD-Mag. Adjustment <Side1> Screen will be displayed.

3 Touch [Print Mode].



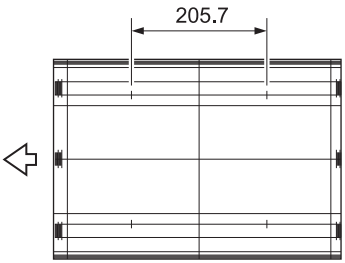
4 Load A3 ◪/11 × 17 ◪ paper into a tray, then select the tray on the screen.

5 Press [Start] on the control panel.

A sample pattern will be output.

6 Measure the resultant magnification to the direction of paper feed.

– Allowance: ±0.5% or less (1:1), within 205.7 ± 1 mm



7 If the desired result cannot be obtained, touch [Close] to return to the Printer FD-Mag. Adjustment <Side1> Screen.

8 Use the touch panel key to enter the desired adjustment value. Touch [+<->-] to specify the value to be positive or negative, then touch [SET].

9 Repeat the adjustment steps from 3 to 8 until the desired result is obtained.

10 Touch [Return] to restore the Magnification Adjustment Menu Screen.

3.2.2 01 Magnification Adjustment \ 02 Printer FD-Mag. Adjustment <Side2>

Adjust the magnification offset amount on reverse side in paper feed direction of printer engine.

Adjustment object:
Tray 1~Tray 8

Available range:
(short) -10 to 0 (long) 1 step = 0.05%

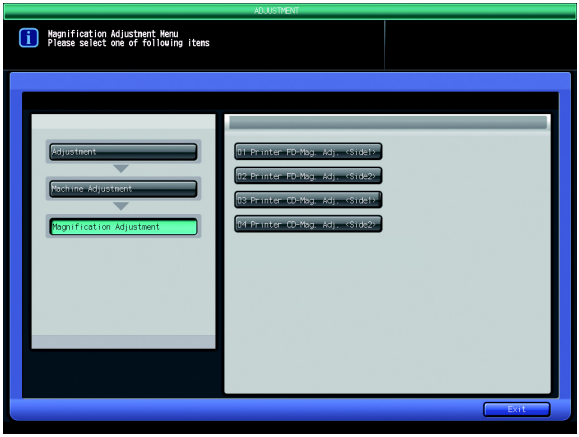
Reminder
[01 Printer FD-Magnification Adjustment <Side 1>] is supposed to be completed before this adjustment.

Procedure

1 Touch [Adjustment] on the Machine Status Screen.

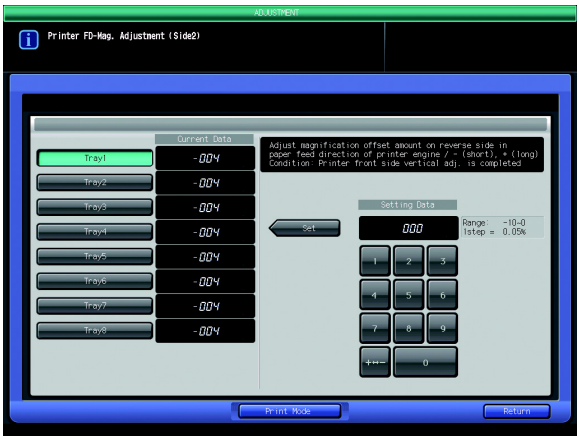
The Adjustment Menu Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch [01 Machine Adjustment], [01 Magnification Adjustment], and then [02 Printer FD-Mag. Adj. <Side2>].



The Printer FD-Mag. Adjustment <Side2> Screen will be displayed.

3 Touch a tray button of adjustment object to highlight it



4 Touch [Print Mode].

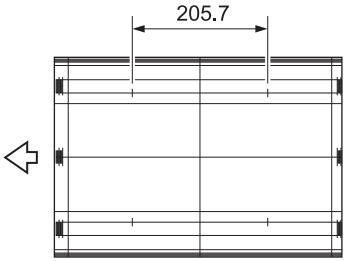
5 Load A3 ◪/11 × 17 ◪ paper into a tray, then select the tray on the screen.

6 Press [Start] on the control panel.

A sample pattern will be output.

7 Measure the resultant magnification to the direction of paper feed.

– Allowance: ±0.5% or less (1:1), within 205.7 ± 1 mm



8 If the desired result cannot be obtained, touch [Close] to return to the Printer FD-Mag. Adjustment <Side2> Screen.

9 Use the touch panel key to enter the desired adjustment value. Touch [+<->-] to specify the value to be positive or negative, then touch [SET].

10 Repeat the adjustment steps from 3 to 9 until the desired result is obtained.

11 Touch [Return] to restore the Magnification Adjustment Menu Screen.

3.2.3 01 Magnification Adjustment \ 03 Printer CD-Mag. Adjustment <Side1>

Adjust the magnification in crosswise direction of printer engine.

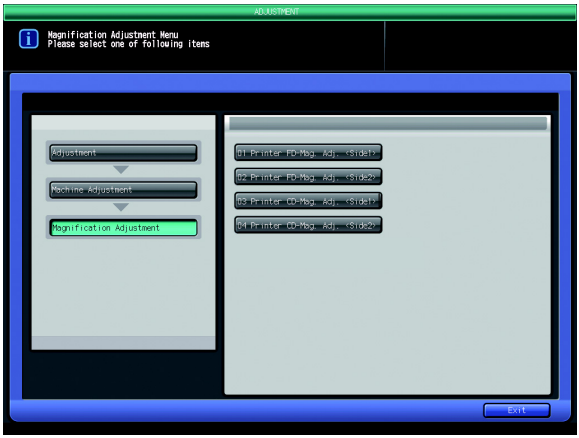
Available range:
(short) -10 to 10 (long) 1 step = 0.05%

Procedure

1 Touch [Adjustment] on the Machine Status Screen.

The Adjustment Menu Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch [01 Machine Adjustment], [01 Magnification Adjustment], and then [03 Printer CD-Mag. Adj. <Side1>].



The Printer CD-Mag. Adjustment <Side1> Screen will be displayed.

3 Touch [Print Mode].



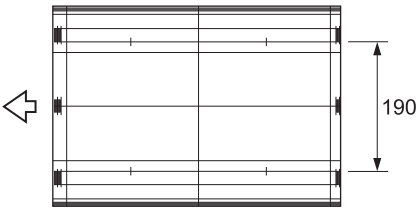
4 Load A3 ◪/11 × 17 ◪ paper into a tray, then select the tray on the screen.

5 Press [Start] on the control panel.

A sample pattern will be output.

6 Measure the resultant magnification perpendicular to the direction of paper feed.

– Allowance: ±0.5% or less (1:1), within 190 ± 1 mm



7 If the desired result cannot be obtained, touch [Close] to return to the Printer CD-Mag. Adjustment <Side1> Screen.

8 Use the touch panel key to enter the desired adjustment value. Touch [+<->-] to specify the value to be positive or negative, then touch [SET].

9 Repeat the adjustment steps from 3 to 8 until the desired result is obtained.

10 Touch [Return] to restore the Magnification Adjustment Menu Screen.

3.2.4 01 Magnification Adjustment \ 04 Printer CD-Mag. Adjustment <Side2>

Adjust the magnification offset amount on reverse side in crosswise direction of printer engine.

Adjustment object:
Tray 1~Tray 8

Available range:
(short) -10 to 0 (long) 1 step = 0.05%

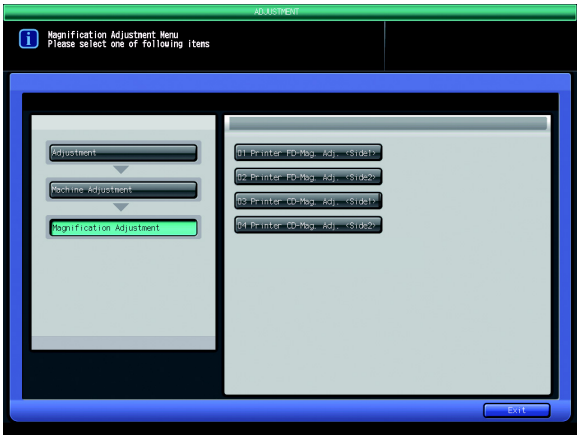
Reminder
[03 Printer CD-Magnification Adjustment <Side 1>] is supposed to be completed before this adjustment.

Procedure

1 Touch [Adjustment] on the Machine Status Screen.

The Adjustment Menu Screen will be displayed.

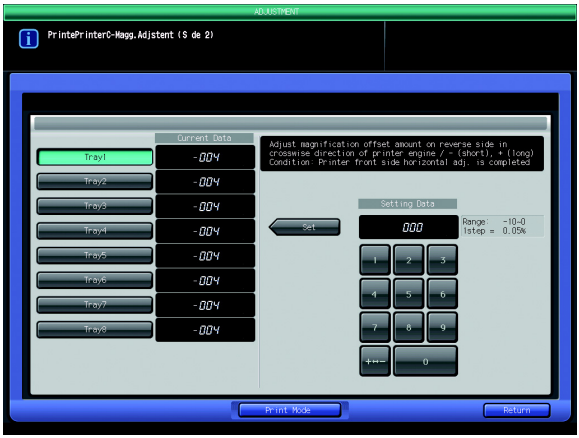
2 Touch [01 Machine Adjustment], [01 Magnification Adjustment], and then [04 Printer CD-Mag. Adj. <Side2>].



The Printer CD-Mag. Adjustment <Side2> Screen will be displayed.

3 Touch a tray button of adjustment object to highlight it.

4 Touch [Print Mode].



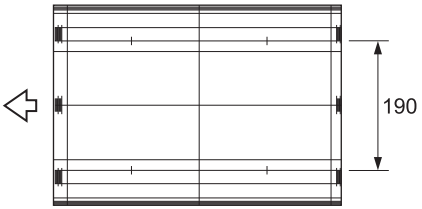
5 Load A3 ◪/11 × 17 ◪ paper into a tray, then select the tray on the screen.

6 Press [Start] on the control panel.

A sample pattern will be output.

7 Measure the resultant magnification perpendicular to the direction of paper feed.

– Allowance: ±0.5% or less (1:1), within 190 ± 1 mm



8 If the desired result cannot be obtained, touch [Close] to return to the Printer CD-Mag. Adjustment <Side2> Screen.

9 Use the touch panel key to enter the desired adjustment value. Touch [+<->-] to specify the value to be positive or negative, then touch [SET].

10 Repeat the adjustment steps from 3 to 9 until the desired result is obtained.

11 Touch [Return] to restore the Magnification Adjustment Menu Screen.

3.2.5 02 Timing Adjustment \ 01 Printer Restart Timing <Side1>

Adjust the lead edge in paper feed direction of printer engine.

Adjustment object:
All Tray, Tray 1 Offset to Tray 8 Offset

Available range:
(short) -30 to 30 (long) 1 step = 0.1 mm

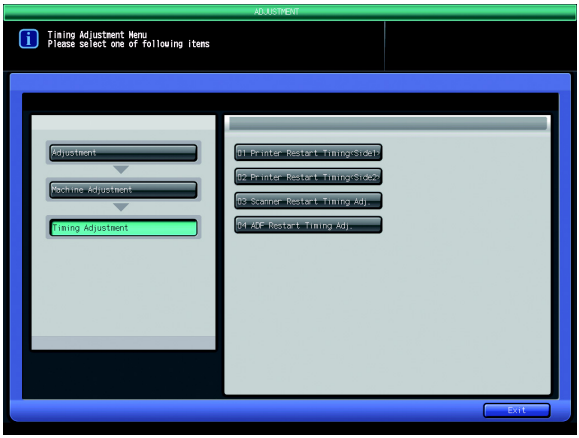
Reminder
01 Magnification Adjustment - 01 Printer FD-Mag. Adjustment <Side 1> is supposed to be completed before this adjustment.

Procedure

1 Touch [Adjustment] on the Machine Status Screen.

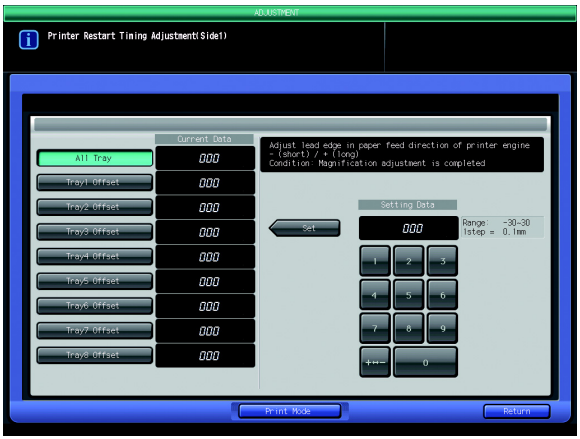
The Adjustment Menu Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch [01 Machine Adjustment], [02 Timing Adjustment], and then [01 Printer Restart Timing <Side1>].



The Printer Restart Timing <Side1> Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

3 Touch an item button of adjustment object to highlight it.



4 Touch [Print Mode].

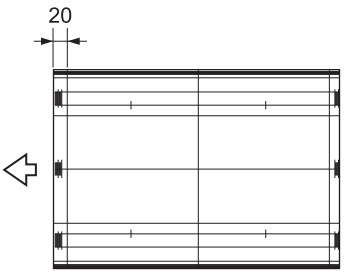
5 Load A3 ◪/11 × 17 ◪ paper into the tray selected in step 3, then select the tray on the screen.

6 Press [Start] on the control panel.

A sample pattern will be output.

7 Measure the resultant restart timing.

– Allowance: 20 ± 0.5 mm (AB series)/ 25.4 (1 inch) ± 0.5 mm (Inch series)



8 If the desired result cannot be obtained, touch [Close] to return to the Printer Restart Timing <Side1> Adjustment Screen.

9 Use the touch panel key to enter the desired adjustment value. Touch [+<->-] to specify the value to be positive or negative, then touch [SET].

10 Repeat the adjustment steps from 3 to 9 until the desired result is obtained.

11 Touch [Return] to restore the Timing Adjustment Menu Screen.

3.2.6 02 Timing Adjustment \ 02 Printer Restart Timing <Side2>

Adjust the lead edge offset amount on reverse side in feeding direction of printer engine.

Adjustment object:
Tray 1 Offset to Tray 8 Offset

Available range:
(short) -30 to 30 (long) 1 step = 0.1 mm

...

Reminder

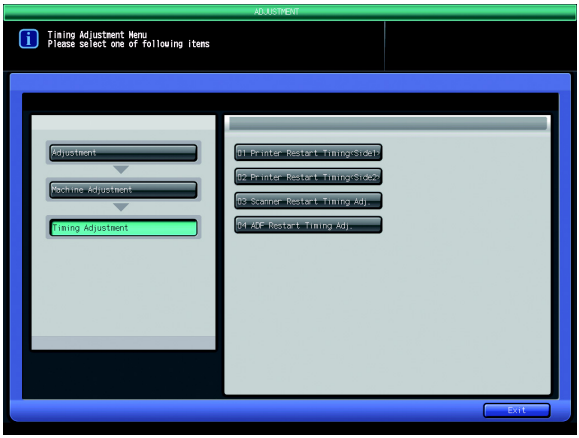
01 Magnification Adjustment - 02 Printer FD-Mag. Adjustment <Side 2> and 02 Timing Adjustment - 01 Printer Restart Timing <Side 1> are supposed to be completed before this adjustment.

Procedure

1 Touch [Adjustment] on the Machine Status Screen.

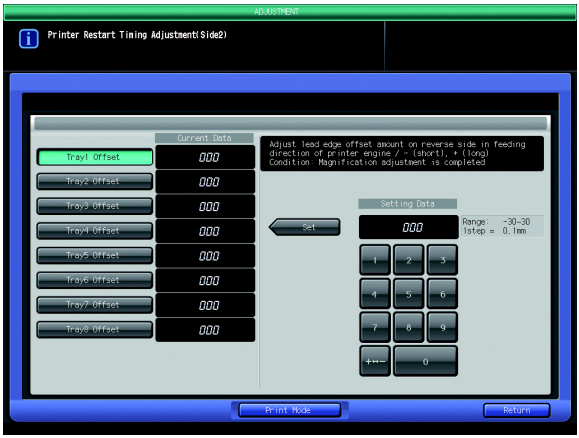
The Adjustment Menu Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch [01 Machine Adjustment], [02 Timing Adjustment], and then [02 Printer Restart Timing <Side2>].



The Printer Restart Timing <Side2> Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

3 Touch an item button of adjustment object to highlight it.



4 Touch [Print Mode].

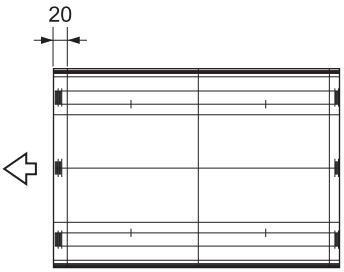
5 Load A3 ◪/11 × 17 ◪ paper into the tray selected in step 3, then select the tray on the screen.

6 Press [Start] on the control panel.

A sample pattern will be output.

7 Measure the resultant restart timing.

– Allowance: 20 ± 0.5 mm (AB series)/ 25.4 (1 inch) ± 0.5 mm (Inch series)



8 If the desired result cannot be obtained, touch [Close] to return to the Printer Restart Timing <Side2> Adjustment Screen.

9 Use the touch panel key to enter the desired adjustment value. Touch [+<->-] to specify the value to be positive or negative, then touch [SET].

10 Repeat the adjustment steps from 3 to 9 until the desired result is obtained.

11 Touch [Return] to restore the Timing Adjustment Menu Screen.

3.2.7 02 Timing Adjustment \ 03 Scanner Restart Timing Adjustment

Adjust the starting position of original image scanned from original glass.

Available range:
(forward) -40 to 40 (backward) 1 step = 0.1 mm

Reminder

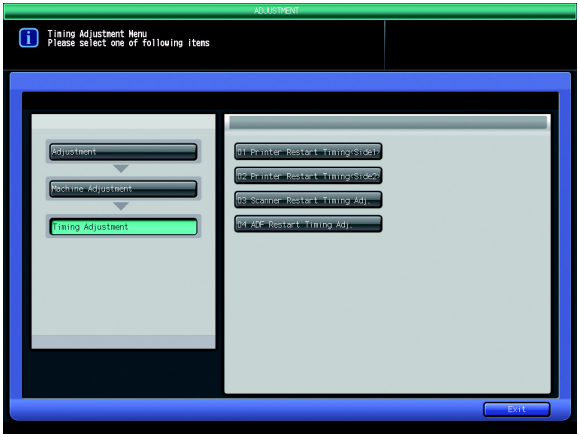
02 Timing Adjustment - 01 Printer Restart Timing <Side 1> and 02 Timing Adjustment - 02 Printer Restart Timing <Side 2> are supposed to be completed before this adjustment.

Procedure

1 Touch [Adjustment] on the Machine Status Screen.

The Adjustment Menu Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch [01 Machine Adjustment], [02 Timing Adjustment], and then [03 Scanner Restart Timing Adj.].



The Scanner Restart Timing Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

3 Touch [Print Mode].



4 Load A3 ◪/11 × 17 ◪ paper into a tray, then select the tray on the screen.

5 Position the test chart on the original glass, then press [Start] on the control panel.

6 Check the misalignment by comparing the original and the output.

– Allowance: 0 ± 1.5 mm

7 If the desired result cannot be obtained, touch [Close] to return to the Scanner Restart Timing Adjustment Screen.

8 Use the touch panel key to enter the desired adjustment value. Touch [+<->-] to specify the value to be positive or negative, then touch [SET].

9 Repeat the adjustment steps from 3 to 8 until the desired result is obtained.

10 Touch [Return] to restore the Timing Adjustment Menu Screen.

3.2.8 02 Timing Adjustment \ 04 ADF Restart Timing Adjustment

Adjust the starting position of original image scanned from ADF.

Adjustment object:
Side1, Side2

Available range:
(forward) -50 to 50 (backward), 1 step = 0.1 mm

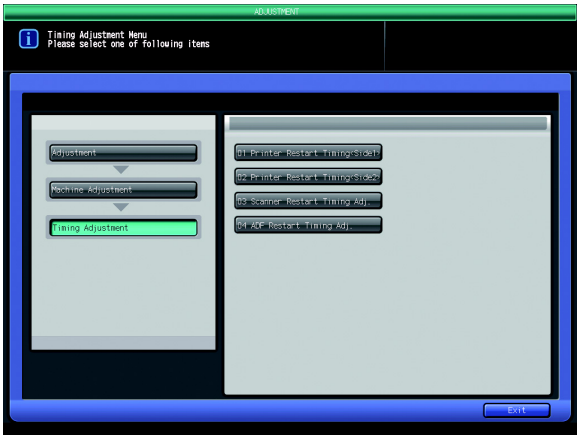
Reminder
02 Timing Adjustment - 01 Printer Restart Timing <Side 1> and 02 Timing Adjustment - 02 Printer Restart Timing <Side 2> are supposed to be completed before this adjustment.

Procedure

1 Touch [Adjustment] on the Machine Status Screen.

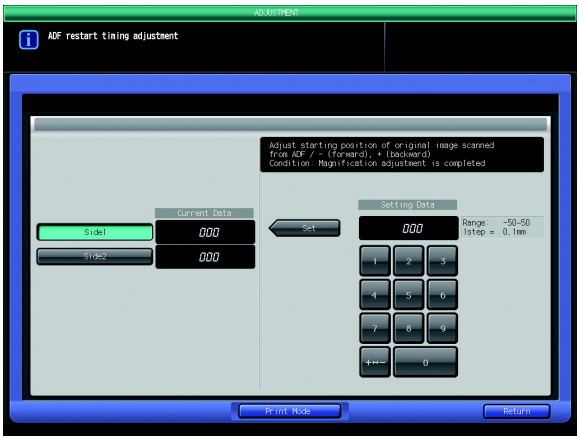
The Adjustment Menu Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch [01 Machine Adjustment], [02 Timing Adjustment], and then [04 ADF Restart Timing Adj.].



The ADF Restart Timing Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

3 Touch an item button of adjustment object to highlight it.



4 Touch [Print Mode].

5 Load A3 ◪/11 × 17 ◪ paper into a tray, then select the tray on the screen.

6 Position the test chart in the ADF, then press [Start] on the control panel.

7 Check the misalignment by comparing the original and the output.

– Allowance: 0 ± 2 mm

8 If the desired result cannot be obtained, touch [Close] to return to the ADF Restart Timing Adjustment Screen.

9 Use the touch panel key to enter the desired adjustment value. Touch [+<->-] to specify the value to be positive or negative, then touch [SET].

10 Repeat the adjustment steps from 3 to 9 until the desired result is obtained.

11 Touch [Return] to restore the Timing Adjustment Menu Screen.

3.2.9 03 Centering Adjustment \ 01 Printer Centering Adjustment

Adjust the image position in crosswise direction of printer engine.

Available range:
(forward) -64 to 63 (backward), 1 step = 0.1 mm

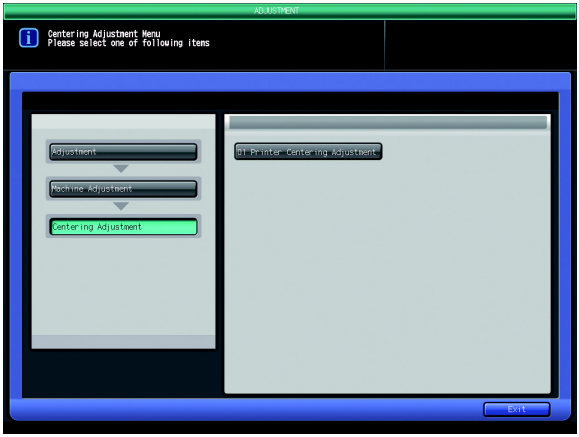
Reminder
01 Magnification Adjustment - 03 Printer CD-Mag. Adjustment <Side 1> and 01 Magnification Adjustment - 04 Printer CD-Mag. Adjustment <Side 2> are supposed to be completed before this adjustment.

Procedure

1 Touch [Adjustment] on the Machine Status Screen.

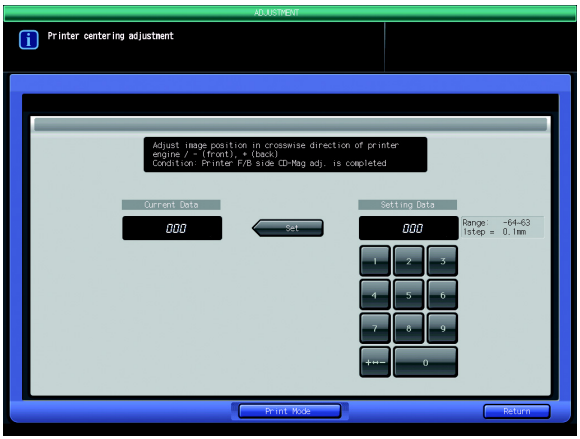
The Adjustment Menu Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch [01 Machine Adjustment], [03 Centering Adjustment], and then [01 Printer Centering Adjustment].



The Printer Centering Adjustment will be displayed.

3 Touch [Print Mode].



4 Load A3 ◪/11 × 17 ◪ paper into a tray, then select the tray on the screen.

5 Press [Start] on the control panel.

A sample pattern will be output.

6 Fold the output sheet at the center to the direction of paper feed and measure the distance between the lines on both side.

– Allowance: 0 ± 1.5 mm

7 If the desired result cannot be obtained, touch [Close] to return to the Printer Centering Adjustment Screen.

8 Use the touch panel key to enter the desired adjustment value. Touch [+<->-] to specify the value to be positive or negative, then touch [SET].

9 Repeat the adjustment steps from 3 to 8 until the desired result is obtained.

10 Touch [Return] to restore the Centering Adjustment Menu Screen.

3.2.10 04 LPH Adjustment \ 01 Gap Adjustment between LPH Chips

Adjust the gap (39 points) between LED chips.

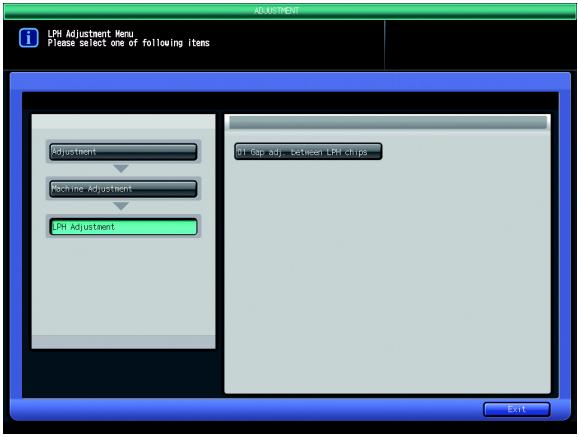
Available range:
-8 to 8 (1 step = 1%)

Procedure

1 Touch [Adjustment] on the Machine Status Screen.

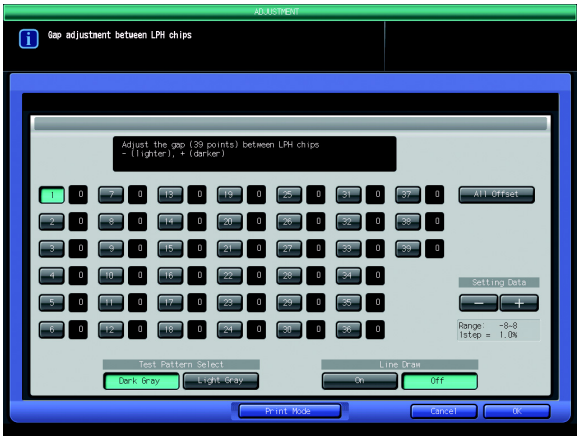
The Adjustment Menu Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch [01 Machine Adjustment], [04 LPH Adjustment], and then [01 Gap adj. between LPH chips].



The Gap Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

3 Touch [Dark Gray] or [Light Gray] of the “Test Pattern Select”.



4 Touch [Off] of the “Line Draw”, and then touch [Print Mode].

5 Load A4 ▯/8.5 × 11 ▯ paper into a tray, then select the tray on the screen.

6 Press [Start] on the control panel.

A sample pattern will be output.

7 Check the gap between LED chips.

8 If any gap is found, touch [Close] to return to the Gap Adjustment Screen.

9 Touch [On] of the “Line Draw”, and then touch [Print Mode].

10 Load A4 ▯/8.5 × 11 ▯ paper into a tray, then select the tray on the screen.

11 Press [Start] on the control panel.

A sample pattern will be output.

12 Compare the line position of the sample patterns in step 6 and step 11, and check the position to adjust the gap.

13 Touch [Close] to return to the Gap Adjustment Screen.

14 Touch the point key in which a gap is found, use [+] and [–] to enter the desired adjustment value, then touch [SET]. To adjust all points, touch [All Offset] before entering the adjustment value.

15 Repeat the adjustment steps from 3 to 14 until the desired result is obtained.

16 Touch [OK] to restore the Gap Adjustment Menu Screen.

3.3 02 Finisher Adjustment (FS-521)

3.3.1 01 Stapler Position Adjustment \ 01 Staple Center Position Adjustment

Adjust the center position of copied/printed sheets and of staples processed by the Staple Finisher FS-521.

Available range:
(forward) -20 to 20 (backward) (1 step = 0.1 mm)

...

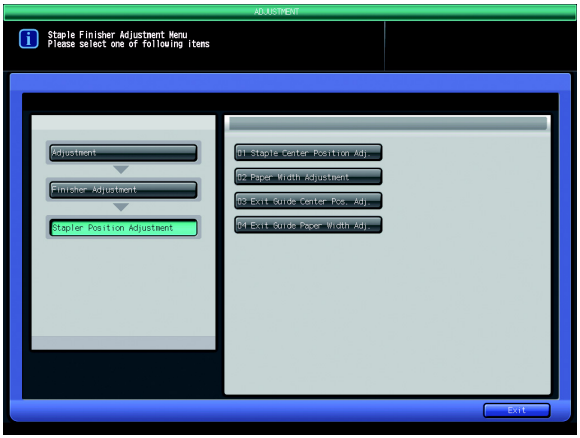
Reminder
01 Stapler Position Adjustment - 02 Paper Width Adjustment is supposed to be completed before this adjustment.

Procedure

1 Touch [Adjustment] on the Machine Status Screen.

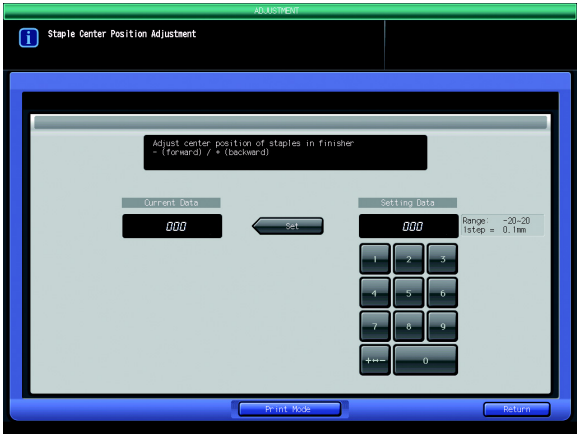
The Adjustment Menu Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch [02 Finisher Adjustment], [01 Stapler Position Adjustment], and then [01 Staple Center Position Adj.].



The Staple Center Position Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

3 Touch [Print Mode].



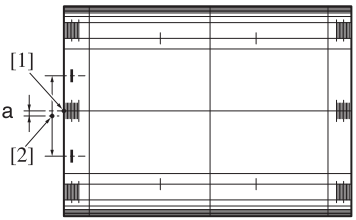
4 Load A3 ◪/11 × 17 ◪ paper into a tray, then select the tray on the screen.

5 Press [Start] on the control panel.

A sample pattern will be output.

6 Fold the output sheet in two on the center to the direction of paper feed and check misalignment (a) of the stapling center position.

– Allowance: a = ±3 mm



[1] Paper center [2] Stapling center position

7 If the desired result cannot be obtained, touch [Close] to return to the Printer Centering Adjustment Screen.

8 Use the touch panel key to enter the desired adjustment value. Touch [+<->-] to specify the value to be positive or negative, then touch [SET].

9 Repeat the adjustment steps from 3 to 8 until the desired result is obtained.

10 Touch [Return] to restore the Stapler Position Adjustment Menu Screen.

3.3.2 01 Stapler Position Adjustment \ 02 Paper Width Adjustment

Staple Mode:
Adjust the width of staple adjustment plate in Staple Finisher FS-521.

Straight Mode:
Change adjustment width for straight delivery of the Finisher. Output position may vary if width is too narrow.

Adjustment object:
All Size, 11 × 17, A3, B4, 8.5 × 14, A4, 8.5 × 11, 8.5 × 11, A4, B5, A5, 5.5 × 8.5, 8 × 13, 8.125 × 13.25, 8.5 × 13, 8.25 × 13, 8K, 16K, 16K, 12 × 18, A3W, B4W, A4W, A4W, B5W, A5W, 12 × 18W, 11 × 17W, 8.5 × 11W, 8.5 × 11W, 5.5 × 8.5W, Custom, SRA3, SRA4, 9 × 11

Available range:
(wide) -20 to 20 (narrow) (1 step = 0.1 mm)

...

Note

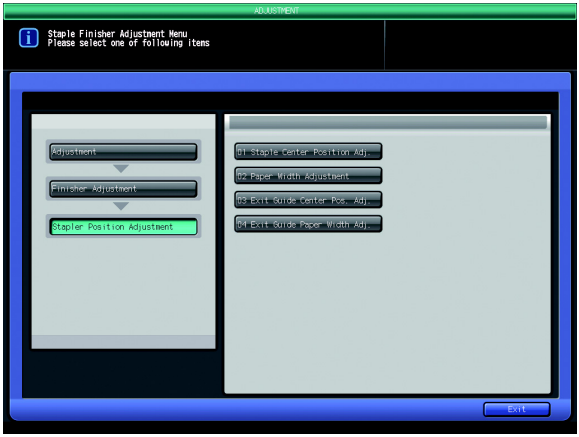
With [All Size] selected, the entered value will be applied to all paper sizes. With a specific paper size selected, the adjustment value will be the sum of those entered for both [All Size] and a specific size.

Procedure

1 Touch [Adjustment] on the Machine Status Screen.

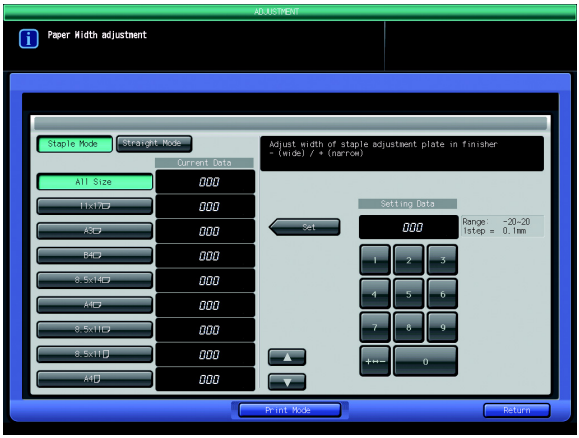
The Adjustment Menu Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch [02 Finisher Adjustment], [01 Stapler Position Adjustment], and then [02 Paper Width Adjustment].



The Paper Width Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

3 Touch [Staple Mode] or [Straight Mode] to highlight it.



4 Using [▲] [▼] buttons to scroll the size buttons, touch the desired button to highlight it.

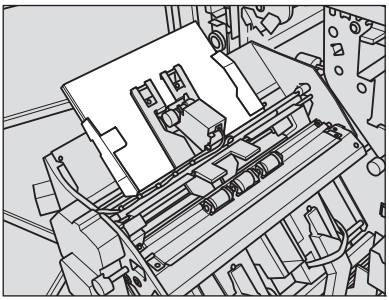
5 Touch [Print Mode].

6 Load the paper of the size selected in step 4, then select the tray on the screen.

7 Press [Start] on the control panel. A sample pattern will be output.

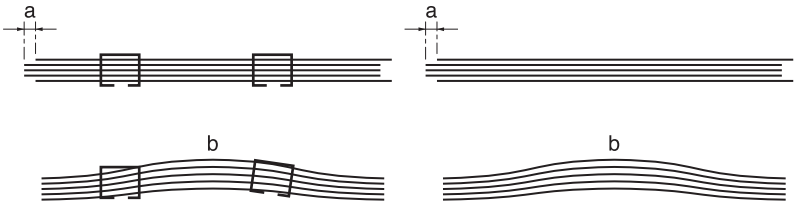
8 Open the finisher door, and withdraw the staple unit.

- When selecting the paper whose length side is 239 mm or longer, the staple unit cannot be withdrawn.
- Remove output paper from the paper exit side, withdraw the staple unit, and then reset the output paper in the unit.



9 Check the alignment between the fixed plates and output paper.

- Allowance in Straight Mode: 0.1 to 1 mm
  Allowance in Staple Mode: 0 ± 0.5 mm
- Check misalignment (a), in which misalignment occurs if the paper width setting is larger than the actual width, or paper curving (b), in which a sample set is curved if the paper width setting is smaller than the actual width has occurred.



10 Remove the paper, return the staple unit to its original position, then close the Staple Finisher door.

11 If the desired result cannot be obtained, touch [Close] to return to the Printer Centering Adjustment Screen.

12 Use the touch panel key to enter the desired adjustment value. Touch [+<->-] to specify the value to be positive or negative, then touch [SET].

13 Repeat the adjustment steps from 5 to 12 until the desired result is obtained.

14 Touch [Return] to restore the Stapler Position Adjustment Menu Screen.

3.3.3 01 Stapler Position Adjustment \ 03 Exit Guide Center Position Adjustment

Adjust the finisher exit guide unit to the center position of paper in Stapler Finisher FS-521.

Adjustment object:
Straight (Small size), Straight (Large size), Shift-front (Small size), Shift-front (Large size), Shift-rear (Small size), Shift-rear (Large size)

Available range:
(forward) -50 to 50 (backward) (1 step = 0.1 mm)

...

Reminder

01 Stapler Position Adjustment - 02 Paper Width Adjustment is supposed to be completed before this adjustment.
Also perform 01 Stapler Position Adjustment - 04 Exit Guide Paper Width Adj. together with this adjustment.

...

Note

This adjustment is effective against the paper whose width in horizontal scanning direction is 182 mm (B5 ▭) or more in straight delivery, or 210 mm (A4 ▭) or more in shift delivery.
Small sizes such as A5 ▭, B6 ▭, and 5.5 × 8.5 ▭ cannot be used because the exit guides will not operate for those small sizes.

...

Note

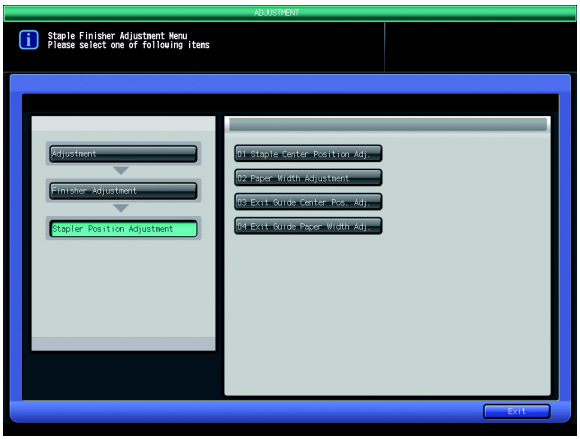
Small/Large sizes are not the same between the delivery types. See the following for examples in standard size.
Small sizes in straight delivery: A4 ▭/▯, B5 ▭/▯, A5 ▯, 8.5 × 11 ▭/▯, 5.5 × 8.5 ▯
Large sizes in straight delivery: A3 ▭, B4 ▭, 12 × 18 ▭, 11 × 17 ▭, Foolscap
Small sizes in shift delivery (front/rear): A4 ▭/▯, B5 ▯, 8.5 × 11 ▭/▯, 5.5 × 8.5 ▯
Large sizes in shift delivery (front/rear): A3 ▭, B4 ▭, 12 × 18 ▭, 11 × 17 ▭, Foolscap

Procedure

1 Touch [Adjustment] on the Machine Status Screen.

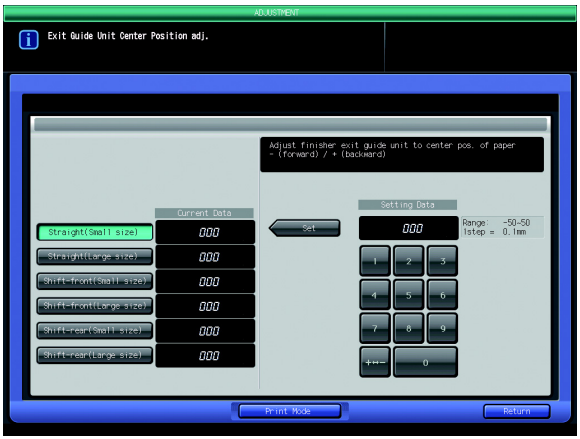
The Adjustment Menu Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch [02 Finisher Adjustment], [01 Stapler Position Adjustment], and then [03 Exit Guide Center Pos. Adj.].



The Exit Guide Center Position Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

3 Touch the desired button to select the condition for adjusting the center position of exit guides.



– [Straight (Small size)]: Using small size paper (182 mm or more in length, 297 mm or less in width) in straight delivery
[Straight (Large size)]: Using large size paper (182 mm or more in length, 298 mm or more in width) in straight delivery
[Shift-front (Small size)]: Using small size paper (210 mm or more in length, 297 mm or less in width) in shift delivery to the front
[Shift-front (Large size)]: Using large size paper (210 mm or more in length, 298 mm or more in width) in shift delivery to the front
[Shift-rear (Small size)]: Using small size paper (210 mm or more in length, 297 mm or less in width) in shift delivery to the rear
[Shift-rear (Large size)]: Using large size paper (210 mm or more in length, 298 mm or more in width) in shift delivery to the rear

4 Touch [Print Mode].

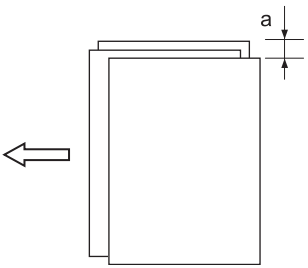
5 Load the paper of the size to be adjusted, then select the tray on the screen.

6 Press [Start] on the control panel.

A sample pattern will be output.

7 Check the misalignment (a) of the sheets delivered to the main tray.

– Check the slippage between output sheets and exit guides in operation, and estimate the adjustment value from it.



8 If the desired result cannot be obtained, touch [Close] to return to the Printer Centering Adjustment Screen.

9 Use the touch panel key to enter the desired adjustment value. Touch [+<->-] to specify the value to be positive or negative, then touch [SET].

10 Repeat the adjustment steps from 4 to 9 until the desired result is obtained.

11 Touch [Return] to restore the Stapler Position Adjustment Menu Screen.

...

Reminder

Use the same adjustment value for small and large sizes in straight delivery.

The adjustment value in straight delivery will not be carried to the shift amount in shift delivery.

Setting excessively estimated value, exit guides may interfere with output sheets in delivery. Be sure to check the operation of exit guides when making the adjustment.

When making the adjustment for shift delivery, be sure neither to have a gap along the fixed exit guide nor to give a stress to output sheets.

3.3.4 01 Stapler Position Adjustment \ 04 Exit Guide Paper Width Adjustment

Adjust the paper width determined by exit guides of the Staple Finisher FS-521.

Adjustment object:
All Size, 11 × 17 ▭, A3 ▭, B4 ▭, 8.5 × 14 ▭, A4 ▭, 8.5 × 11 ▭, 8.5 × 11 ▯, A4 ▯, B5 ▯, A5 ▯, 5.5 × 8.5 ▯, 8 × 13 ▭, 8.125 × 13.25 ▭, 8.5 × 13 ▭, 8.25 × 13 ▭, 8K ▭, 16K ▯, 16K ▭, 12 × 18 ▭, A3W ▭, B4W ▭, A4W ▯, A4W ▭, B5W ▯, A5W ▯, 12 × 18W ▭, 11 × 17W ▭, 8.5 × 11W ▯, 8.5 × 11W ▭, 5.5 × 8.5W ▯, Custom, SRA3 ▭, SRA4 ▭, 9 × 11 ▯

Available range:
(wide) -50 to 50 (narrow) (1 step = 0.1 mm)

Reminder
01 Stapler Position Adjustment - 02 Paper Width Adjustment is supposed to be completed before this adjustment.
Also perform 01 Stapler Position Adjustment - 03 Exit Guide Center Pos. Adj. together with this adjustment.

Note
With [All Size] selected, the entered value will be applied to all paper sizes. With a specific paper size selected, the adjustment value will be the sum of those entered for both [All Size] and a specific size.

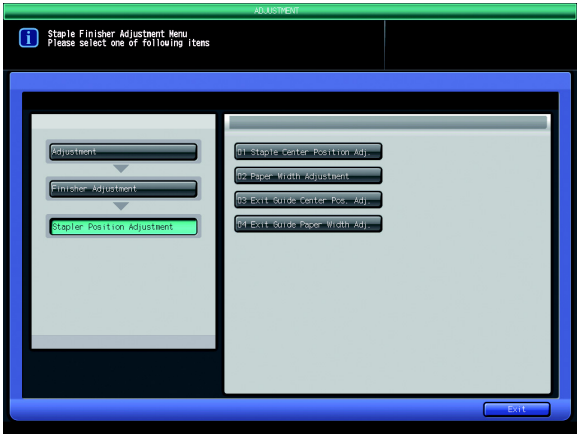
This adjustment is effective against the paper whose width in horizontal scanning direction is 182 mm (B5 ▭) or more in straight delivery, or 210 mm (A4 ▭) or more in shift delivery.
Small sizes such as A5 ▭, B6 ▭, and 5.5 × 8.5 ▭ cannot be used because the exit guides will not operate for those small sizes.

Procedure

1 Touch [Adjustment] on the Machine Status Screen.

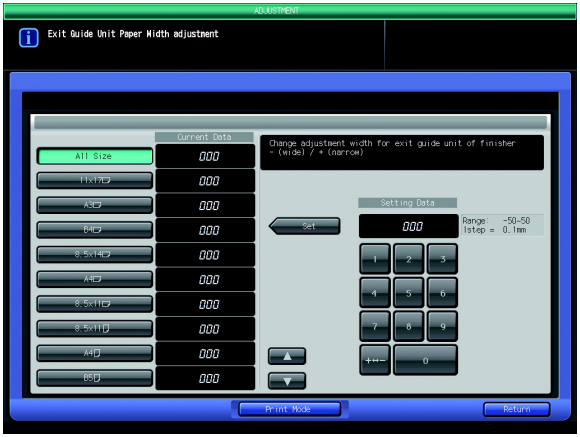
The Adjustment Menu Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch [02 Finisher Adjustment], [01 Stapler Position Adjustment], and then [04 Exit Guide Paper Width Adj.].



The Exit Guide Paper Width Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

3 Using [▲] [▼] buttons to scroll the size buttons, touch the desired button to highlight it.



4 Touch [Print Mode].

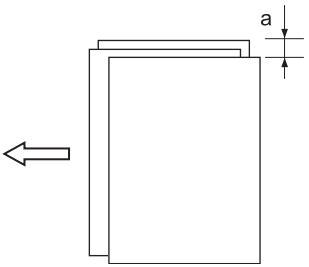
5 Load the paper of the size to be adjusted, then select the tray on the screen.

6 Press [Start] on the control panel.

A sample pattern will be output.

7 Check the misalignment (a) of the sheets delivered to the main tray.

– Check the slippage between output sheets and exit guides in operation, and estimate the adjustment value from it.



8 If the desired result cannot be obtained, touch [Close] to return to the Printer Centering Adjustment Screen.

9 Use the touch panel key to enter the desired adjustment value. Touch [+<->-] to specify the value to be positive or negative, then touch [SET].

10 Repeat the adjustment steps from 4 to 9 until the desired result is obtained.

11 Touch [Return] to restore the Stapler Position Adjustment Menu Screen.

...

Reminder

Adjusting the width too narrow, output sheets may be misaligned in vertical scanning direction.

3.4 02 Finisher Adjustment (FD-503)

3.4.1 02 Multi Folder (Hole-Punch) Adjustment \ 01 Paper Width Adjustment

Adjust paper width of each size carried through the Folding Unit FD-503.

Adjustment object:
All Size, 11 × 17 ▭, A3 ▭, B4 ▭, 8.5 × 14 ▭, A4 ▭, 8.5 × 11 ▭, B5 ▭, 8.5 × 11 ▯, A4 ▯, A5 ▭, B5 ▯, A5 ▯, 5.5 × 8.5 ▯, 8 × 13 ▭, 8.125 × 13.25 ▭, 8.5 × 13 ▭, 8.25 × 13 ▭, 8K ▭, 16K ▯, 16K ▭, 12 × 18 ▭, SRA4 ▭, 9 × 11 ▯

Available range:
(narrow) -20 to 20 (wide) (1 step = 0.1 mm)

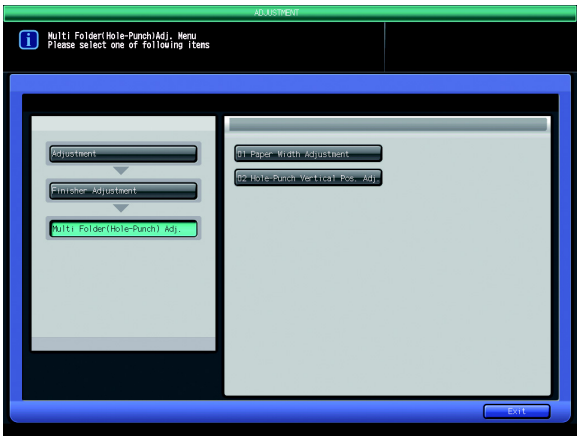
Note
With [All Size] selected, the entered value will be applied to all paper sizes. With a specific paper size selected, the adjustment value will be the sum of those entered for both [All Size] and a specific size.

Procedure

1 Touch [Adjustment] on the Machine Status Screen.

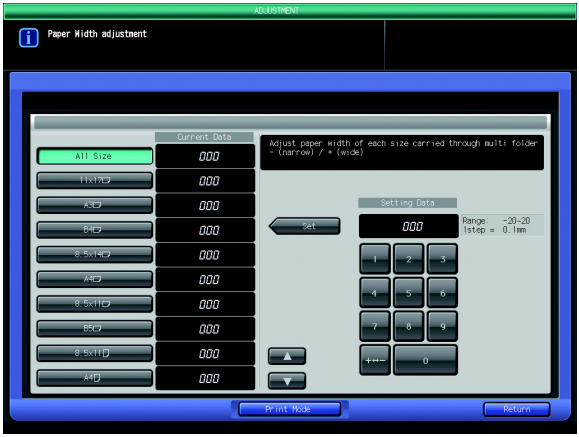
The Adjustment Menu Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch [02 Finisher Adjustment], [02 Multi Folder (Hole-Punch) Adj.], and then [01 Paper Width Adjustment].



The Paper Width Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

3 Using [▲] [▼] buttons to scroll the size buttons, touch the desired button to highlight it.



4 Touch [Print Mode].

5 Load the paper of the size to be adjusted, then select the tray on the screen.

6 Specify the set number to 10, then press [Start] on the control panel.

A sample pattern will be output.

7 Check the diameter of penetrated holes when output sheets are piled up.

– Allowance: 5.0 mm or more for 2-Hole, 6.5 mm or more for 3-Hole

8 If the desired result cannot be obtained, touch [Close] to return to the Paper Width Adjustment Screen.

9 Use the touch panel key to enter the desired adjustment value. Touch [+<->-] to specify the value to be positive or negative, then touch [SET].

10 Repeat the adjustment steps from 4 to 9 until the desired result is obtained.

11 Touch [Return] to restore the Multi Folder (Hole-Punch) Adjustment Menu Screen.

...

Note

If the setting is too wide, the center position of punch holes may dislocate. If the setting is too narrow, the position of punch holes may vary.

3.4.2 02 Multi Folder (Hole-Punch) Adjustment \ 02 Hole-Punch Vertical Position Adjustment

Adjust the position of punch holes to the direction of paper feed.

Punch holes can be adjusted separately for 2-hole punch and 3-hole punch.

Adjustment object:
2 holes:
All Size, 11 × 17, A3, B4, 8.5 × 14, A4, 8.5 × 11, B5, 8.5 × 11, A4, A5, B5, A5, 5.5 × 8.5, 8 × 13, 8.125 × 13.25, 8.5 × 13, 8.25 × 13, 8K, 16K, 16K, 12 × 18, SRA4, 9 × 11

3 holes:
All Size, 11 × 17, A3, B4, 8.5 × 11, A4, B5, 8K, 16K, 12 × 18, 9 × 11

Available range:
(wider) -40 to 40 (narrower) (1 step = 0.1 mm)

...

Note

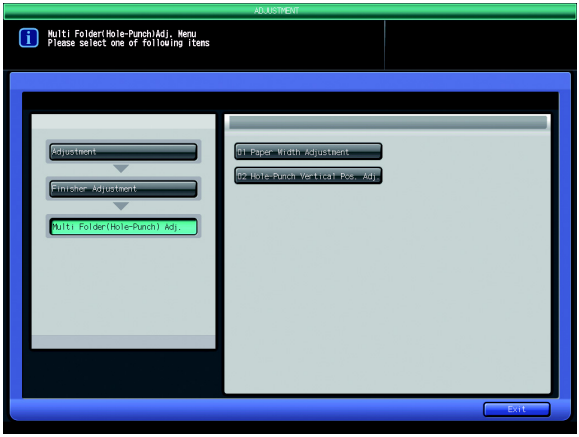
With [All Size] selected, the entered value will be applied to all paper sizes. With a specific paper size selected, the adjustment value will be the sum of those entered for both [All Size] and a specific size.

Procedure

1 Touch [Adjustment] on the Machine Status Screen.

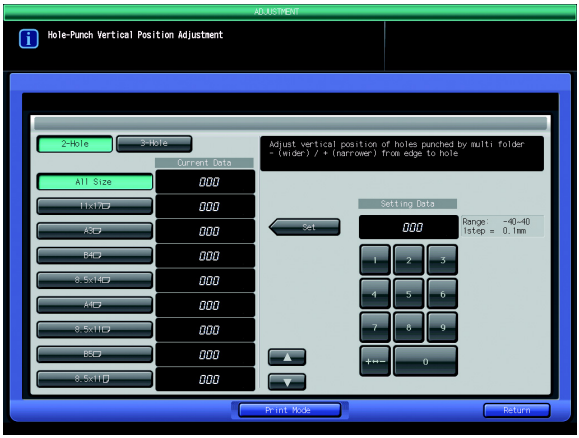
The Adjustment Menu Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch [02 Finisher Adjustment], [02 Multi Folder (Hole-Punch) Adj.], and then [02 Hole-Punch Vertical Pos. Adj.].



The Hole-Punch Vertical Position Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

3 Touch [2-Hole] or [3-Hole].



4 Using [▲] [▼] buttons to scroll the size buttons, touch the desired button to highlight it.

5 Touch [Print Mode].

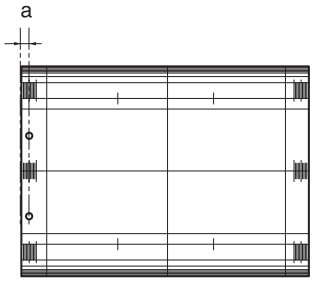
6 Load the paper of the size to be adjusted, then select the tray on the screen.

7 Press [Start] on the control panel.

A sample pattern will be output.

8 Measure the (a) from the edge of the feeding sheet to the center position of the punch hole.

– Allowance: 10.5 ± 4.0 mm for 2-Hole, 9.5 ± 4.0 mm for 3-Hole



9 If the desired result cannot be obtained, touch [Close] to return to the Hole-Punch Vertical Position Adjustment Screen.

10 Use the touch panel key to enter the desired adjustment value. Touch [+<->-] to specify the value to be positive or negative, then touch [SET].

11 Repeat the adjustment steps from 5 to 10 until the desired result is obtained.

12 Touch [Return] to restore the Multi Folder (Hole-Punch) Adjustment Menu Screen.

3.4.3 03 Multi Folder (Fold) Adjustment \ 01 Half Fold Position Adjustment

Perform this adjustment for the half fold position processed by the Folding Unit FD-503.

Adjustment object:
All Size, 11 × 17 ◪, A3 ◪, B4 ◪, 8.5 × 14 ◪, A4 ◪, 8.5 × 11 ◪, 8K ◪, 12 × 18 ◪, Custom, SRA4 ◪

Available range:
(shorter) -50 to 50 (longer) (1 step = 0.1 mm)

Note

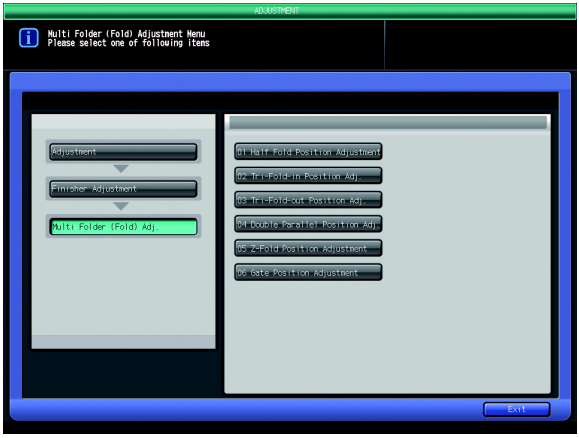
With [All Size] selected, the entered value will be applied to all paper sizes. With a specific paper size selected, the adjustment value will be the sum of those entered for both [All Size] and a specific size.

Procedure

1 Touch [Adjustment] on the Machine Status Screen.

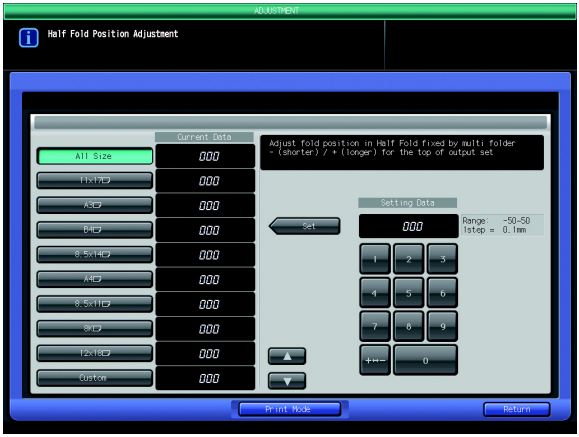
The Adjustment Menu Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch [02 Finisher Adjustment], [03 Multi Folder (Fold) Adj.], and then [01 Half Fold Position Adjustment].



The Half Fold Position Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

3 Using [▲] [▼] buttons to scroll the size buttons, touch the desired button to highlight it.



4 Touch [Print Mode].

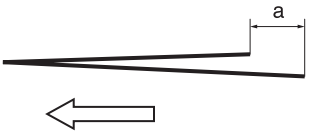
5 Load the paper of the size to be adjusted, then select the tray on the screen.

6 Press [Start] on the control panel.

A sample pattern will be output.

7 Measure the (a) in the edge of the feeding sheets.

– Allowance: a = 0 ± 1.5 mm



8 If the desired result cannot be obtained, touch [Close] to return to the Half Fold Position Adjustment Screen.

9 Use the touch panel key to enter the desired adjustment value. Touch [+<->-] to specify the value to be positive or negative, then touch [SET].

– The measurement (a) in step 7 will decrease when the “+” value is entered, and increase when the “-” value is entered.

10 Repeat the adjustment steps from 4 to 9 until the desired result is obtained.

11 Touch [Return] to restore the Multi Folder (Fold) Adjustment Menu Screen.

3.4.4 03 Multi Folder (Fold) Adjustment \ 02 Tri-Fold-in Position Adjustment

Perform this adjustment for the folding positions in Tri-Fold-in mode processed by the Folding Unit FD-503.

Adjustment object:
All Size, 11 × 17 ◪, A3 ◪, B4 ◪, 8.5 × 14 ◪, A4 ◪, 8.5 × 11 ◪, 8K ◪, 12 × 18 ◪, Custom, SRA4 ◪

Available range:
(shorter) -50 to 50 (longer) (1 step = 0.1 mm)

Allowance: a ± 1.5 mm, b ± 1.5 mm

Paper size	a	b
11" × 17"◪	142.9 mm	145.9 mm
A3◪	139.0 mm	142.0 mm
B4◪	116.6 mm	119.6 mm
8.5" × 14"◪	117.5 mm	120.5 mm
A4◪	98.0 mm	101.0 mm
8.5" × 11"◪	92.1 mm	95.1 mm
8K◪	129.0 mm	132.0 mm
12" × 18"◪	151.4 mm	154.4 mm
SRA4◪	105.6 mm	108.6 mm

Reminder
When adjusting both Single Fold and Double Fold, be sure to start with the Double Fold adjustment.

...

Note

The baseline of Single Fold is calculated from the edge of the sheet, while that of Double Fold is calculated from the position of the first fold line, therefore the measurement (b) in step 7 will be altered by changing the position of either Single Fold or Double Fold.

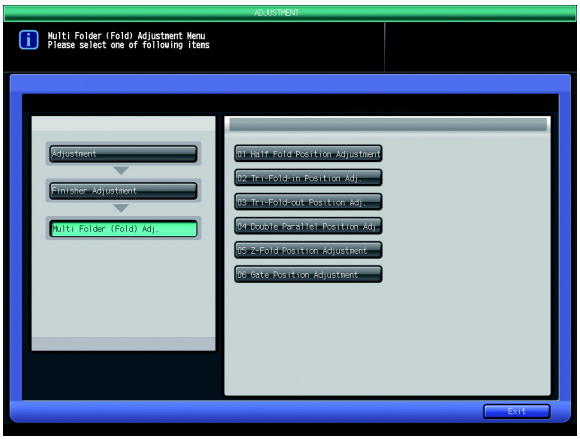
With [All Size] selected, the entered value will be applied to all paper sizes. With a specific paper size selected, the adjustment value will be the sum of those entered for both [All Size] and a specific size.

Procedure

1 Touch [Adjustment] on the Machine Status Screen.

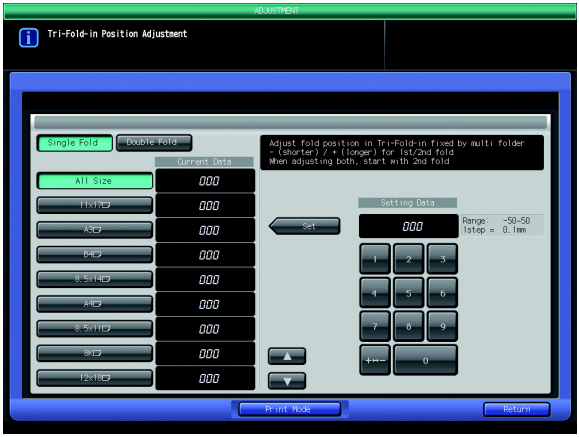
The Adjustment Menu Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch [02 Finisher Adjustment], [03 Multi Folder (Fold) Adj.], and then [02 Tri-Fold-in Position Adj.].



The Tri-Fold-in Position Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

3 Using [▲] [▼] buttons to scroll the size buttons, touch the desired button to highlight it.



4 Touch [Print Mode].

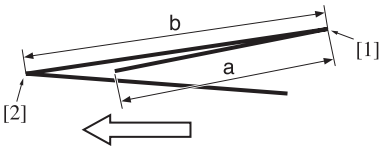
5 Load the paper of the size to be adjusted, then select the tray on the screen.

6 Press [Start] on the control panel.

A sample pattern will be output.

7 Measure (a) and (b) on the output sheet.

– Allowance: a ± 1.5 mm, b ± 1.5 mm



[1] Single fold [2] Double fold

8 If the desired result cannot be obtained, touch [Close] to return to the Tri-Fold-in Position Adjustment Screen.

9 Touch [Double Fold].

10 Use the touch panel key to enter the desired adjustment value. Touch [+<->-] to specify the value to be positive or negative, then touch [SET].

– The measurement (a) in step 7 will decrease when the “+” value is entered, and increase when the “-” value is entered.

11 Touch [Single Fold], then repeat step 10.

– The measurement (b) in step 7 will decrease when the “+” value is entered, and increase when the “-” value is entered.

12 Repeat steps 4 to 11 until the desired result is obtained.

13 Touch [Return] to restore the Multi Folder (Fold) Adjustment Menu Screen.

3.4.5 03 Multi Folder (Fold) Adjustment \ 03 Tri-Fold-out Position Adjustment

Perform this adjustment for the folding positions in Tri-Fold-out mode processed by the Folding Unit FD-503.

Adjustment object:
All Size, 11 × 17 ◪, A3 ◪, B4 ◪, 8.5 × 14 ◪, A4 ◪, 8.5 × 11 ◪, 8K ◪, 12 × 18 ◪, Custom, SRA4 ◪

Available range:
(shorter) -50 to 50 (longer) (1 step = 0.1 mm)

Allowance: a ± 1.5 mm, b ± 1.5 mm

Paper size	a	b
11" × 17"◪	289.9 mm	147.9 mm
A3◪	282.0 mm	144.0 mm
B4◪	236.3 mm	119.6 mm
8.5" × 14"◪	238.1 mm	120.5 mm
A4◪	199.0 mm	101.0 mm
8.5" × 11"◪	187.3 mm	95.1 mm
8K◪	262.0 mm	134.0 mm
12" × 18"◪	306.8 mm	156.4 mm
SRA4◪	214.3 mm	108.6 mm

Reminder

When adjusting both Single Fold and Double Fold, be sure to start with the Double Fold adjustment.

Note

The baseline of Single Fold is calculated from the edge of the sheet, while that of Double Fold is calculated from the position of the first fold line, therefore the measurement (b) in step 7 will be altered by changing the position of either Single Fold or Double Fold.

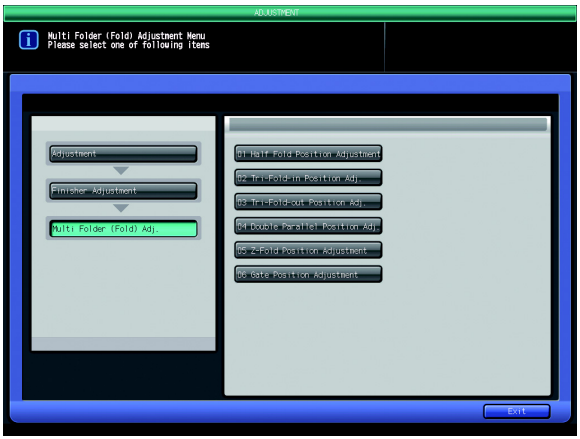
With [All Size] selected, the entered value will be applied to all paper sizes. With a specific paper size selected, the adjustment value will be the sum of those entered for both [All Size] and a specific size.

Procedure

1 Touch [Adjustment] on the Machine Status Screen.

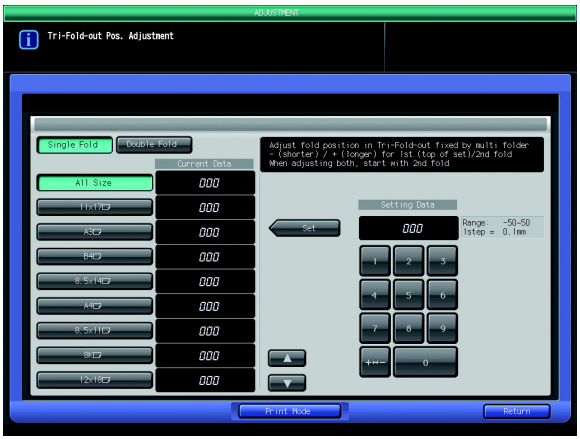
The Adjustment Menu Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch [02 Finisher Adjustment], [03 Multi Folder (Fold) Adj.], and then [03 Tri-Fold-out Position Adj.].



The Tri-Fold-out Position Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

3 Using [▲] [▼] buttons to scroll the size buttons, touch the desired button to highlight it.



4 Touch [Print Mode].

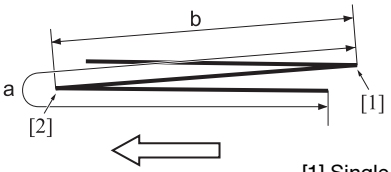
5 Load the paper of the size to be adjusted, then select the tray on the screen.

6 Press [Start] on the control panel.

A sample pattern will be output.

7 Measure (a) and (b) on the output sheet.

– Allowance: a ± 1.5 mm, b ± 1.5 mm



[1] Single fold [2] Double fold

8 If the desired result cannot be obtained, touch [Close] to return to the Tri-Fold-out Position Adjustment Screen.

9 Touch [Double Fold].

10 Use the touch panel key to enter the desired adjustment value. Touch [+<->-] to specify the value to be positive or negative, then touch [SET].

– The measurement (a) in step 7 will decrease when the “+” value is entered, and increase when the “-” value is entered.

11 Touch [Single Fold], then repeat step 10.

– The measurement (b) in step 7 will decrease when the “+” value is entered, and increase when the “-” value is entered.

12 Repeat steps 4 to 11 until the desired result is obtained.

13 Touch [Return] to restore the Multi Folder (Fold) Adjustment Menu Screen.

3.4.6 03 Multi Folder (Fold) Adjustment \ 04 Double Parallel Position Adjustment

Perform this adjustment for the folding positions in Tri-Fold-in mode processed by the Folding Unit FD-503.

Adjustment object:
All Size, 11 × 17 ◪, A3 ◪, B4 ◪, 8.5 × 14 ◪, A4 ◪, 8.5 × 11 ◪, 8K ◪, 12 × 18 ◪, Custom, SRA4 ◪

Available range:
(shorter) -50 to 50 (longer) (1 step = 0.1 mm)

Allowance: a ± 1.5 mm, b ± 1.5 mm

Paper size	a	b
11" × 17"◪	214.4 mm	106.7 mm
A3◪	208.5 mm	103.8 mm
B4◪	175.0 mm	87.0 mm
8.5" × 14"◪	176.3 mm	87.7 mm
A4◪	147.0 mm	73.0 mm
8.5" × 11"◪	138.2 mm	68.6 mm
8K◪	193.5 mm	96.3 mm
12" × 18"◪	227.1 mm	113.1 mm
SRA4◪	158.5 mm	78.7 mm

...

Reminder

When adjusting both Single Fold and Double Fold, be sure to start with the Double Fold adjustment.

...

Note

The baseline of Single Fold is calculated from the edge of the sheet, while that of Double Fold is calculated from the position of the first fold line, therefore the measurement (b) in step 7 will be altered by changing the position of either Single Fold or Double Fold.

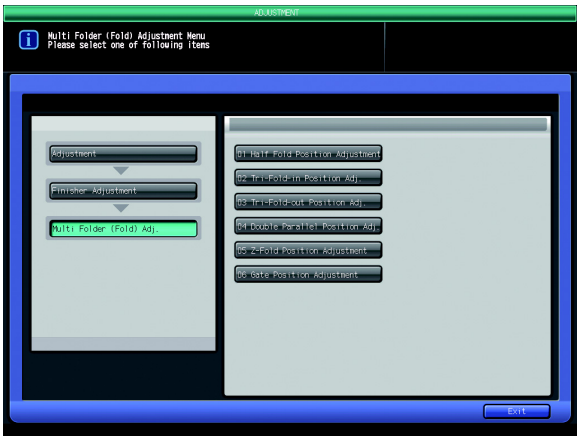
With [All Size] selected, the entered value will be applied to all paper sizes. With a specific paper size selected, the adjustment value will be the sum of those entered for both [All Size] and a specific size.

Procedure

1 Touch [Adjustment] on the Machine Status Screen.

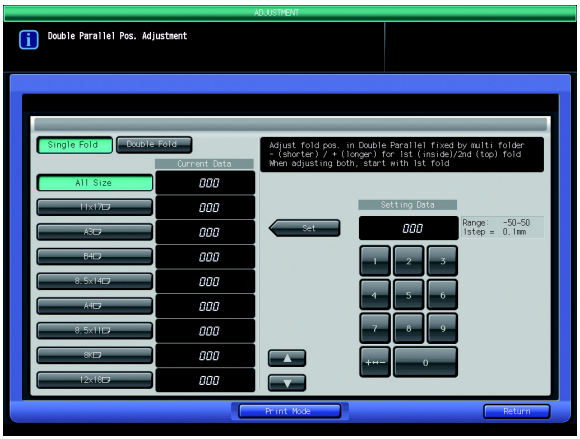
The Adjustment Menu Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch [02 Finisher Adjustment], [03 Multi Folder (Fold) Adj.], and then [04 Double Parallel Position Adj.].



The Double Parallel Position Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

3 Using [▲] [▼] buttons to scroll the size buttons, touch the desired button to highlight it.



4 Touch [Print Mode].

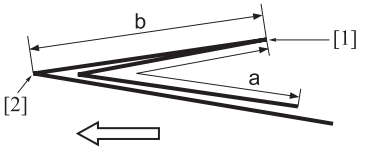
5 Load the paper of the size to be adjusted, then select the tray on the screen.

6 Press [Start] on the control panel.

A sample pattern will be output.

7 Measure (a) and (b) on the output sheet.

– Allowance: a ± 1.5 mm, b ± 1.5 mm



[1] Single fold [2] Double fold

8 If the desired result cannot be obtained, touch [Close] to return to the Double Parallel Position Adjustment Screen.

9 Touch [Single Fold].

10 Use the touch panel key to enter the desired adjustment value. Touch [+<->-] to specify the value to be positive or negative, then touch [SET].

– The measurement (a) in step 7 will increase when the “+” value is entered, and decrease when the “-” value is entered.

11 Touch [Double Fold], then repeat step 10.

– The measurement (b) in step 7 will increase when the “+” value is entered, and decrease when the “-” value is entered.

12 Repeat steps 4 to 11 until the desired result is obtained.

13 Touch [Return] to restore the Multi Folder (Fold) Adjustment Menu Screen.

3.4.7 03 Multi Folder (Fold) Adjustment \ 05 Z-Fold Position Adjustment

Perform this adjustment for the folding positions in Z-Fold mode processed by the Folding Unit FD-503.

Adjustment object:
All Size, 11 × 17 ◪, A3 ◪, B4 ◪, 8.5 × 14 ◪, A4 ◪, 8.5 × 11 ◪, 8K ◪, 12 × 18 ◪, Custom, SRA4 ◪

Available range:
(shorter) -50 to 50 (longer) (1 step = 0.1 mm)

Allowance: a ± 1.5 mm, b ± 1.5 mm

Paper size	a	b
11" × 17"◪	108.5 mm	111.5 mm
A3◪	105.5 mm	108.5 mm
B4◪	88.7 mm	91.7 mm
8.5" × 14"◪	94.0 mm	-
A4◪	74.8 mm	77.8 mm
8.5" × 11"◪	70.4 mm	73.4 mm
8K◪	98.0 mm	101.0 mm
12" × 18"◪	114.8 mm	117.8 mm
SRA4◪	80.5 mm	83.5 mm

Reminder
When adjusting both Single Fold and Double Fold, be sure to start with the Single Fold adjustment.

Note
The baseline of Single Fold is calculated from the edge of the sheet, while that of Double Fold is calculated from the position of the first fold line, therefore the measurement (b) in step 7 will be altered by changing the position of either Single Fold or Double Fold.

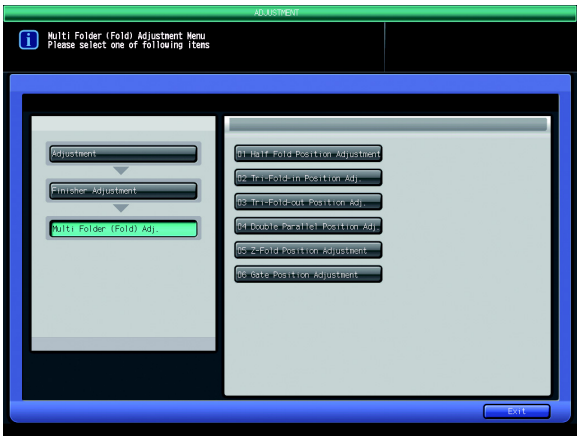
With [All Size] selected, the entered value will be applied to all paper sizes. With a specific paper size selected, the adjustment value will be the sum of those entered for both [All Size] and a specific size.

Procedure

1 Touch [Adjustment] on the Machine Status Screen.

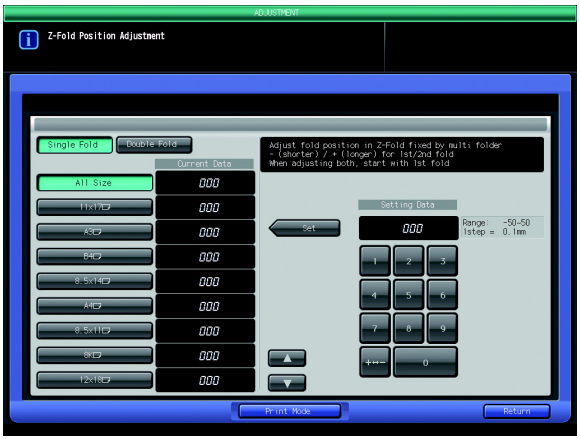
The Adjustment Menu Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch [02 Finisher Adjustment], [03 Multi Folder (Fold) Adj.], and then [05 Z-Fold Position Adjustment].



The Z-Fold Position Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

3 Using [▲] [▼] buttons to scroll the size buttons, touch the desired button to highlight it.



4 Touch [Print Mode].

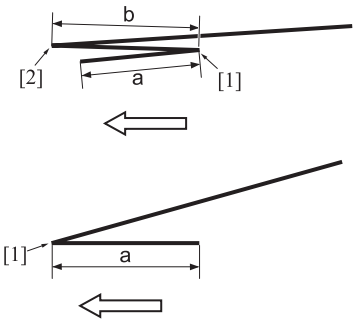
5 Load the paper of the size to be adjusted, then select the tray on the screen.

6 Press [Start] on the control panel.

A sample pattern will be output.

7 Measure (a) and (b) on the output sheet.

– Allowance: a ± 1.5 mm, b ± 1.5 mm



[1] Single fold [2] Double fold

8 If the desired result cannot be obtained, touch [Close] to return to the Double Parallel Position Adjustment Screen.

9 Touch [Single Fold].

10 Use the touch panel key to enter the desired adjustment value. Touch [+<->-] to specify the value to be positive or negative, then touch [SET].

– The measurement (a) in step 7 will increase when the "+" value is entered, and decrease when the "-" value is entered.

11 Touch [Double Fold], then repeat step 10.

– The measurement (b) in step 7 will increase when the "+" value is entered, and decrease when the "-" value is entered.

12 Repeat steps 4 to 11 until the desired result is obtained.

13 Touch [Return] to restore the Multi Folder (Fold) Adjustment Menu Screen.

3.4.8 03 Multi Folder (Fold) Adjustment \ 06 Gate Position Adjustment

Perform this adjustment for the folding positions in Gate folding mode processed by the Folding Unit FD-503.

Adjustment object:
All Size, 11 × 17 ◪, A3 ◪, B4 ◪, 8.5 × 14 ◪, A4 ◪, 8.5 × 11 ◪, 8K ◪, 12 × 18 ◪, Custom, SRA4 ◪

Available range:
1st/3rd: (shorter) -50 to 50 (longer) 1 step = 0.1 mm
2nd: (longer) -50 to 50 (shorter) 1 step = 0.1 mm

Allowance: a ± 1.5 mm, b ± 1.5 mm, c ± 1.5 mm

Paper size	a	b	c
11" × 17"◪	106.5 mm	218.9 mm	109.5 mm
A3◪	103.5 mm	213.0 mm	106.5 mm
B4◪	86.7 mm	179.5 mm	89.7 mm
8.5" × 14"◪	87.4 mm	180.8 mm	90.4 mm
A4◪	72.8 mm	151.5 mm	75.8 mm
8.5" × 11"◪	68.4 mm	142.7 mm	71.4 mm
8K◪	96.0 mm	198.0 mm	99.0 mm
12" × 18"◪	112.8 mm	231.6 mm	115.8 mm
SRA4◪	78.5 mm	163.0 mm	81.5 mm

...

Reminder

When adjusting Single Fold, Double Fold and Triple Fold at a time, be sure to start with the Single Fold adjustment.

...

Note

The baseline of Single Fold is calculated from the edge of the sheet, while that of Double Fold is calculated from the position of the first fold line and Triple Fold from the second fold line, therefore the measurements (a), (b), and (c) in step 7 will be altered by changing any folding position.

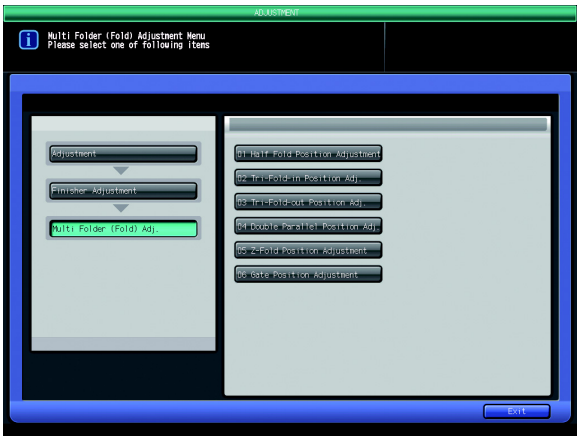
With [All Size] selected, the entered value will be applied to all paper sizes. With a specific paper size selected, the adjustment value will be the sum of those entered for both [All Size] and a specific size.

Procedure

1 Touch [Adjustment] on the Machine Status Screen.

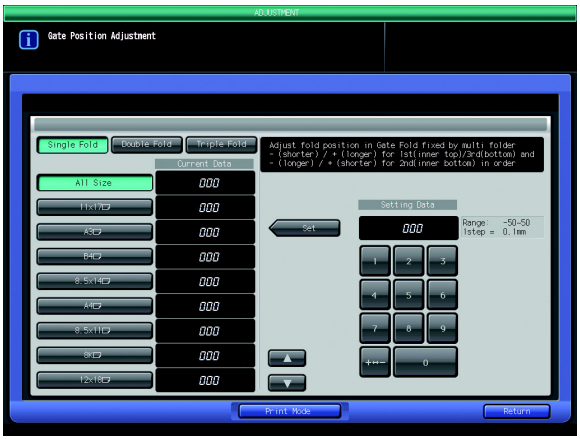
The Adjustment Menu Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch [02 Finisher Adjustment], [03 Multi Folder (Fold) Adj.], and then [06 Gate Position Adjustment].



The Gate Position Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

3 Using [▲] [▼] buttons to scroll the size buttons, touch the desired button to highlight it.



4 Touch [Print Mode].

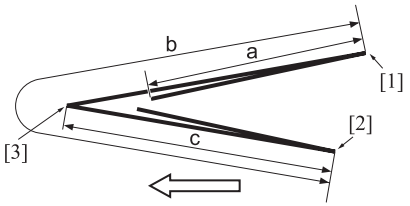
5 Load the paper of the size to be adjusted, then select the tray on the screen.

6 Press [Start] on the control panel.

A sample pattern will be output.

7 Measure (a), (b), and (c) on the output sheet.

– Allowance: a ± 1.5 mm, b ± 1.5 mm, c ± 1.5 mm



[1] Single fold [2] Double fold [3] Triple fold

8 If the desired result cannot be obtained, touch [Close] to return to the Gate Position Adjustment Screen.

9 Touch [Single Fold].

10 Use the touch panel key to enter the desired adjustment value. Touch [+<->-] to specify the value to be positive or negative, then touch [SET].

– The measurement (a) in step 7 will increase when the "+" value is entered, and decrease when the "-" value is entered.

11 Touch [Double Fold] and [Triple Fold] to set in the same manner respectively.
Repeat step 10.

– In Double Fold, the measurement (b) in step 7 will increase when the "+" value is entered, and decrease when the "-" value is entered.
In Triple Fold, the measurement (c) in step 7 will increase when the "+" value is entered, and decrease when the "-" value is entered.

12 Repeat steps 4 to 11 until the desired result is obtained.

13 Touch [Return] to restore the Multi Folder (Fold) Adjustment Menu Screen.

3.5 02 Finisher Adjustment (LS-505)

3.5.1 04 Stacker Adjustment \ 01 Paper Width Adjustment

Perform this adjustment when output sheets are not aligned in a perpendicular position to the direction of paper feed processed by the Large Capacity Stacker LS-505.

Adjustment object:
Stacker No.1
Stacker No.2

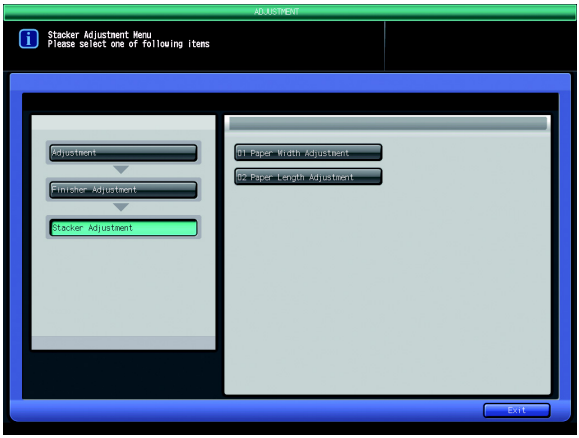
Available range:
(narrow) -20 to 20 (wide) (1 step = 0.1 mm)

Procedure

1 Touch [Adjustment] on the Machine Status Screen.

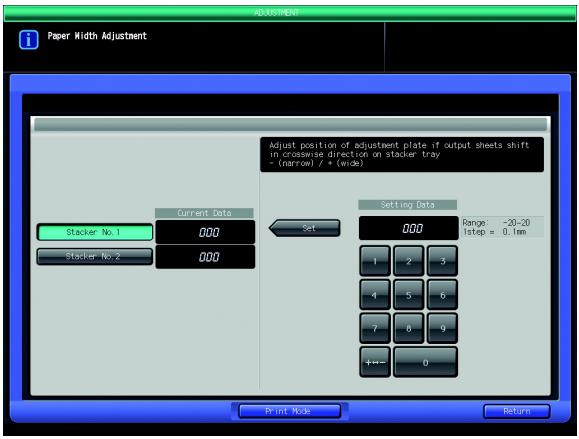
The Adjustment Menu Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch [02 Finisher Adjustment], [04 Stacker Adjustment], and then [01 Paper Width Adjustment].



The Paper Width Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

3 Touch [Stacker No.1] or [Stacker No.2], if two stackers are connected.



4 Touch [Print Mode].

5 Load 11 × 17 ◪ paper, then select the tray on the screen.

6 Press [Start] on the control panel.

A sample pattern will be output.

7 Check the output sheets in the stacker.

8 If output sheets are misaligned, touch [Close] to return to the Paper Width Adjustment Screen.

9 Use the touch panel key to enter the desired adjustment value. Touch [+<->-] to specify the value to be positive or negative, then touch [SET].

10 Repeat steps 4 to 9 until the desired result is obtained.

11 Touch [Return] to restore the Stacker Adjustment Menu Screen.

3.5.2 04 Stacker Adjustment \ 02 Paper Length Adjustment

Perform this adjustment when output sheets are not aligned to the direction of paper feed processed by the Large Capacity Stacker LS-505.

Adjustment object:
Stacker No.1
Stacker No.2

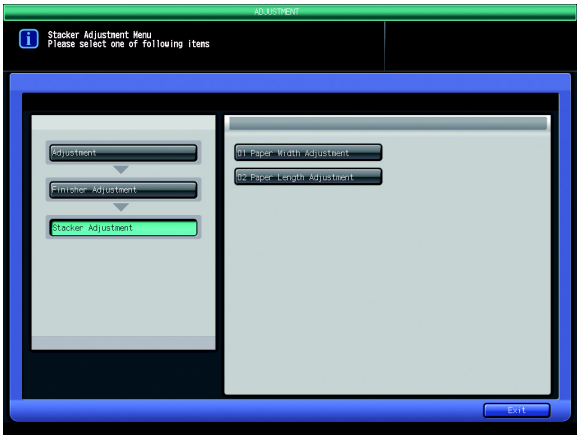
Available range:
(narrow) -20 to 20 (wide) (1 step = 0.1 mm)

Procedure

1 Touch [Adjustment] on the Machine Status Screen.

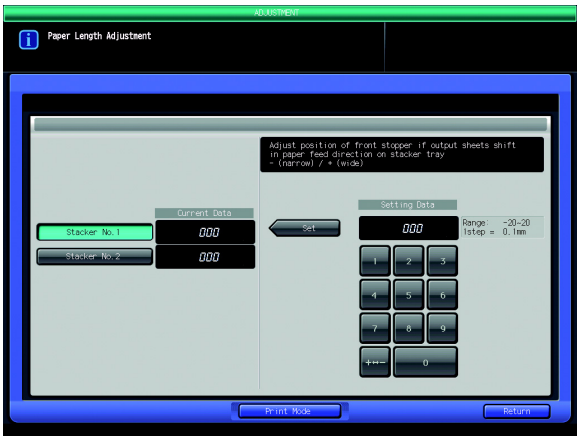
The Adjustment Menu Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch [02 Finisher Adjustment], [04 Stacker Adjustment], and then [02 Paper Length Adjustment].



The Paper Length Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

3 Touch [Stacker No.1] or [Stacker No.2], if two stackers are connected.



4 Touch [Print Mode].

5 Load 11 × 17 ◪ paper, then select the tray on the screen.

6 Press [Start] on the control panel.

A sample pattern will be output.

7 Check the output sheets in the stacker.

8 If output sheets are misaligned, touch [Close] to return to the Paper Length Adjustment Screen.

9 Use the touch panel key to enter the desired adjustment value. Touch [+<->-] to specify the value to be positive or negative, then touch [SET].

10 Repeat steps 4 to 9 until the desired result is obtained.

11 Touch [Return] to restore the Stacker Adjustment Menu Screen.

3.6 02 Finisher Adjustment (SD-506)

3.6.1 05 Saddle Stitcher Adjustment \ 01 Staple Center Adjustment

Perform this adjustment for the center (folding) position of copied/printed sheets and of staples processed by the Saddle Stitch Unit SD-506.

Available range:
(right) -20 to 20 (left) (1 step = 0.1 mm)

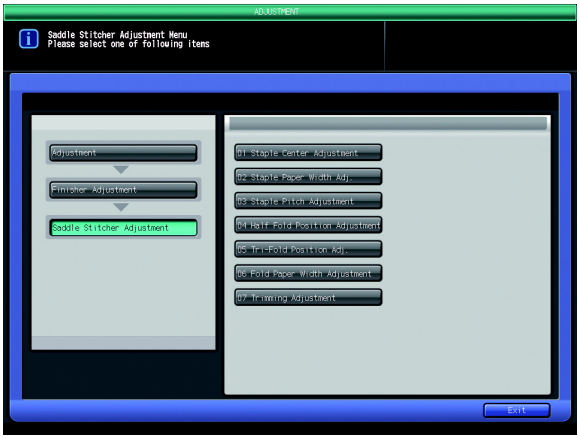
Reminder
05 Saddle Stitcher Adjustment - 04 Half Fold Position Adjustment is supposed to be completed before this adjustment.

Procedure

1 Touch Adjustment on the Machine Status Screen.

The Adjustment Menu Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch [02 Finisher Adjustment], [05 Saddle Stitcher Adjustment], and then [01 Staple Center Adjustment].



The Staple Center Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

3 Touch [Print Mode].



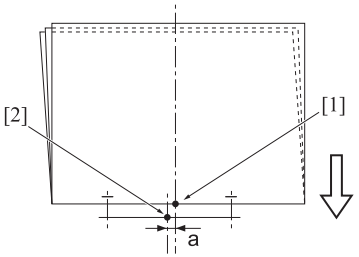
4 Load the desired paper, then select the tray on the screen.

5 Press [Start] on the control panel.

A sample pattern will be output.

6 Check misalignment (a) of the folded line and stapling position.

– Allowance: a = ±2 mm



[1] Paper center
[2] Stapling center position

7 If the desired result cannot be obtained, touch [Close] to return to the Staple Center Adjustment Screen.

8 Use the touch panel key to enter the desired adjustment value. Touch [+<->-] to specify the value to be positive or negative, then touch [SET].

9 Repeat steps 3 to 8 until the desired result is obtained.

10 Touch [Return] to restore the Saddle Stitcher Adjustment Menu Screen.

3.6.2 05 Saddle Stitcher Adjustment \ 02 Staple Paper Width Adjustment

Perform this adjustment if stapled sheets are not aligned neatly processed by the Saddle Stitch Unit SD-506.

Adjustment object:
All Size, 11 × 17 ◪, A3 ◪, B4 ◪, 8.5 × 14 ◪, A4 ◪, 8.5 × 11 ◪, B5 ◪, 8 × 13 ◪, 8.125 × 13.25 ◪, 8.5 × 13 ◪, 8.25 × 13 ◪, 8K ◪, 16K ◪, 12 × 18 ◪, A3W ◪, B4W ◪, A4W ◪, B5W ◪, 12 × 18W ◪, 11 × 17W ◪, 8.5 × 11W ◪, Custom, SRA3 ◪, SRA4 ◪

Available range:
(narrow) -20 to 20 (wide) (1 step = 0.1 mm)

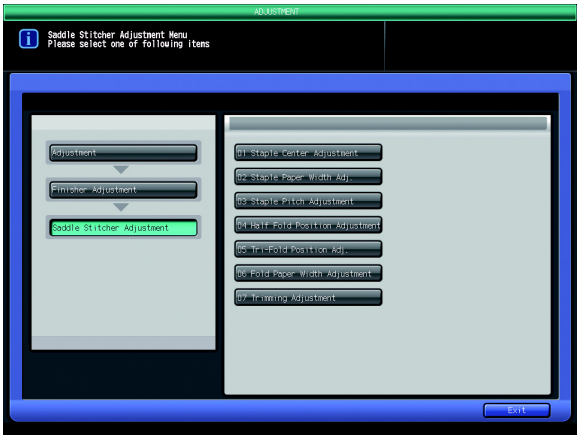
Note
With [All Size] selected, the entered value will be applied to all paper sizes. With a specific paper size selected, the adjustment value will be the sum of those entered for both [All Size] and a specific size.

Procedure

1 Touch [Adjustment] on the Machine Status Screen.

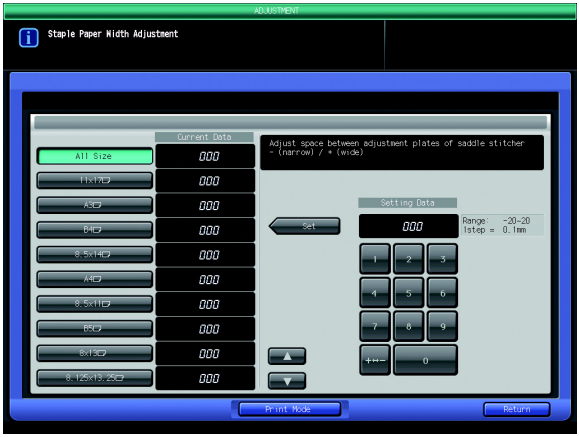
The Adjustment Menu Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch [02 Finisher Adjustment], [05 Saddle Stitcher Adjustment], and then [02 Staple Paper Width Adj.].



The Staple Paper Width Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

3 Using [▲] [▼] buttons to scroll the size buttons, touch the desired button to highlight it.



4 Touch [Print Mode].

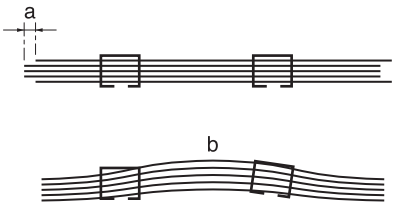
5 Load the paper of the size to be adjusted, then select the tray on the screen.

6 Press [Start] on the control panel.

A sample pattern will be output.

7 Check misalignment (a), in which misalignment occurs if the paper width setting is larger than the actual width, or paper curving (b), in which a sample set is curved if the paper width setting is smaller than the actual width has occurred.

– Allowance: a = 1.0 mm or less



8 If the desired result cannot be obtained, touch [Close] to return to the Staple Paper Width Adjustment Screen.

9 Use the touch panel key to enter the desired adjustment value. Touch [+<->-] to specify the value to be positive or negative, then touch [SET].

10 Repeat steps 3 to 8 until the desired result is obtained.

11 Touch [Return] to restore the Saddle Stitcher Adjustment Menu Screen.

Note

The following limitation is put on the paper width setting according to the actual paper width.

Actual paper width	Minimum value	Maximum value
~ 222 mm	91 mm	Actual width minus 91 mm
222 mm ~ 290 mm	Not limited	Not limited
290 mm ~	Not limited	165 mm

* Using paper size of which actual width is less than 222 mm such as A4 ⧉, the staple pitch will be set to 91 mm automatically even if the value shorter than 91 mm of staple pitch is entered.

3.6.3 05 Saddle Stitcher Adjustment \ 03 Staple Pitch Adjustment

Perform this adjustment for the staple pitch processed by the Saddle Stitch Unit SD-506.

Adjustment object:
All Size, 11 × 17 ◪, A3 ◪, B4 ◪, 8.5 × 14 ◪, A4 ◪, 8.5 × 11 ◪, B5 ◪, 8 × 13 ◪, 8.125 × 13.25 ◪, 8.5 × 13 ◪, 8.25 × 13 ◪, 8K ◪, 16K ◪, 12 × 18 ◪, A3W ◪, B4W ◪, A4W ◪, B5W ◪, 12 × 18W ◪, 11 × 17W ◪, 8.5 × 11W ◪, Custom, SRA3 ◪, SRA4 ◪

Available range:
(narrow) -20 to 20 (wide) (1 step = 1.0 mm)

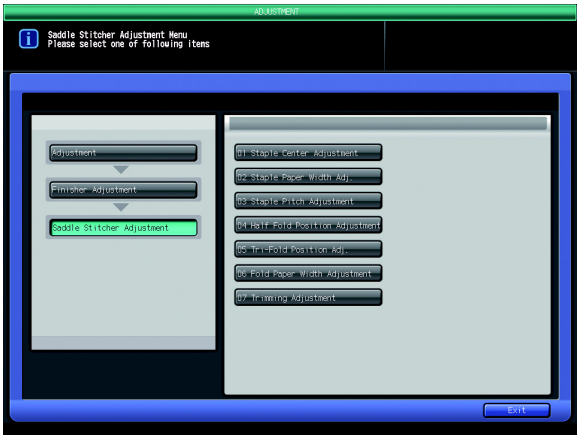
Note
With [All Size] selected, the entered value will be applied to all paper sizes. With a specific paper size selected, the adjustment value will be the sum of those entered for both [All Size] and a specific size.

Procedure

1 Touch [Adjustment] on the Machine Status Screen.

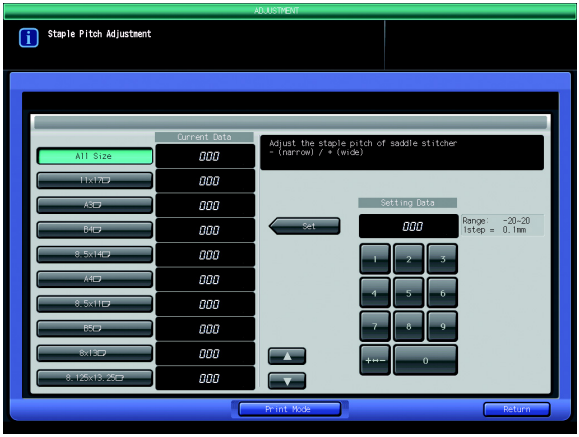
The Adjustment Menu Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch [02 Finisher Adjustment], [05 Saddle Stitcher Adjustment], and then [03 Staple Pitch Adjustment].



The Staple Pitch Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

3 Using [▲] [▼] buttons to scroll the size buttons, touch the desired button to highlight it.



4 Touch [Print Mode].

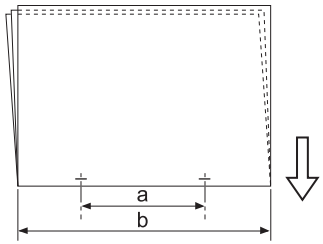
5 Load the paper of the size to be adjusted, then select the tray on the screen.

6 Press [Start] on the control panel.

A sample pattern will be output.

7 Check the interval (a) between the staple against the paper size (b).

– Allowance: a = b/2 ± 2 mm



8 If the desired result cannot be obtained, touch [Close] to return to the Staple Pitch Adjustment Screen.

9 Use the touch panel key to enter the desired adjustment value. Touch [+<->-] to specify the value to be positive or negative, then touch [SET].

10 Repeat steps 4 to 9 until the desired result is obtained.

11 Touch [Return] to restore the Saddle Stitcher Adjustment Menu Screen.

Note

Available range of adjustment varies according to paper sizes. The minimum value is limited by the traveling range of stapler, while the maximum value requires that the exit guides and stapler do not interfere in the saddle stitch unit.

B5 ▭: Setting unavailable (91 mm fixed)

B4 ▭: -20 to +20 mm (108.5 to 148.5 mm)

A4 ▭: -14 to +14 mm (91 to 119 mm)

A3 ▭: -20 to +16.5 mm (128.5 to 165 mm)

3.6.4 05 Saddle Stitcher Adjustment \ 04 Half Fold Position Adjustment

Perform this adjustment for the double-folding position processed by the Saddle Stitch Unit SD-506.

Adjustment object:
All Size, 11 × 17 ◪, A3 ◪, B4 ◪, 8.5 × 14 ◪, A4 ◪, 8.5 × 11 ◪, B5 ◪, 8 × 13 ◪, 8.125 × 13.25 ◪, 8.5 × 13 ◪, 8.25 × 13 ◪, 8K ◪, 16K ◪, 12 × 18 ◪, A3W ◪, B4W ◪, A4W ◪, B5W ◪, 12 × 18W ◪, 11 × 17W ◪, 8.5 × 11W ◪, Custom, SRA3 ◪, SRA4 ◪

Available range:
(shorter) -50 to 50 (longer) (1 step = 0.1 mm)

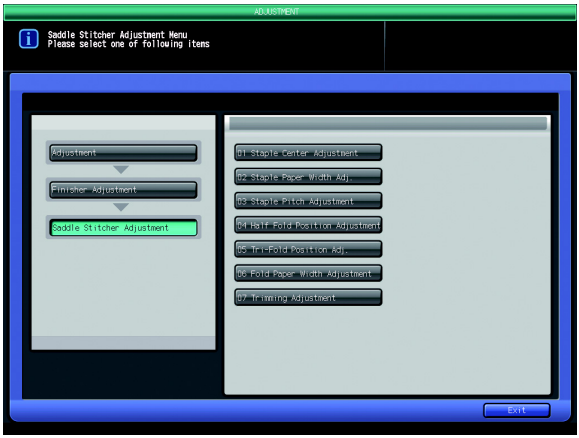
Note
With [All Size] selected, the entered value will be applied to all paper sizes. With a specific paper size selected, the adjustment value will be the sum of those entered for both [All Size] and a specific size.

Procedure

1 Touch [Adjustment] on the Machine Status Screen.

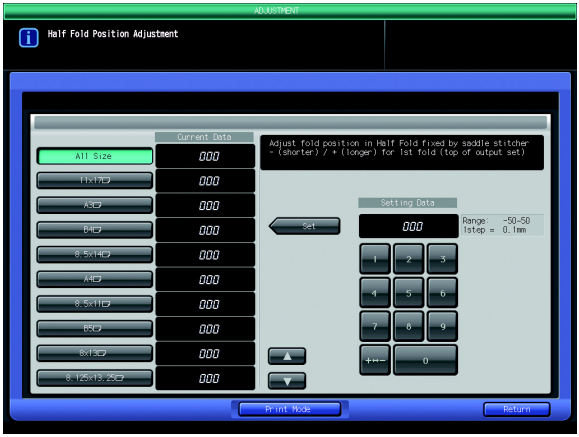
The Adjustment Menu Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch [02 Finisher Adjustment], [05 Saddle Stitcher Adjustment], and then [04 Half Fold Position Adjustment].



The Half Fold Position Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

3 Using [▲] [▼] buttons to scroll the size buttons, touch the desired button to highlight it.



4 Touch [Print Mode].

5 Load the paper of the size to be adjusted, then select the tray on the screen.

6 Press [Start] on the control panel.

A sample pattern will be output.

7 Measure the (a) in the edge of the feeding sheets.

– Allowance: a = 1.5 mm or less



8 If the desired result cannot be obtained, touch [Close] to return to the Half Fold Position Adjustment Screen.

9 Use the touch panel key to enter the desired adjustment value. Touch [+<->-] to specify the value to be positive or negative, then touch [SET].

– The measurement (a) in step 7 will increase when the “+” value is entered, and decrease when the “-” value is entered.

10 Repeat steps 4 to 9 until the desired result is obtained.

11 Touch [Return] to restore the Saddle Stitcher Adjustment Menu Screen.

3.6.5 05 Saddle Stitcher Adjustment \ 05 Tri-Fold Position Adjustment

Perform this adjustment for the three-folding positions processed by the Saddle Stitch Unit SD-506.

Adjustment object:
All Size, A4 ◪, 8.5 × 11 ◪

Available range:
Single Fold: (shorter) -100 to 100 (longer), 1 step = 0.1 mm
Double Fold: (shorter) -100 to 100 (longer), 1 step = 0.1 mm

Allowance: a ± 1.5 mm, b ± 1.5 mm

Paper size	a	b
A4◪	97.5 ± 2.0 mm	102.0 ± 2.0 mm
8.5" × 11"◪	91.6 ± 2.0 mm	96.1 ± 2.0 mm

Reminder
When adjusting both Single Fold and Double Fold, be sure to start with the Double Fold adjustment.

Note
The baseline of Single Fold is calculated from the edge of the sheet, while that of Double Fold is calculated from the position of the first fold line, therefore the measurement (b) in step 7 will be altered by changing the position of either Single Fold or Double Fold.

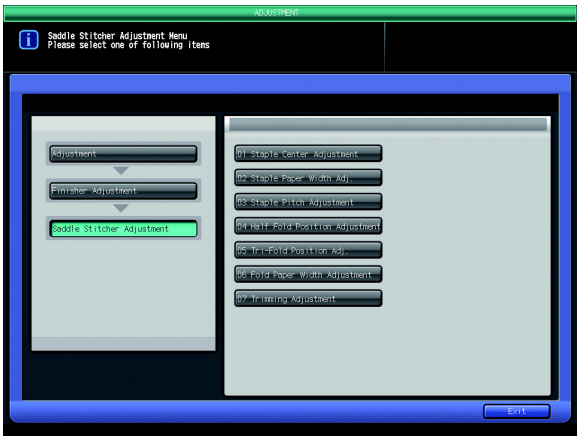
With [All Size] selected, the entered value will be applied to all paper sizes. With a specific paper size selected, the adjustment value will be the sum of those entered for both [All Size] and a specific size.

Procedure

1 Touch [Adjustment] on the Machine Status Screen.

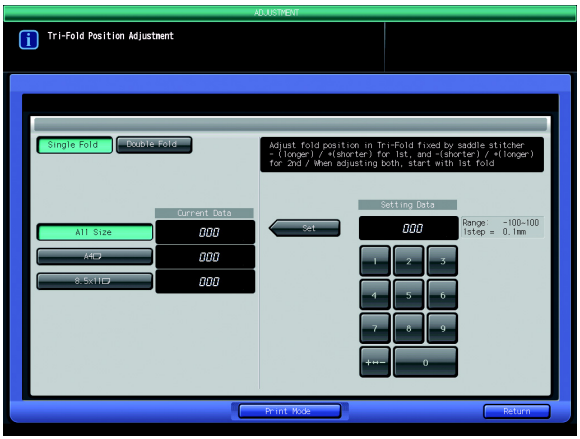
The Adjustment Menu Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch [02 Finisher Adjustment], [05 Saddle Stitcher Adjustment], and then [05 Tri-Fold Position Adj.].



The Tri-Fold Position Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

3 Using [▲] [▼] buttons to scroll the size buttons, touch the desired button to highlight it.



4 Touch [Print Mode].

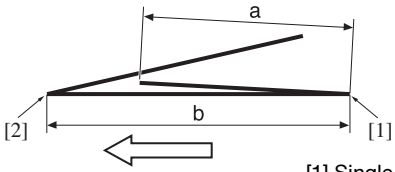
5 Load the paper of the size to be adjusted, then select the tray on the screen.

6 Press [Start] on the control panel.

A sample pattern will be output.

7 Measure (a) and (b) on the output sheet.

– Allowance: a ± 1.5 mm, b ± 1.5 mm



[1] Single fold [2] Double fold

8 If the desired result cannot be obtained, touch [Close] to return to the Tri-Fold Position Adjustment Screen.

9 Touch [Double Fold].

10 Use the touch panel key to enter the desired adjustment value. Touch [+<->-] to specify the value to be positive or negative, then touch [SET].

– The measurement (b) in step 7 will increase when the “+” value is entered, and decrease when the “-” value is entered.

11 Touch [Single Fold], then repeat step 10.

– The measurement (a) in step 7 will decrease when the “+” value is entered, and increase when the “-” value is entered.

12 Repeat steps 4 to 11 until the desired result is obtained.

13 Touch [Return] to restore the Saddle Stitcher Adjustment Menu Screen.

3.6.6 05 Saddle Stitcher Adjustment \ 06 Fold Paper Width Adjustment

Adjust misalignment of the fold & staple, multi fold, and multi tri-fold paper processed by the Saddle Stitch Unit SD-506.

Adjustment object:
All Size, 11 × 17 ◪, A3 ◪, B4 ◪, 8.5 × 14 ◪, A4 ◪, 8.5 × 11 ◪, B5 ◪, 8 × 13 ◪, 8.125 × 13.25 ◪, 8.5 × 13 ◪, 8.25 × 13 ◪, 8K ◪, 16K ◪, 12 × 18 ◪, A3W ◪, B4W ◪, A4W ◪, B5W ◪, 12 × 18W ◪, 11 × 17W ◪, 8.5 × 11W ◪, Custom, SRA3 ◪, SRA4 ◪, PI Paper

Available range:
(narrow) -50 to 50 (wide) (1 step = 0.1 mm)

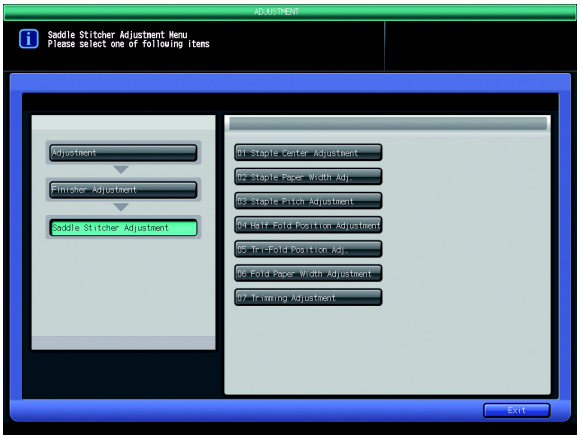
Note
With [All Size] selected, the entered value will be applied to all paper sizes. With a specific paper size selected, the adjustment value will be the sum of those entered for both [All Size] and a specific size.

Procedure

1 Touch [Adjustment] on the Machine Status Screen.

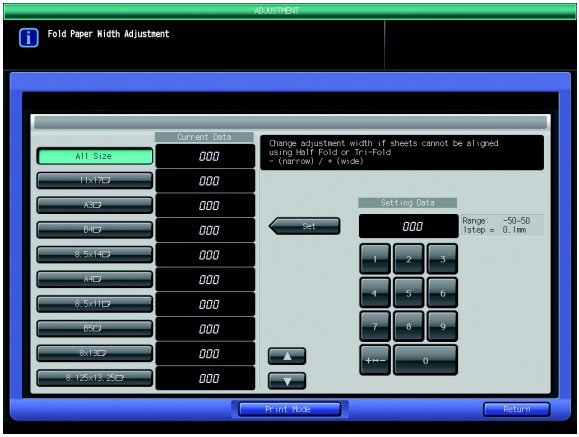
The Adjustment Menu Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch [02 Finisher Adjustment], [05 Saddle Stitcher Adjustment], and then [06 Fold Paper Width Adjustment].



The Fold Paper Width Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

3 Using [▲] [▼] buttons to scroll the size buttons, touch the desired button to highlight it.



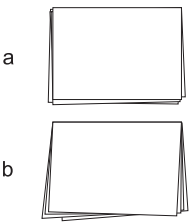
4 Touch [Print Mode].

5 Load the paper of the size to be adjusted, then select the tray on the screen.

6 Press [Start] on the control panel.

A sample pattern will be output.

7 Check that any dislocation is found in the output set.
a: When the paper width setting is set to wider than the actual paper width, misalignment occurs at random.
b: When the paper width setting is set to narrower than the actual paper width, misalignment occurs in 1 direction.



8 If the desired result cannot be obtained, touch [Close] to return to the Fold Paper Width Adjustment Screen.

9 Use the touch panel key to enter the desired adjustment value. Touch [+<->-] to specify the value to be positive or negative, then touch [SET].

– If the setting is too wide, the misalignment may be larger.

10 Repeat steps 4 to 9 until the desired result is obtained.

11 Touch [Return] to restore the Saddle Stitcher Adjustment Menu Screen.

3.6.7 05 Saddle Stitcher Adjustment \ 07 Trimming Adjustment

Perform this adjustment for the trimmed width.

Adjustment object:
All Size, 11 × 17 ◪, A3 ◪, B4 ◪, 8.5 × 14 ◪, A4 ◪, 8.5 × 11 ◪, B5 ◪, 8 × 13 ◪, 8.125 × 13.25 ◪, 8.5 × 13 ◪, 8.25 × 13 ◪, 8K ◪, 16K ◪, 12 × 18 ◪, A3W ◪, B4W ◪, A4W ◪, B5W ◪, 12 × 18W ◪, 11 × 17W ◪, 8.5 × 11W ◪, Custom, SRA3 ◪, SRA4 ◪

Available range:
(small) -400 to 400 (large) (1 step = 0.1 mm)

Reminder
Enter the value so that the cover should be cut more than 2.0 mm, otherwise the trimming operation may not be performed properly.

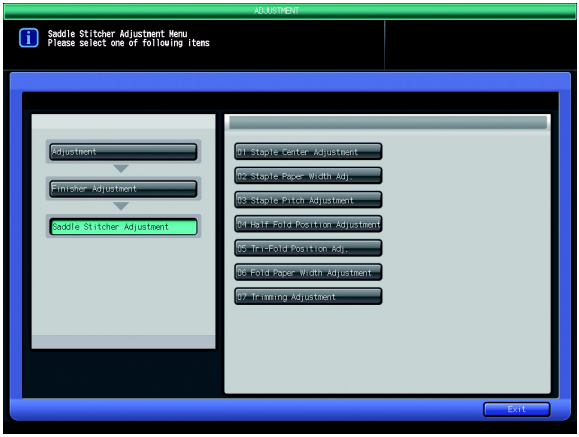
Note
With [All Size] selected, the entered value will be applied to all paper sizes. With a specific paper size selected, the adjustment value will be the sum of those entered for both [All Size] and a specific size.

Procedure

1 Touch [Adjustment] on the Machine Status Screen.

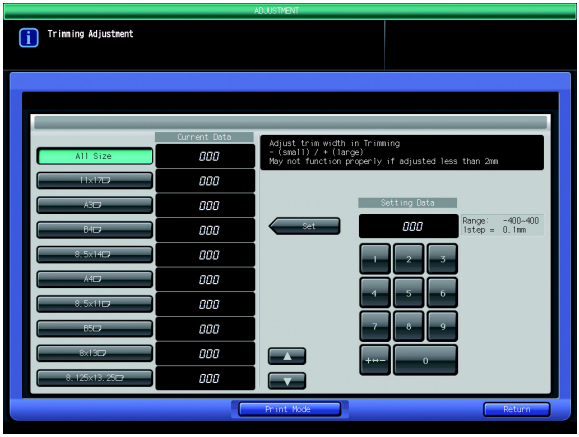
The Adjustment Menu Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch [02 Finisher Adjustment], [05 Saddle Stitcher Adjustment], and then [07 Trimming Adjustment].



The Trimming Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

3 Using [▲] [▼] buttons to scroll the size buttons, touch the desired button to highlight it.



4 Touch [Print Mode].

5 Load the paper of the size to be adjusted, then select the tray on the screen.

6 Press [Start] on the control panel.

A sample pattern will be output.

7 Check the trimmed width from the edge of the feeding sheet.

– Allowance: a = 2 mm or more



8 If the desired result cannot be obtained, touch [Close] to return to the Trimming Adjustment Screen.

9 Use the touch panel key to enter the desired adjustment value. Touch [+<->-] to specify the value to be positive or negative, then touch [SET].

10 Repeat steps 4 to 9 until the desired result is obtained.

11 Touch [Return] to restore the Saddle Stitcher Adjustment Menu Screen.

3.6.8 05 Saddle Stitcher Adjustment \ 08 Trimmer Receiver Adjustment

Frequent trimming operations may cause damage to the receiver, resulting in trimming failures. Select the interval in which the receiver should be moved after specified trimming operations (01 Count Select for move). Select the pitch to move the receiver (02 Moving Pitch Select).

Note

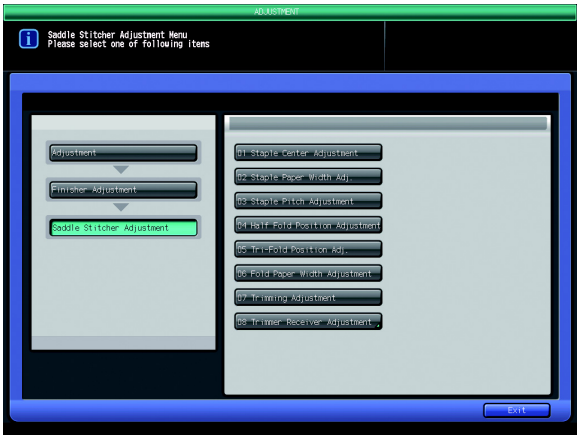
The *[08 Trimmer Receiver Adjustment]* button is not displayed normally. If this adjustment is required, contact your service representative.

Procedure

1 Touch [Adjustment] on the Machine Status Screen.

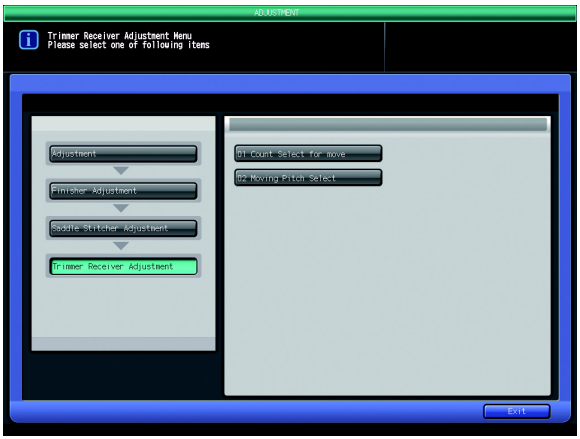
The Adjustment Menu Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch [02 Finisher Adjustment], [05 Saddle Stitcher Adjustment], and then [08 Trimmer Receiver Adjustment].

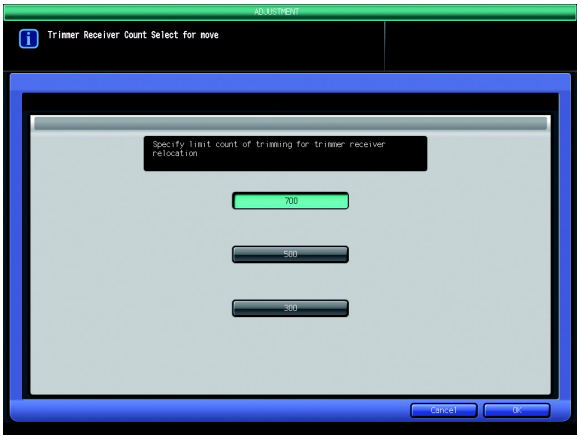


The Trimmer Receiver Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

3 Touch [01 Count Select for move].

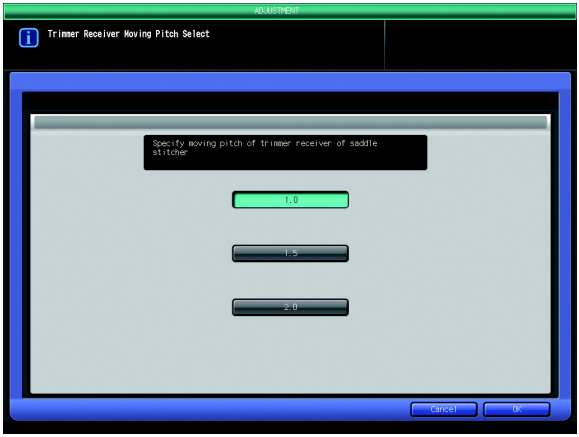


4 Touch to choose between [700], [500], and [300], then touch [OK].



5 Select the move pitch.

6 Make a selection from [1.0], [1.5], and [2.0], then touch [OK].



7 Touch [Return] to restore the Saddle Stitcher Adjustment Menu Screen.

3.7 02 Finisher Adjustment (PB-502/PB-503)

3.7.1 06 Perfect Binder Adjustment \ 01 Cover Trimming Adjustment

Perform this adjustment to increase/decrease the trimming width of the right cover page determined in Perfect Binding mode.

Adjustment object:
PB Tray, Main Body Tray (including PI Tray)

Available range:
(short) -128 to 127 (long) (1 step = 0.1 mm)

...

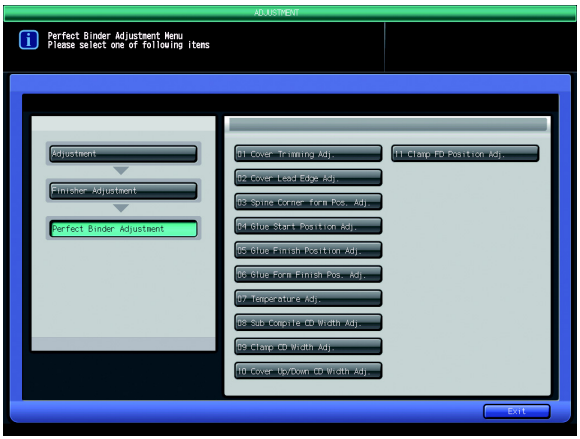
Reminder
06 Perfect Binder Adjustment - 02 Cover Lead Edge Adjustment is supposed to be completed before this adjustment.

Procedure

1 Touch [Adjustment] on the Machine Status Screen.

The Adjustment Menu Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch [02 Finisher Adjustment], [06 Perfect Binder Adjustment], and then [01 Cover Trimming Adj.].

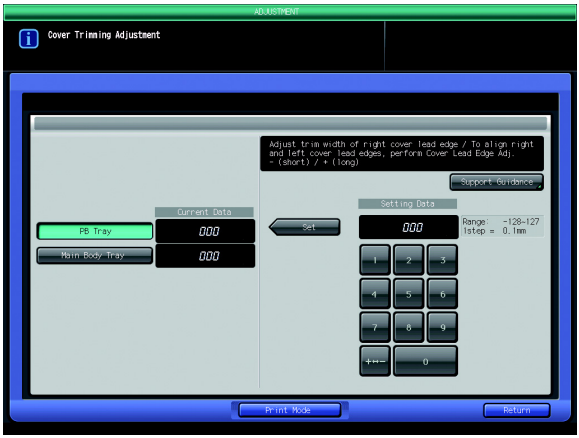


The Cover Trimming Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

3 Load cover sheets in the Perfect Binder tray or the desired tray 1 to 8.

4 Load paper for body set in the desired tray (tray 1 to 8).

5 Touch [PB Tray] or [Main Body Tray] to select the tray (Perfect Binder tray or tray 1 to 8) to feed the cover.



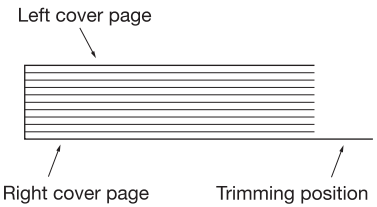
6 Touch [Print Mode].

7 Select the tray loaded the paper for body set in step 4.

8 Press [Start] on the control panel.

A sample pattern of perfect-bound book will be output.

9 Check that the edge of the right cover page is neatly aligned with that of the left cover page.



10 If the desired result cannot be obtained, touch [Close] to return to the Cover Trimming Adjustment Screen.

11 Use the touch panel key to enter the desired adjustment value. Touch [+<->-] to specify the value to be positive or negative, then touch [SET].

12 Repeat steps 6 to 11 until the desired result is obtained.

13 Touch [Return] to restore the Perfect Binder Adjustment Menu Screen.

3.7.2 06 Perfect Binder Adjustment \ 02 Cover Lead Edge Adjustment

Perform this adjustment for the position of left cover page determined in Perfect Binding mode.

Adjustment object:
Main Body Tray: All Size, 8.5 × 11, A4, A5, B5, A5, 5.5 × 8.5, Custom, 16K, 8.5 × 11W, 5.5 × 8.5W, A4W, A5W, B5W

PB Tray: All Size, 8.5 × 11, A4, A5, B5, A5, 5.5 × 8.5, Custom, 16K, 8.5 × 11W, 5.5 × 8.5W, A4W, A5W, B5W

Available range:
(short) -128 to 127 (long) (1 step = 0.1 mm)

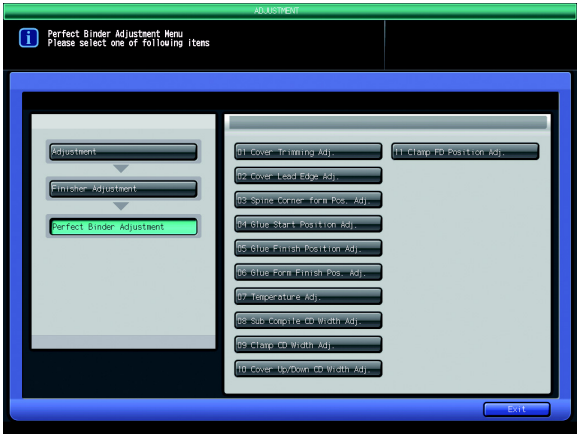
Note
With [All Size] selected, the entered value will be applied to all paper sizes. With a specific paper size selected, the adjustment value will be the sum of those entered for both [All Size] and a specific size.

Procedure

1 Touch [Adjustment] on the Machine Status Screen.

The Adjustment Menu Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch [02 Finisher Adjustment], [06 Perfect Binder Adjustment], and then [02 Cover Lead Edge Adj.].

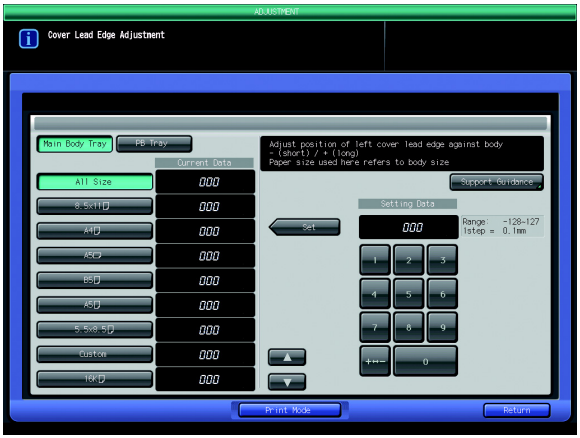


The Cover Lead Edge Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

3 Load cover sheets in the Perfect Binder tray or the desired tray (tray 1 to 8).

4 Load paper for body set in the desired tray (tray 1 to 8).

5 Touch [PB Tray] or [Main Body Tray] to select the tray (Perfect Binder tray or tray 1 to 8) to feed the cover.



6 Using [▲] [▼] buttons to scroll the size buttons, touch the size button for body set in step 4 to highlight it.

– The paper sizes provided here represent perfect-bound book sizes.

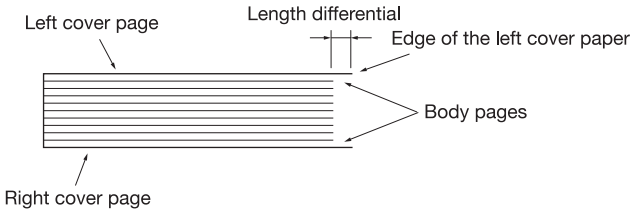
7 Touch [Print Mode].

8 Select the tray loaded the paper for body set in step 4.

9 Press [Start] on the control panel.

A sample pattern of perfect-bound book will be output.

10 Check that the edge of the left cover page extends out of the body set by the desired amount.



11 If the desired result cannot be obtained, touch [Close] to return to the Cover Trimming Adjustment Screen.

12 Use the touch panel key to enter the desired adjustment value. Touch [+<->-] to specify the value to be positive or negative, then touch [SET].

13 Repeat steps 7 to 12 until the desired result is obtained.

14 Touch [Return] to restore the Perfect Binder Adjustment Menu Screen.

3.7.3 06 Perfect Binder Adjustment \ 03 Spine Corner Form Position Adjustment

Perform this adjustment to regulate the position when forming the spine corner of the cover.

Adjustment object:
Front Adj., Rear Adj.

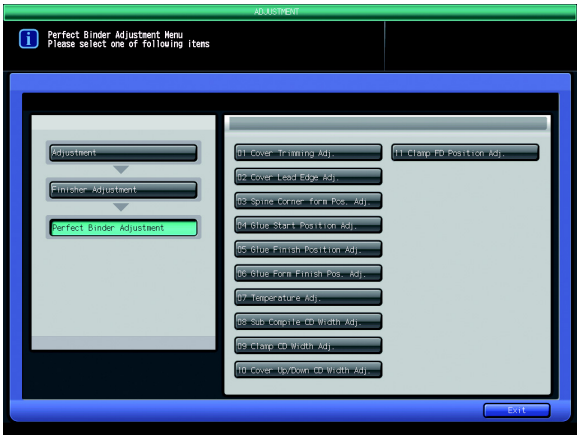
Available range:
(down) -128 to 127 (up) (1 step = 0.1 mm)

Procedure

1 Touch [Adjustment] on the Machine Status Screen.

The Adjustment Menu Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch [02 Finisher Adjustment], [06 Perfect Binder Adjustment], and then [03 Spine Corner form Pos. Adj.].

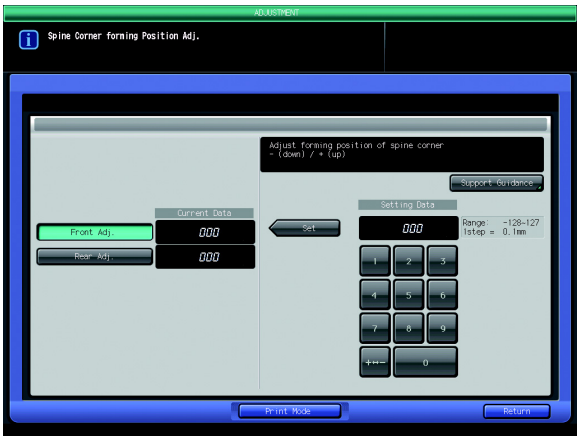


The Spine Corner Forming Position Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

3 Load cover sheets in the Perfect Binder tray or the desired tray (tray 1 to 8).

4 Load paper for body set in the desired tray (tray 1 to 8).

5 Touch [Print Mode].

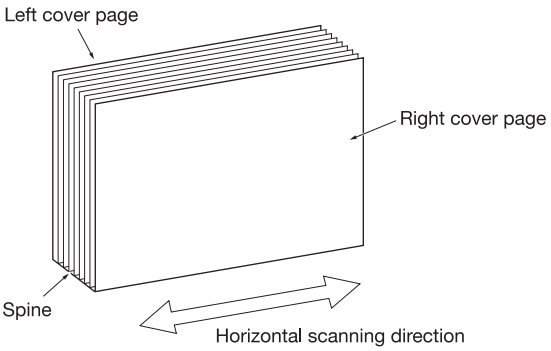


6 Select the trays loaded with paper for cover and body set in steps 3 and 4.

7 Press [Start] on the control panel.

A sample pattern of perfect-bound book will be output.

8 Check that the position of spine corner of the cover is formed uniformly against the scanning direction.



9 If the desired result cannot be obtained, touch [Close] to return to the Spine Corner Forming Position Adjustment Screen.

10 Touch [Front Adj.] or [Rear Adj.] to select (Forward) or (Rear) for the adjustment.

11 Use the touch panel key to enter the desired adjustment value. Touch [+<->-] to specify the value to be positive or negative, then touch [SET].

12 Repeat steps 5 to 11 until the desired result is obtained.

13 Touch [Return] to restore the Perfect Binder Adjustment Menu Screen.

3.7.4 06 Perfect Binder Adjustment \ 04 Glue Start Position Adjustment

Perform this adjustment for the position to start glue on the body set.

Adjustment object:
Ahead: All Size, 8.5 × 11 , A4 , B5 , A5 , 5.5 × 8.5 , 16K , A4W , B5W , A5W , 8.5 × 11W , 5.5 × 8.5W , Custom

Back: All Size, 8.5 × 11 , A4 , B5 , A5 , 5.5 × 8.5 , 16K , A4W , B5W , A5W , 8.5 × 11W , 5.5 × 8.5W , Custom

Available range:
(sooner) -128 to 127 (later) (1 step = 0.1 mm)

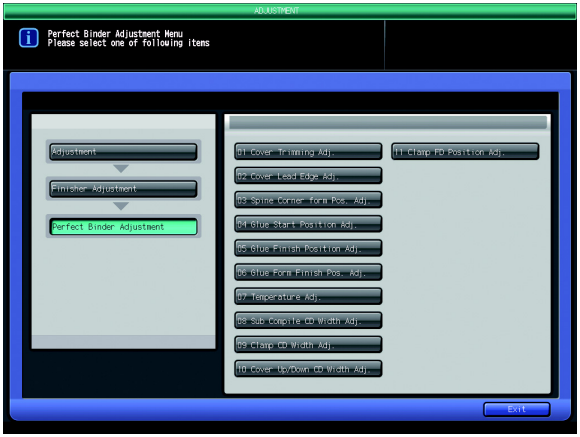
Note
With [All Size] selected, the entered value will be applied to all paper sizes. With a specific paper size selected, the adjustment value will be the sum of those entered for both [All Size] and a specific size.

Procedure

1 Touch [Adjustment] on the Machine Status Screen.

The Adjustment Menu Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch [02 Finisher Adjustment], [06 Perfect Binder Adjustment], and then [04 Glue Start Position Adj.].



The Glue Start Position Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

3 Load cover sheets in the Perfect Binder tray or the desired tray (tray 1 to 8).

4 Load paper for body set in the desired tray (tray 1 to 8).

5 Using [▲] [▼] buttons to scroll the size buttons, touch the size button for body set in step 4 to highlight it.

– The paper sizes provided here represent perfect-bound book sizes.



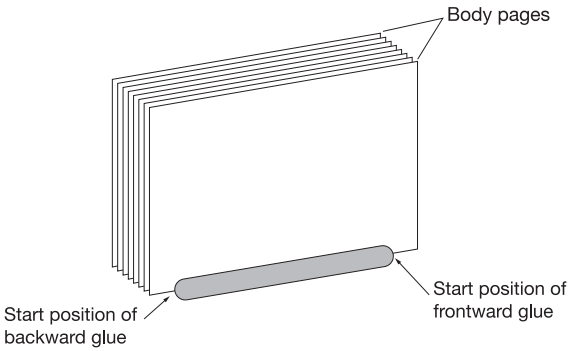
6 Touch [Print Mode].

7 Select the trays loaded with paper for cover and body set in steps 3 and 4.

8 Press [Start] on the control panel.

A sample pattern of perfect-bound book will be output.

9 Check that the glue on the body set starts in proper position.



10 If the desired result cannot be obtained, touch [Close] to return to the Glue Start Position Adjustment Screen.

11 Touch [Ahead] or [Back] to select the direction to start glue.

12 Use the touch panel key to enter the desired adjustment value. Touch [+<->-] to specify the value to be positive or negative, then touch [SET].

13 Repeat steps 6 to 12 until the desired result is obtained.

14 Touch [Return] to restore the Perfect Binder Adjustment Menu Screen.

3.7.5 06 Perfect Binder Adjustment \ 05 Glue Finish Position Adjustment

Perform this adjustment for the position to finish glue on the body set.

Adjustment object:
Ahead:
All Size, 8.5 × 11 , A4 , B5 , A5 , 5.5 × 8.5 , 16K , A4W , B5W , A5W , 8.5 × 11W , 5.5 × 8.5W , Custom
Back:
All Size, 8.5 × 11 , A4 , B5 , A5 , 5.5 × 8.5 , 16K , A4W , B5W , A5W , 8.5 × 11W , 5.5 × 8.5W , Custom

Available range:
(sooner) -128 to 127 (later) (1 step = 0.1 mm)

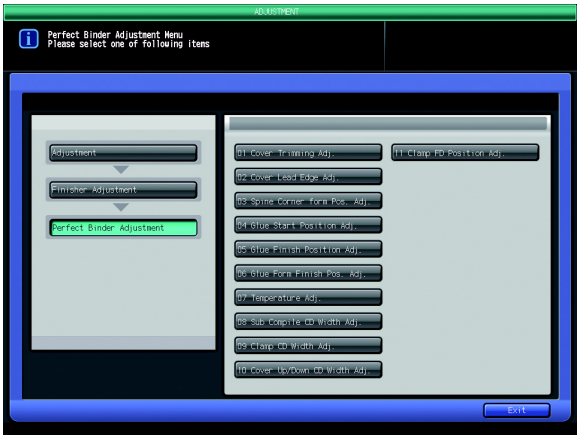
Note
With [All Size] selected, the entered value will be applied to all paper sizes. With a specific paper size selected, the adjustment value will be the sum of those entered for both [All Size] and a specific size.

Procedure

1 Touch [Adjustment] on the Machine Status Screen.

The Adjustment Menu Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch [02 Finisher Adjustment], [06 Perfect Binder Adjustment], and then [05 Glue Finish Position Adj.].



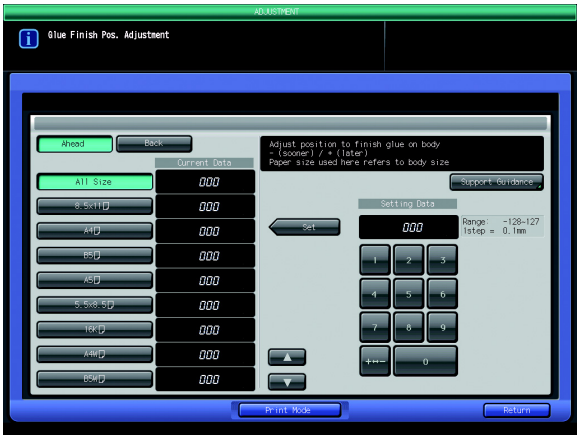
The Glue Finish Position Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

3 Load cover sheets in the Perfect Binder tray or the desired tray (tray 1 to 8).

4 Load paper for body set in the desired tray (tray 1 to 8).

5 Using [▲] [▼] buttons to scroll the size buttons, touch the size button for body set in step 4 to highlight it.

– The paper sizes provided here represent perfect-bound book sizes.



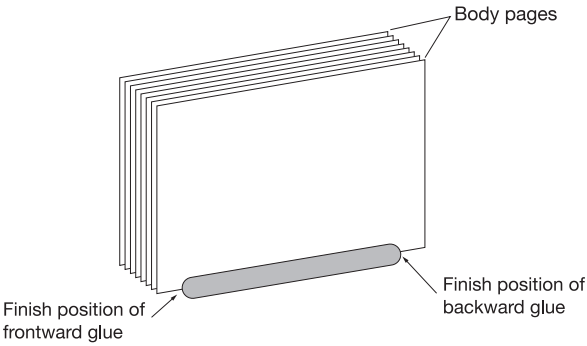
6 Touch [Print Mode].

7 Select the trays loaded with paper for cover and body set in steps 3 and 4.

8 Press [Start] on the control panel.

A sample pattern of perfect-bound book will be output.

9 Check that the glue on the body set finishes in proper position.



10 If the desired result cannot be obtained, touch [Close] to return to the Glue Finish Position Adjustment Screen.

11 Touch [Ahead] or [Back] to select the direction to finish glue.

12 Use the touch panel key to enter the desired adjustment value. Touch [+<->-] to specify the value to be positive or negative, then touch [SET].

13 Repeat the adjustment steps from 6 to 12 until the desired result is obtained.

14 Touch [Return] to restore the Perfect Binder Adjustment Menu Screen.

3.7.6 06 Perfect Binder Adjustment \ 06 Glue Form Finish Position Adjustment

Perform this adjustment for the position to finish equalizing the glue applied on the body set.

Adjustment object:
All Size, 8.5 × 11 , A4 , B5 , A5 , 5.5 × 8.5 , 16K , A4W , B5W , A5W , 8.5 × 11W , 5.5 × 8.5W , Custom

Available range:
(sooner) -128 to 127 (later) (1 step = 0.1 mm)

Note

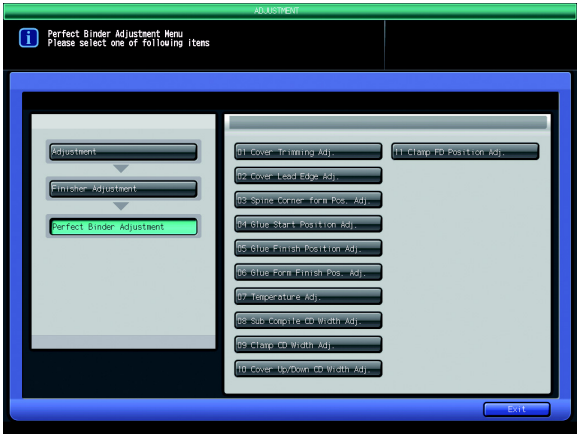
With [All Size] selected, the entered value will be applied to all paper sizes. With a specific paper size selected, the adjustment value will be the sum of those entered for both [All Size] and a specific size.

Procedure

1 Touch [Adjustment] on the Machine Status Screen.

The Adjustment Menu Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch [02 Finisher Adjustment], [06 Perfect Binder Adjustment], and then [06 Glue Form Finish Pos. Adj.].



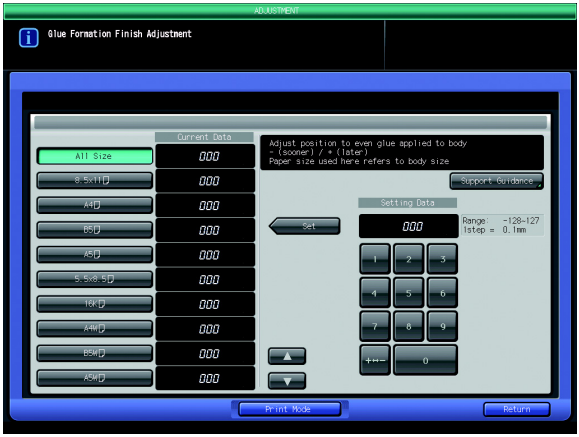
The Glue Formation Finish Position Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

3 Load cover sheets in the Perfect Binder tray or the desired tray (tray 1 to 8).

4 Load paper for body set in the desired tray (tray 1 to 8).

5 Using [▲] [▼] buttons to scroll the size buttons, touch the size button for body set in step 4 to highlight it.

– The paper sizes provided here represent perfect-bound book sizes.



6 Touch [Print Mode].

7 Select the trays loaded with paper for cover and body set in steps 3 and 4.

8 Press [Start] on the control panel.

A sample pattern of perfect-bound book will be output.

9 Check that the glue on the body set finishes to be equalized in proper position.

10 If the desired result cannot be obtained, touch [Close] to return to the Glue Formation Finish Position Adjustment Screen.

11 Use the touch panel key to enter the desired adjustment value. Touch [+<->-] to specify the value to be positive or negative, then touch [SET].

12 Repeat the adjustment steps from 6 to 11 until the desired result is obtained.

13 Touch [Return] to restore the Perfect Binder Adjustment Menu Screen.

3.7.7 06 Perfect Binder Adjustment \ 07 Temperature Adjustment

Perform this adjustment to control the condition of glue to be dried by setting the temperature on the following four sensors inside the melt tank.

Glue Tank-Top:
Supply glue pellet when machine detects temperature of liquid surface lower than set point. Set higher in thermal environment.
Initial: 132 °C
Recommended: 128 to 136 °C

Glue Tank-Mid:
Adjust the temperature to reach when warm up completed. Roller starts rotation. Setting higher helps glue temperature to be stable sooner.
Initial: 145 °C
Recommended: 140 to 145 °C

Glue Tank-Low:
Adjust the temperature setting to control tank heater.
Up: viscosity decreased, Down: viscosity increased
Initial: 185 °C
Recommended: 180 to 190 °C

Glue Apply Roller:
Adjust the temperature setting to control roller heater and to support heating glue.
Up: viscosity decreased, Down: viscosity increased
Initial: 165 °C
Recommended: 160 to 170 °C

...

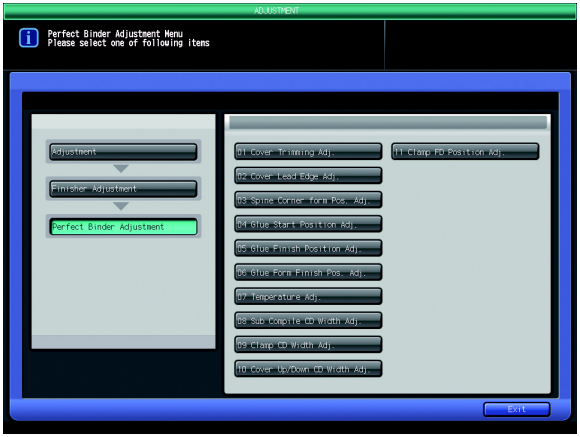
Reminder
Do not make unnecessary change of the temperature setting inside the melt tank.

Procedure

1 Touch [Adjustment] on the Machine Status Screen.

The Adjustment Menu Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch [02 Finisher Adjustment], [06 Perfect Binder Adjustment], and then [07 Temperature Adj.].



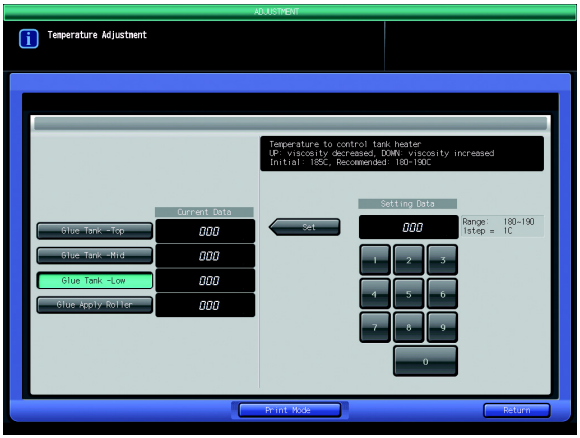
The Temperature Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

3 Load cover sheets in the Perfect Binder tray or the desired tray (tray 1 to 8).

4 Load paper for body set in the desired tray (tray 1 to 8).

5 Using [▲] [▼] buttons to scroll the size buttons, touch the size button for body set in step 4 to highlight it.

– The paper sizes provided here represent perfect-bound book sizes.



6 Touch [Print Mode].

7 Select the trays loaded with paper for cover and body set in steps 3 and 4.

8 Select the PB tray or desired main body tray, then press [Start].

A sample pattern of perfect-bound book will be output.

9 Check that the paste applied on the body set is dried properly.

10 If the desired result cannot be obtained, touch [Close] to return to the Temperature Adjustment Screen.

11 Use the touch panel key to enter the desired adjustment value, then touch [SET].

12 Repeat the adjustment steps from 6 to 11 until the desired result is obtained.

13 Touch [Return] to restore the Perfect Binder Adjustment Menu Screen.

3.7.8 06 Perfect Binder Adjustment \ 08 Sub Compile CD Width Adjustment

Perform this adjustment for the width in horizontal scanning direction of the body set.

Adjustment object:
All Size, 8.5 × 11 , A4 , B5 , A5 , 5.5 × 8.5 , 16K , A4W , B5W , A5W , 8.5 × 11W , 5.5 × 8.5W , Custom

Available range:
(wide) -20 to 20 (narrow) (1 step = 0.1 mm)

Note

Use this adjustment if the horizontal scanning direction is unequal on the former half of body pages when making more than one perfect-bound book. If unequalness appears on all pages of the body set, use 09 Clamp CD Width Adjustment instead.

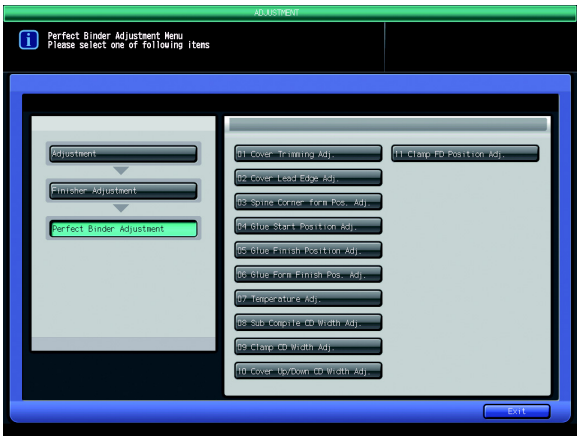
With [All Size] selected, the entered value will be applied to all paper sizes. With a specific paper size selected, the adjustment value will be the sum of those entered for both [All Size] and a specific size.

Procedure

1 Touch [Adjustment] on the Machine Status Screen.

The Adjustment Menu Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch [02 Finisher Adjustment], [06 Perfect Binder Adjustment], and then [08 Sub Compile CD Width Adj.].



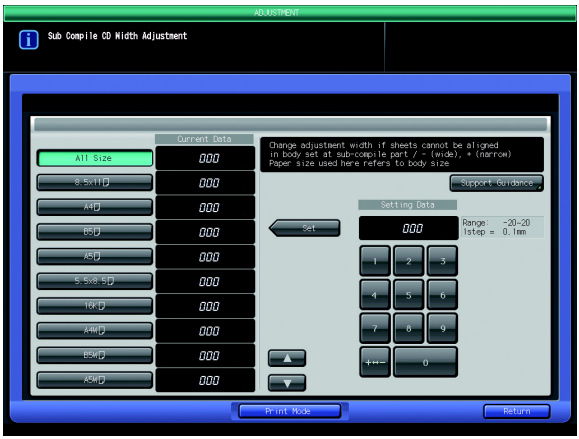
The Sub Compile CD Width Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

3 Load cover sheets in the Perfect Binder tray or the desired tray (tray 1 to 8).

4 Load paper for body set in the desired tray (tray 1 to 8).

5 Using [▲] [▼] buttons to scroll the size buttons, touch the size button for body set in step 4 to highlight it.

– The paper sizes provided here represent perfect-bound book sizes.



6 Touch [Print Mode].

7 Select the trays loaded with paper for cover and body set in steps 3 and 4.

8 Select the PB tray or desired main body tray, then press [Start].

A sample pattern of perfect-bound book will be output.

9 Check that the horizontal scanning direction is equal on every page of the body set.

– If it is not equal on all pages, proceed to the next step.
– If unequalness appears on the latter half of body pages while the former half shows equalness, use 09 Clamp CD Width Adjustment.

10 If the desired result cannot be obtained, touch [Close] to return to the Sub Compile CD Width Adjustment Screen.

11 Use the touch panel key to enter the desired adjustment value. Touch [+<->-] to specify the value to be positive or negative, then touch [SET].

12 Repeat the adjustment steps from 6 to 11 until the desired result is obtained.

13 Touch [Return] to restore the Perfect Binder Adjustment Menu Screen.

3.7.9 06 Perfect Binder Adjustment \ 09 Clamp CD Width Adjustment

Perform this adjustment for the width in horizontal scanning direction of the body set.

Adjustment object:
All Size, 8.5 × 11 ▯, A4 ▯, B5 ▯, A5 ▯, 5.5 × 8.5 ▯, 16K ▯, A4W ▯, B5W ▯, A5W ▯, 8.5 × 11W ▯, 5.5 × 8.5W ▯, Custom

Available range:
(wide) -20 to 20 (narrow) (1 step = 0.1 mm)

Note

Use this adjustment if the horizontal scanning direction is unequal on the body pages when making only one perfect-bound book, or on the latter half of body pages when making more than one perfect-bound book. If unequalness appears on the former half of body pages when making more than one perfect-bound book, use 08 Sub Compile CD Width Adjustment instead.

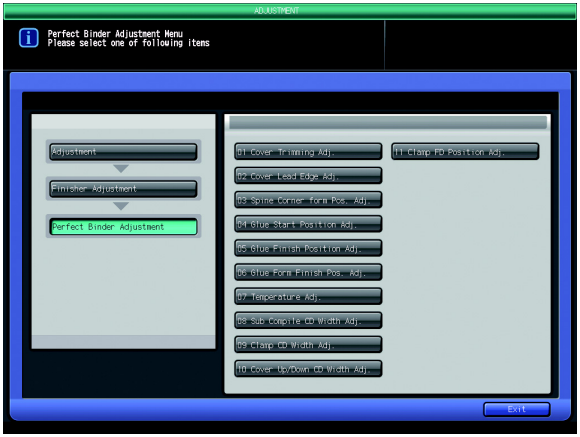
With [All Size] selected, the entered value will be applied to all paper sizes. With a specific paper size selected, the adjustment value will be the sum of those entered for both [All Size] and a specific size.

Procedure

1 Touch [Adjustment] on the Machine Status Screen.

The Adjustment Menu Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch [02 Finisher Adjustment], [06 Perfect Binder Adjustment], and then [09 Clamp CD Width Adj.].



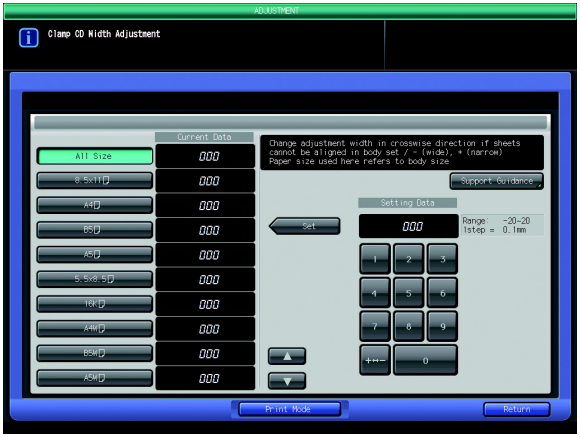
The Clamp CD Width Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

3 Load cover sheets in the Perfect Binder tray or the desired tray (tray 1 to 8).

4 Load paper for body set in the desired tray (tray 1 to 8).

5 Using [▲] [▼] buttons to scroll the size buttons, touch the size button for body set in step 4 to highlight it.

– The paper sizes provided here represent perfect-bound book sizes.



6 Touch [Print Mode].

7 Select the trays loaded with paper for cover and body set in steps 3 and 4.

8 Select the PB tray or desired main body tray, then press [Start].

A sample pattern of perfect-bound book will be output.

9 Check that the horizontal scanning direction is equal on all pages of the body set.

- If unequalness appears on the latter half of body pages while the former half shows equalness, proceed to the next step.
- If it is not equal on all pages, use 08 Sub Compile CD Width Adjustment.

10 If the desired result cannot be obtained, touch [Close] to return to the Clamp CD Width Adjustment Screen.

11 Use the touch panel key to enter the desired adjustment value. Touch [+<->-] to specify the value to be positive or negative, then touch [SET].

12 Repeat the adjustment steps from 6 to 11 until the desired result is obtained.

13 Touch [Return] to restore the Perfect Binder Adjustment Menu Screen.

3.7.10 06 Perfect Binder Adjustment \ 10 Cover Up/Down CD Width Adjustment

Perform this adjustment for the horizontal scanning position of the body set and cover.

Adjustment object:
PB Tray, Main Body Tray (including PI tray)

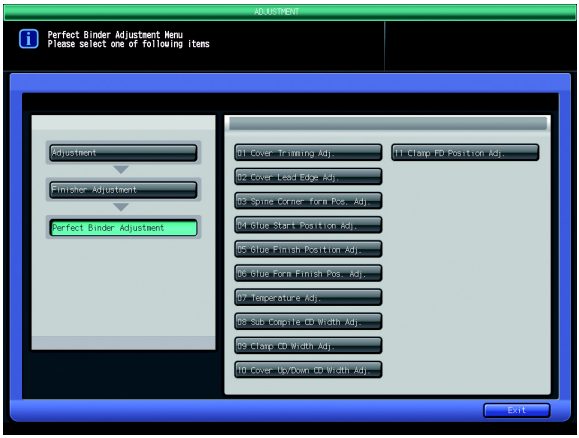
Available range:
(wide) -20 to 20 (narrow) (1 step = 0.1 mm)

Procedure

1 Touch [Adjustment] on the Machine Status Screen.

The Adjustment Menu Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch [02 Finisher Adjustment], [06 Perfect Binder Adjustment], and then [10 Cover Up/Down CD Width Adj.].



The Cover Up/Down CD Width Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

3 Load cover sheets in the Perfect Binder tray or the desired tray (tray 1 to 8).

4 Load paper for body set in the desired tray (tray 1 to 8).

5 Touch [PB Tray] or [Main Body Tray] to select the tray (Perfect Binder tray or tray 1 to 8) to feed the cover.



6 Touch [Print Mode].

7 Select the trays loaded with paper for cover and body set in steps 3 and 4.

8 Select the PB tray or desired main body tray, then press [Start].

A sample pattern of perfect-bound book will be output.

9 Check that the horizontal scanning position of body set matches with that of the cover.

10 If the desired result cannot be obtained, touch [Close] to return to the Cover Up/Down CD Width Adjustment Screen.

11 Use the touch panel key to enter the desired adjustment value. Touch [+<->-] to specify the value to be positive or negative, then touch [SET].

12 Repeat the adjustment steps from 6 to 11 until the desired result is obtained.

13 Touch [Return] to restore the Perfect Binder Adjustment Menu Screen.

3.7.11 06 Perfect Binder Adjustment \ 11 Clamp FD Position Adjustment

Perform this adjustment for the width in vertical scanning direction of the body set.

Adjustment object:
All Size, 8.5 × 11 , A4 , B5 , A5 , 5.5 × 8.5 , 16K , A4W , B5W , A5W , 8.5 × 11W , 5.5 × 8.5W , Custom

Available range:
(wide) -20 to 20 (narrow) (1 step = 0.1 mm)

Note

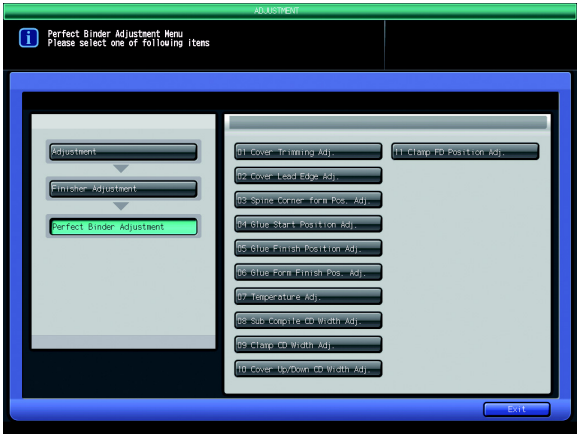
With [All Size] selected, the entered value will be applied to all paper sizes. With a specific paper size selected, the adjustment value will be the sum of those entered for both [All Size] and a specific size.

Procedure

1 Touch [Adjustment] on the Machine Status Screen.

The Adjustment Menu Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch [02 Finisher Adjustment], [06 Perfect Binder Adjustment], and then [11 Clamp FD Position Adj.].



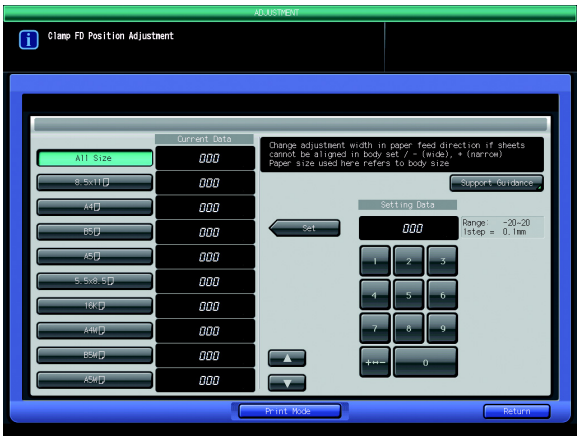
The Clamp FD Position Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

3 Load cover sheets in the Perfect Binder tray or the desired tray (tray 1 to 8).

4 Load paper for body set in the desired tray (tray 1 to 8).

5 Using [▲] [▼] buttons to scroll the size buttons, touch the size button for body set in step 4 to highlight it.

– The paper sizes provided here represent perfect-bound book sizes.



6 Touch [Print Mode].

7 Select the tray loaded with paper for body set in step 4.

8 Select the PB tray or desired main body tray, then press [Start].

A sample pattern of perfect-bound book will be output.

9 Check that the vertical scanning direction is equal on all pages of the body set.

10 If the desired result cannot be obtained, touch [Close] to return to the Cover Up/Down CD Width Adjustment Screen.

11 Use the touch panel key to enter the desired adjustment value. Touch [+<->-] to specify the value to be positive or negative, then touch [SET].

– Setting the value too wide may cause misalignment in vertical scanning direction, or too narrow value may leave a warp made by the FD guides in the output sheets.

12 Repeat the adjustment steps from 6 to 11 until the desired result is obtained.

13 Touch [Return] to restore the Perfect Binder Adjustment Menu Screen.

3.8 Finisher Adjustment (RU-506)

3.8.1 07 Relay Stacker Adjustment \ 01 Paper Width Adjustment

Adjust position of relay stacker (RU) adjustment plate in crosswise direction. Perform if punch holes shift in crosswise direction.

Adjustment object:
All Size, 11 × 17 ▭, A3 ▭, B4 ▭, 8.5 × 14 ▭, A4 ▭, 8.5 × 11 ▭, 8.5 × 11 ▯, A4 ▯, B5 ▯, A5 ▭, 5.5 × 8.5 ▯, 8 × 13 ▭, 8.125 × 13.25 ▭, 8.5 × 13 ▭, 8.25 × 13 ▭, 8K ▭, 16K ▯, 16K ▭, 12 × 18 ▭, A3W ▭, B4W ▭, A4W ▯, A4W ▭, B5W ▯, A5W ▯, 12 × 18W ▭, 11 × 17W ▭, 8.5 × 11W ▯, 8.5 × 11W ▭, 5.5 × 8.5W ▯, Custom, SRA3 ▭, SRA4 ▭, 9 × 11 ▯

Available range:
(narrow) -20 to 20 (wide) (1 step = 0.1 mm)

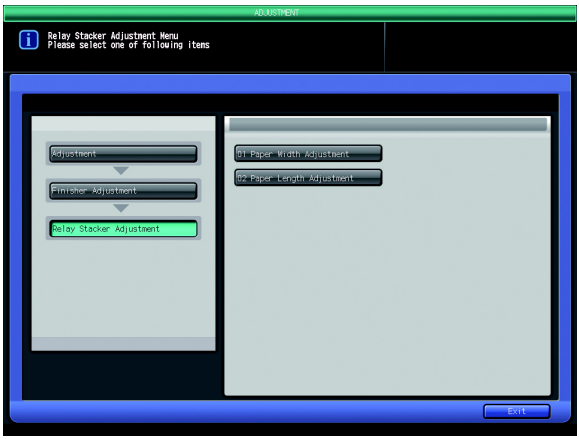
Note
With [All Size] selected, the entered value will be applied to all paper sizes. With a specific paper size selected, the adjustment value will be the sum of those entered for both [All Size] and a specific size.

Procedure

1 Touch [Adjustment] on the Machine Status Screen.

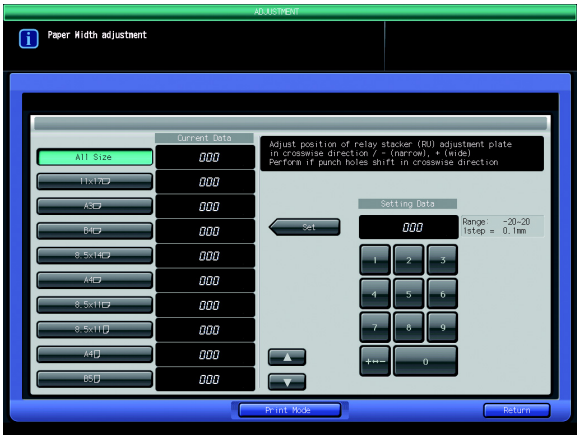
The Adjustment Menu Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch [02 Finisher Adjustment], [07 Relay Stacker Adjustment], and then [01 Paper Width Adjustment].



The Paper Width Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

3 Using [▲] [▼] buttons to scroll the size buttons, touch the desired button to highlight it.



4 Touch [Print Mode].

5 Load the paper of the size to be adjusted, then select the tray on the screen.

6 Enter 10 for print quantity, then press [Start] on the control panel.

Sample patterns will be output.

7 Check the diameter of penetrated holes when output sheets are piled up.

– Allowance: 5.0 mm or more for 2-Hole, 6.5 mm or more for 3-Hole

8 If the desired result cannot be obtained, touch [Close] to return to the Paper Width Adjustment Screen.

9 Use the touch panel key to enter the desired adjustment value. Touch [+<->-] to specify the value to be positive or negative, then touch [SET].

– To make the adjustment neatly, first enter the maximum adjustment value (wide), and then gradually make it narrower to find the point where the penetrated holes are aligned.

10 Repeat the adjustment steps from 4 to 9 until the desired result is obtained.

11 Touch [Return] to restore the Relay Stacker Adjustment Menu Screen.

3.8.2 07 Relay Stacker Adjustment \ 02 Paper Length Adjustment

Adjust position of relay stacker (RU) adjustment plate in paper feed direction. Perform if punch holes shift in paper feed direction.

Adjustment object:
All Size, 11 × 17, A3, B4, 8.5 × 14, A4, 8.5 × 11, 8.5 × 11, A4, B5, A5, 5.5 × 8.5, 8 × 13, 8.125 × 13.25, 8.5 × 13, 8.25 × 13, 8K, 16K, 16K, 12 × 18, A3W, B4W, A4W, A4W, B5W, A5W, 12 × 18W, 11 × 17W, 8.5 × 11W, 8.5 × 11W, 5.5 × 8.5W, Custom, SRA3, SRA4, 9 × 11

Available range:
(narrow) -50 to 50 (wide) (1 step = 0.1 mm)

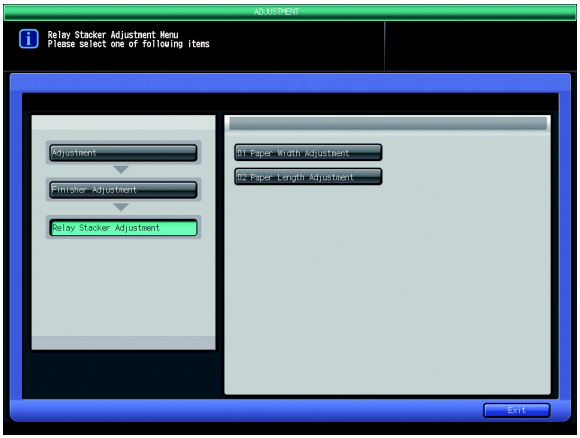
Note
With [All Size] selected, the entered value will be applied to all paper sizes. With a specific paper size selected, the adjustment value will be the sum of those entered for both [All Size] and a specific size.

Procedure

1 Touch [Adjustment] on the Machine Status Screen.

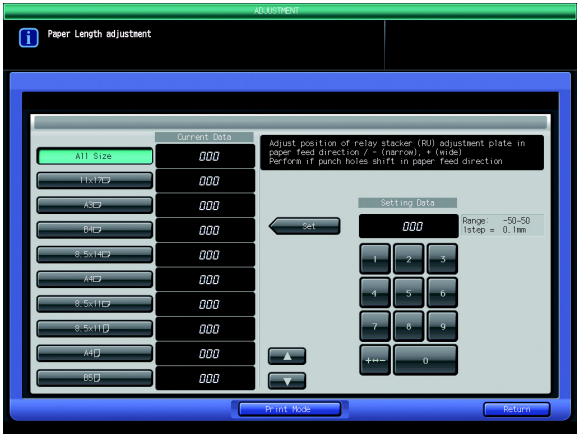
The Adjustment Menu Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch [02 Finisher Adjustment], [07 Relay Stacker Adjustment], and then [02 Paper Length Adjustment].



The Paper Length Adjustment Screen will be displayed.

3 Using [▲] [▼] buttons to scroll the size buttons, touch the desired button to highlight it.



4 Touch [Print Mode].

5 Load the paper of the size to be adjusted, then select the tray on the screen.

6 Enter 10 for print quantity, then press [Start] on the control panel.

Sample patterns will be output.

7 Check the diameter of penetrated holes when output sheets are piled up.

– Allowance: 5.0 mm or more for 2-Hole, 6.5 mm or more for 3-Hole

8 If the desired result cannot be obtained, touch [Close] to return to the Paper Length Adjustment Screen.

9 Use the touch panel key to enter the desired adjustment value. Touch [+<->-] to specify the value to be positive or negative, then touch [SET].

– To make the adjustment neatly, first enter the maximum adjustment value (wide), and then gradually make it narrower to find the point where the penetrated holes are aligned.

10 Repeat the adjustment steps from 4 to 9 until the desired result is obtained.

11 Touch [Return] to restore the Relay Stacker Adjustment Menu Screen.

3.9 03 Size Memory Recovery Mode

Perform drum pre-rotation for one minute if difference of density appears on paper end, with the paper which is wider then previous job.

Procedure

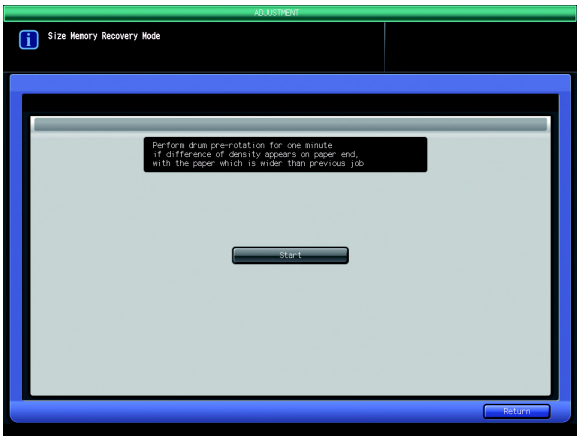
1 Touch [Adjustment] on the Machine Status Screen.

The Adjustment Menu Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch [03 Size Memory Recovery Mode].

The Size Memory Recovery Mode Screen will be displayed.

3 Touch [Start].



4 Touch [Return] to restore the Adjustment Menu Screen.

3.10 04 Charge Manual Cleaning

Perform charging corona cleaning, if line or uneven density appears on half-tone print image.

Procedure

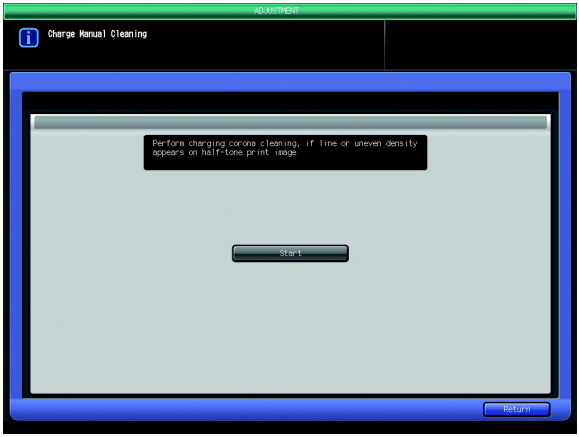
1 Touch [Adjustment] on the Machine Status Screen.

The Adjustment Menu Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch [04 Charge Manual Cleaning].

The Charge Manual Cleaning Screen will be displayed.

3 Touch [Start].



4 Touch [Return] to restore the Adjustment Menu Screen.

3.11 05 Sensitive Drum Memory Recovery Mode

Perform drum pre-rotation for three minutes, if uneven density caused by image pattern appears.

Procedure

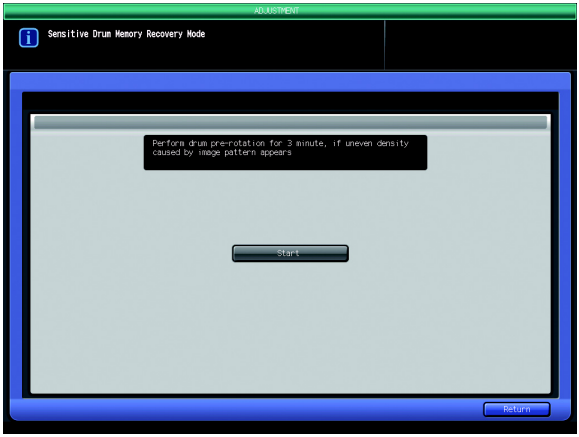
1 Touch [Adjustment] on the Machine Status Screen.

The Adjustment Menu Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch [05 Sensitive Drum Memory Recovery Mode].

The Sensitive Drum Memory Recovery Mode Screen will be displayed.

3 Touch [Start].



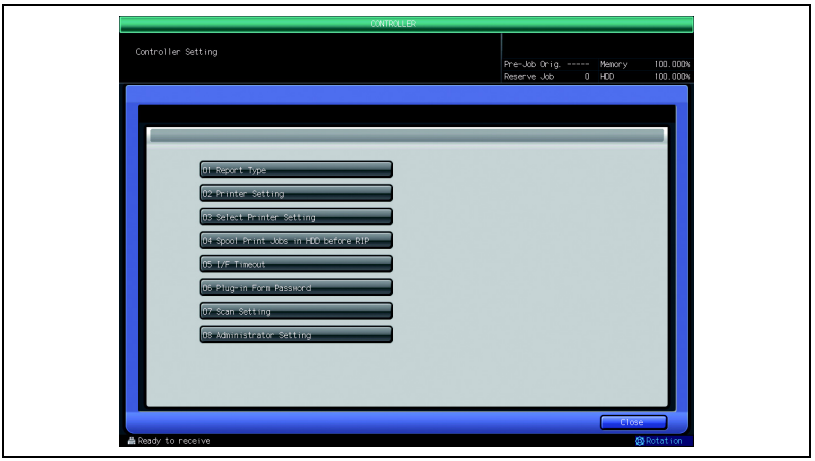
4 Touch [Return] to restore the Adjustment Menu Screen.

4 Controller Setting

4 Controller Setting

4.1 Function Overview

Touch [Controller] on the Machine Status Screen. The Controller Setting Menu Screen will be displayed.



Setting change concerning the printer controller is available from the Controller Setting Menu Screen.

4.1.1 List of the Controller Setting

01 Report Type

Use the function to print out the report type selected from the screen. See page 4-9.

Menu Items	Description	Setting Options
Configuration Page Print	Print the configuration page to check the firmware version and network settings.	---
PCL Demo Page Print	Print the PCL demo page.	---
PS Demo Page Print*	Print the PS demo page.	---
PCL Font List	Print the PCL font list.	---
PS Font List*	Print the PS font list.	---

* Available only with PS chip installed.

02 Printer Setting

Various printer settings are available from this screen. See page 4-10.

Menu Items	Description	Default
Setting Number	Specify the default output setting for each number. 1-6	1
01 Basic Settings	The following default settings are used unless otherwise specified by the printer driver.	
01 PDL	Select the page description language to be initially used. Auto, PCL, PS, TIFF*, PPML	Auto
02 Paper Tray Setting	Select the paper feed tray to be initially used. The selectable items vary depending upon the configuration of installed options. Auto, Tray 1, Tray 2, Tray 3, Tray 4, Tray 5, Tray 6, Tray 7, Tray 8	Auto
03 Output Tray Setting	Select the output tray to be initially used. The selectable items vary depending upon the configuration of installed options. Auto, Stacker Auto, Stacker 1 Main Tray, Stacker 1 Sub Tray, Stacker 2 Main Tray, Stacker 2 Sub Tray, Multi Folder Main Tray, Multi Folder Sub Tray, Saddle Stitcher, Stapler Main Tray, Stapler Sub Tray, Perfect Binder Sub Tray	Auto
04 Simplex/Duplex	Select whether or not to allow double-sided printing. Simplex, Duplex	Simplex
05 Binding Position	Select the binding position to be initially used. Top, Left, Right	Left
06 Staple	Select the staple position to be initially used. Off, Left Corner, Right Corner, 2 Position	Off
07 Punch	Select the punch position to be initially used. Off, 2-Hole, 3-Hole, Multi Punch	Off

Menu Items		Description	Default
	08 Fold/ Trimming	Select the initial setting for each function. Off, Z-fold (A3/B4/11×17/8K), Z-fold (8.5×14), Fold & Staple/Non Trim, Fold & Staple/Trim, Half fold/In-Print, Half fold/Out-Print, Tri-Fold-in/In-Print, Tri-Fold-in/Out-Print, Tri-Fold-out/In-Print, Tri-Fold-out/Out-Print, Double parallel/In-Print, Double parallel/Out-Print, Gate/In-Print, Gate/Out-Print, Multi Tri-Fold/In-Print, Multi Tri-Fold/Out-Print, Multi Half fold/Non Trim, Multi Half fold/Trim	Off
	09 Offset	Select whether or not to use Offset Sort or Offset Group as initial setting. On, Off	Off
	10 Output Application	Select either face up or face down for initial setting. Face Down, Face Up	Face Down
	11 Order	Select the print page order in initial state. 1 to N, N to 1	1 to N
	12 Sets	Specify the print quantity in initial state. 1 to 9999	1
	13 Sort/Group	Select the initial output mode. Sort, Group	Sort
	14 Paper Size	Select the paper size to be initially used. When selecting a tabbed paper size, select the number of tabs as well. A3, A4, A5, JIS-B4, ISO-B4, JIS-B5, ISO-B5, SRA3, SRA4, 12×18, 11×17, 9×11, 8 1/2×14, 8 1/2×13, 8 1/4×13, 8 1/8×13 1/4, 8×13, 8 1/2×11, 5 1/2×8 1/2, A3W, A4W, A5W, JIS-B4W, ISO-B4W, JIS-B5W, ISO-B5W, 12×18W, 11×17W, 8 1/2×11W, 5 1/2×8 1/2W, 8 1/2×11Tab, A4Tab	A4
	15 Orientation	Select the orientation of the image printed on copy paper. Portrait, Landscape	Portrait
	16 Banner Option	Select whether or not to print the banner page. Off, On	Off

Menu Items		Description	Default
	17 Banner Tray	Select the paper feed tray for printing banner page. The selectable items vary depending upon the configuration of installed options. Auto, Tray 1, Tray 2, Tray 3, Tray 4, Tray 5, Tray 6, Tray 7, Tray 8	Auto
	18 Convert Paper Size	Select whether or not to change the paper size. Off, 8.5×11/11×17 to A4/A3, A4/A3 to 8.5×11/11×17	Off
	19 Combine Originals/ Image Repeat	Specify the default mode of Combine Originals and Image Repeat. Off, 2 in 1, 2 repeat, 2 repeat-reversal (L), 2 repeat-reversal (R), 2 repeat-reversal (U), 2 repeat-reversal (D)	Off
	20 Booklet Pagination	Select whether or not to use the Booklet function. Off, On	Off
	21 Adhesive Binding	Select whether or not to use the Adhesive binding mode. Off, On	Off
	22 Image Pos.	Select the default print position. Lead Edge, Center, Rear Edge	Rear Edge
	23 Pile Permission	Select whether or not to print the image fully to the edges. Off, On	Off
	24 Perfect Bind	Select the default print position. 01 Setting,02 Cover Tray, 03 Cover Duplex, 04 Cover Trimming, 05 Spine Width	01 Setting: Off 02 Cover Tray: Tray 1 03 Cover Duplex: Simplex 04 Cover Trimming: Off 05 Spine Width: 10.0 mm
	25 Quality	Select whether or not to print the image fully to the edges. 1200, 600	1200
	26 Full Bleed	Select whether or not to print the image fully to the edges. Off, On	Off
02 PCL Setting			
	01 Font Setting	Specify the font to be used in PCL. 90 fonts + downloadable fonts (90–999)	Courier 90 fonts
	02 Symbol Set*	Specify the symbol set to be used in PCL. 45 sets	Roman-8
	03 Line/Page	Specify the number of lines per page. 5 to 128	64
	04 Points	Specify the font size by point. 4.00 to 999.75	12.00

Menu Items		Description	Default
	05 Pitch	Specify the font pitch. 0.44 to 99.99	10.00
	06 CR/LF Mapping	Select the mapping of the line feed code. Off CR=CRLF LFLF FF=FF CR=CR LF=CRLF FF=CRFF CR=CRLF LF=CRLF FF=CRFF	Off
03 PS Setting			
	01 PS Error Print	Select to print the error report when an error occurs while rasterizing PostScript data. Off, On	On
04 TIFF Setting			
	01 Auto Paper Select	Select to use Auto Paper function. Off, On	On
	02 Image Position	Select the image position to be printed on a page. Left, Center	Center

* For the details of the symbol set, see the appendix.

03 Select Printer Setting

Select the default port number, and specify the output format for each port. See page 4-16.

Menu Items	Description	Default
Port 1 (9100)	Select the default port number. 1 to 6	1
Port 2 (9112)	Select the number for Port 2. 1 to 6	1
Port 3 (9113)	Select the number for Port 3. 1 to 6	1
Port 4 (9114)	Select the number for Port 4. 1 to 6	1
Port 5 (9115)	Select the number for Port 5. 1 to 6	1
Port 6 (9116)	Select the number for Port 6. 1 to 6	1

04 Spool Print Jobs in HDD before RIP

Select whether or not to spool the job to HDD. See page 4-17.

Menu Items	Description	Default
Spool Print Jobs in HDD before RIP	Select to enable, disable, or automatically perform the spool function. Auto, Enable, Disable	Disable

05 I/F Timeout

Select the time for the network timeout and USB timeout. See page 4-18.

Menu Items	Description	Default
Network	Set the timer to terminate the network port. 10 to 3,600 seconds	60
USB	Set the timer to terminate the network port. 10 to 1,000 seconds	60

06 Plug-in Form Password

Set the password for the form of the plug-in driver, SOFHA. See page 4-19.

Menu Items	Description	Default
Plug-in Form Password*	Set the password for the form of the plug-in driver, SOFHA. Within 64 alphanumeric characters	password

* Available only with PS chip installed.

07 Scan Setting

Make settings concerning the storage of scanned data. See page 4-21.

Menu Items	Description	Default
01 Auto Delete Document	Select the desired time for the scanned data to be stored in a box. Save, 12 hours, 1 day, 2 days, 3 days, 7 days, 30 days	1 day
02 File Name	Enter the file name. Within 11 alphanumeric characters	S + serial number + _

08 Administrator Setting

Make the software switch setting and default setting. See page 4-23.

Menu Items	Description	Default
01 Software Switch Setting	Make the software switch setting by entering the desired switch number and specifying Off/On for it. Switch Number 1–50, Off (0)/ On (1)	On (1)
02 Default Setting	Resume the default administrator settings.	Start

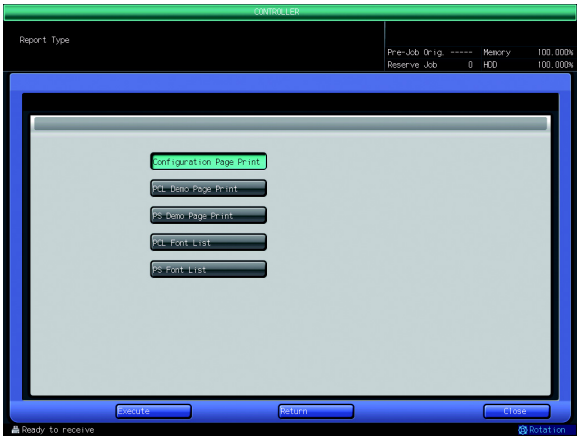
4.2 01 Report Type

Use this function to print out the report type selected from the screen.

Procedure

1 Touch [01 Report Type] on the Controller Setting Menu Screen.
The Report Type Selection Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch the desired report type key to select it.



3 Touch [Execute].
The Controller Setting Menu Screen will be restored, and the Data LED on the control panel flashes to indicate that the printing operation is in progress.
To return to the previous screen, touch [Return].

4 Touch [Close] to complete the setting and restore the Machine Status Screen.

4.3 02 Printer Setting

Use this function to register the desired output form. Six types can be specified at maximum.
Specify the setting number (1 to 6) first, then specify the following four printer settings for that number.

- 01 Basic Settings specify basic settings for printer.
- 02 PCL Setting specifies the settings concerning printer protocol.
- 03 PS Setting allows the machine to output the PS error print.
- 04 TIFF Setting specifies the settings concerning TIFF image.

Procedure

1 Touch [02 Printer Setting] on the Controller Setting Menu Screen.

The Printer Setting Screen will be displayed.

2 Specify the setting number.

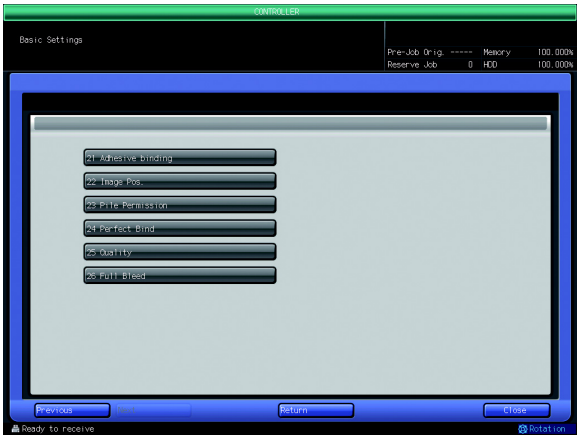


– Use the touch panel keypad to enter the setting number for your setting.
Available range is from 1 to 6.
– Touch [Set] to complete the setting. If a wrong number is entered, touch [Reset] to re-enter the correct number.

3 Perform the Basic Settings.

– Touch [01 Basic Settings]. The Basic Setting Screen will be displayed.
– Make the desired setting. Touch [Next] or [Previous] to scroll to the desired item.





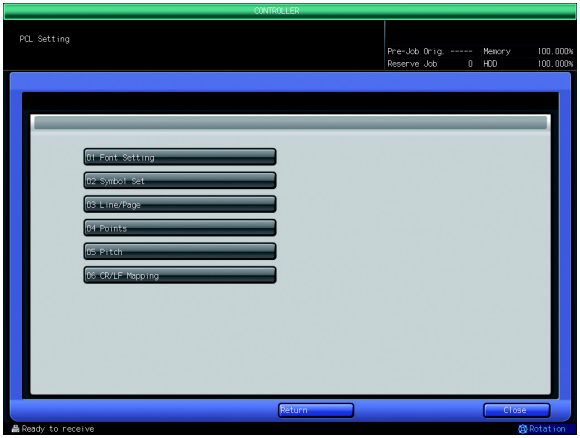
– The following settings are used unless otherwise specified by the printer driver.
  01 PDL: Select the page description language.
  02 Paper Tray Setting: Select the paper feed tray.
  03 Output Tray Setting: Select the exit tray.
  04 Simplex/Duplex: Select whether or not to allow double-sided printing.
  05 Binding Position: Select the binding position.

06 Staple: Select the staple position.
07 Punch: Select the punch position.
08 Fold/Trimming: Select the function to be used.
09 Offset: Select whether or not to use Offset Sort/Offset Group.
10 Output Application: Select either face up or face down.
11 Order: Select the page order to be output.
12 Sets: Specify the print quantity.
13 Sort/Group: Select the output mode.
14 Paper Size: Select the paper size.
15 Orientation: Select the image orientation.
16 Banner Option: Select whether or not to print the banner page.
17 Banner Tray: Select the paper feed tray for printing banner page.
18 Convert Paper Size: Select whether or not to change the paper size.
19 Combine Originals/Image Repeat: Specify the default mode of Combine Originals and Image Repeat.
20 Booklet Pagination: Select whether or not to use the Booklet function.
21 Adhesive Binding: Select whether or not to use the Adhesive binding mode.
22 Image Pos.: Select the print position.
23 Pile Permission: Select whether or not to permit piling up the output sheets.
24 Perfect Bind: Specify the desired perfect binding function.
25 Quality: Specify the resolution of output image.
26 Full Bleed: Select whether or not to print the image fully to the edges.

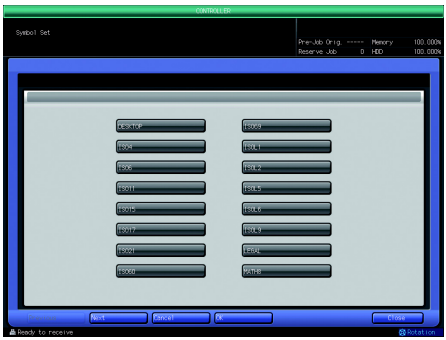
– Touch [Return] to complete the setting and restore the Printer Setting Screen.

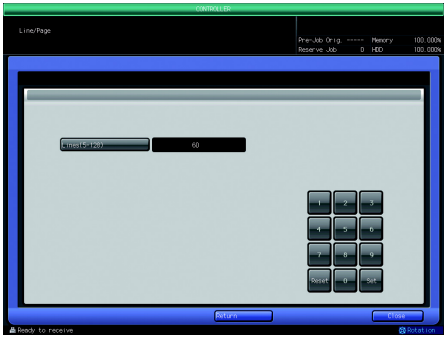
4 Perform the PCL Setting

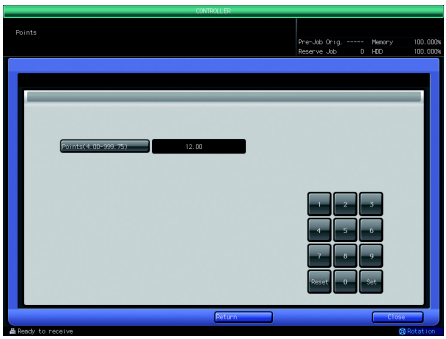
– Touch [02 PCL Setting]. The PCL Setting Screen will be displayed.
– Make the desired setting. Touch [Next]/[Previous] to scroll, as needed.
01 Font Setting: Specify the font to be used in PCL. The desired font can be installed by selecting the font number.
02 Symbol Set: Specify the symbol set to be used in PCL.
03 Line/Page: Specify the number of lines per page.
04 Points: Specify the font size by point.
05 Pitch: Specify the font pitch.
06 CR/LF Mapping: Select the mapping of line feed code.


CONTROLLER
PCL Setting
Pre-Job Orig. ----- Memory 100.000%
Reserve Job 0 HDD 100.000%
01 Font Setting
02 Symbol Set
03 Line/Page
04 Points
05 Pitch
06 CR/LF Mapping
Return
Close
Ready to receive
Rotation

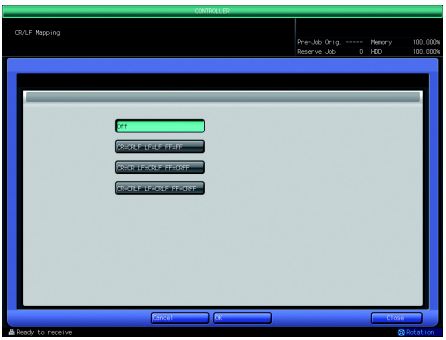

CONTROLLER
Font Setting
Courier
CG Times
CG Times Bold
CG Times Italic
CG Times Bold Italic
CG Omega
CG Omega Bold
CG Omega Italic
CG Omega Bold Italic
Coronet
Clarendon Condensed
Univers Medium
Univers Bold
Univers Medium Italic
Univers Bold Italic
Univers Med. Condensed
Univers Bold Condensed
Univers Med. Cond. It.
Univers Bold Cond. It.
Antique Olive
Next
Cancel
OK
Close
Ready to receive
Rotation


CONTROLLER
Symbol Set
Desktop
ISO4
ISO6
ISO11
ISO15
ISO17
ISO21
ISO60
ISO69
ISO2
ISO4
ISO6
ISO10
ISO14
ISO15
ISO16
ISO17
PSMath
Next
Cancel
OK
Close
Ready to receive
Rotation


CONTROLLER
Line/Page
60
Return
Close
Ready to receive
Rotation


CONTROLLER
Points
12.00
Return
Close
Ready to receive
Rotation

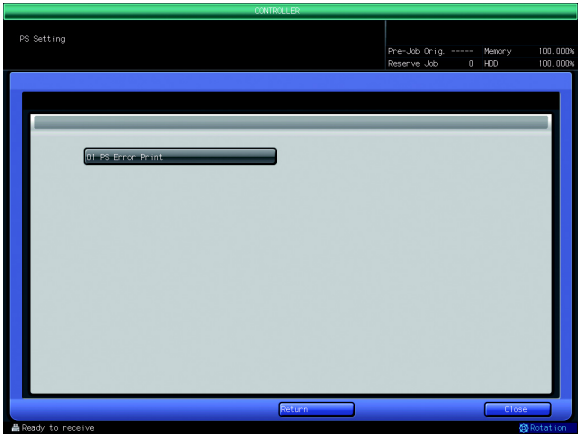




– Touch [Return] to complete the setting and restore the Printer Setting Screen.

5 Perform the PS Setting.

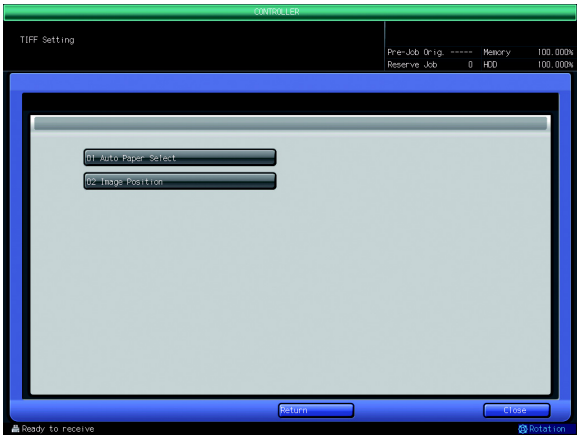
– Touch [03 PS Setting]. The PS Setting Screen will be displayed.
– Touch [01 PS Error Print], then select on/off for printing the PS error report.



– Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to cancel the setting. The PS Setting Screen will be restored.
– Touch [Return] to complete the setting and restore the Printer Setting Screen.

6 Perform the TIFF Setting.

– Touch [04 TIFF Setting]. The TIFF Setting Screen will be displayed.
– Make the desired setting.



01 Auto Paper Select:
Select whether or not to use Auto Paper function.
02 Image Position:
Select the image position to be printed on a page.

– Touch [OK] to complete the setting. The TIFF Setting Screen will be restored.
– Touch [Return] to complete the setting and restore the Printer Setting Screen.

7 Touch [Return] on the Printer Setting Screen.

The Controller Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

8 Touch [Close] to complete the setting and restore the Machine Status Screen.

4.4 03 Select Printer Setting

Assign the printer default setting to each port.

Procedure

1 Touch [03 Select Printer Setting] on the Controller Setting Menu Screen.

The Select Printer Setting Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch the key to be specified.
To designate the port number, enter the number (1-6) already specified in “02 Printer Setting”, using the touch panel keypad.



3 Touch [Set] to complete the setting. If wrong number is entered before touching [Set], touch [Reset] to re-enter the correct number.

4 Touch [Return].

The Controller Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

5 Touch [Close] to complete the setting and restore the Machine Status Screen.

4.5 04 Spool Print Jobs in HDD before RIP

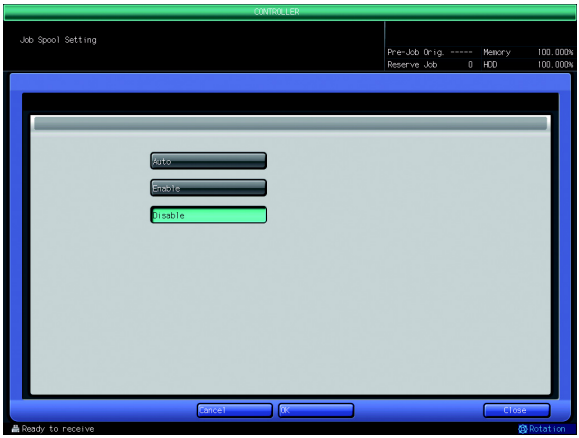
Select to enable, disable, or automatically perform the spool function.

Procedure

1 Touch [04 Spool Print Jobs in HDD before RIP] on the Controller Setting Menu Screen.

The Job Spool Setting Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch the desired key to select it.



3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting.

The Controller Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

4 Touch [Close] to complete the setting and restore the Machine Status Screen.

4.6 05 I/F Timeout

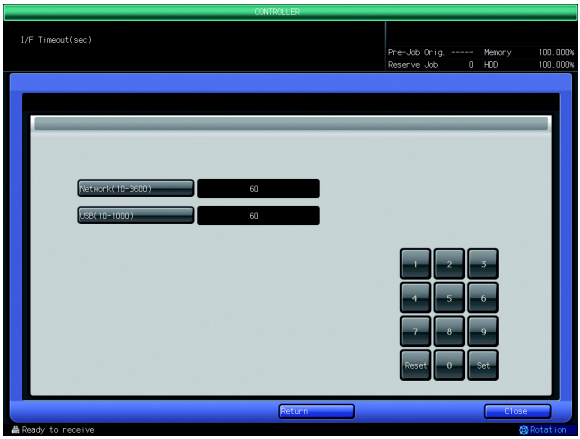
Select the time for the network timeout and USB timeout.

Procedure

1 Touch [05 I/F Timeout] on the Controller Setting Menu Screen.

The I/F Timeout Screen will be displayed.

2 Touch the desired key to highlight it.



3 Use the touch panel keypad to enter the time, then touch [Set].
The available range is from 10 to 3600 for Network, 10 to 1000 for USB.
Touching [Set] with unavailable time entered will restore the time initially set.
If a wrong number is entered before touching [Set], touch [Reset] to re-enter the correct number.

4 Touch [Return]. The Controller Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

5 Touch [Close] to complete the setting and restore the Machine Status Screen.

4.7 06 Plug-in Form Password

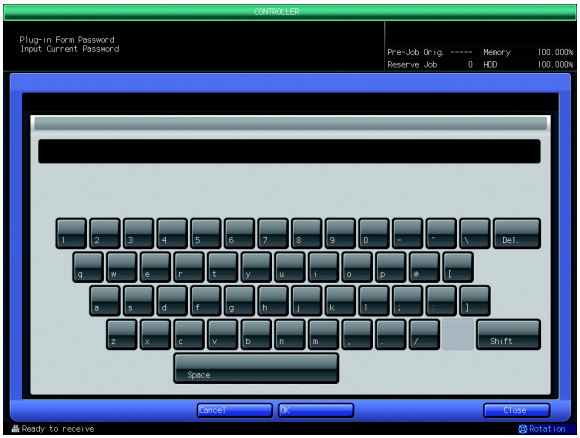
Set the password for the form of the plug-in driver, SOFHA.

Procedure

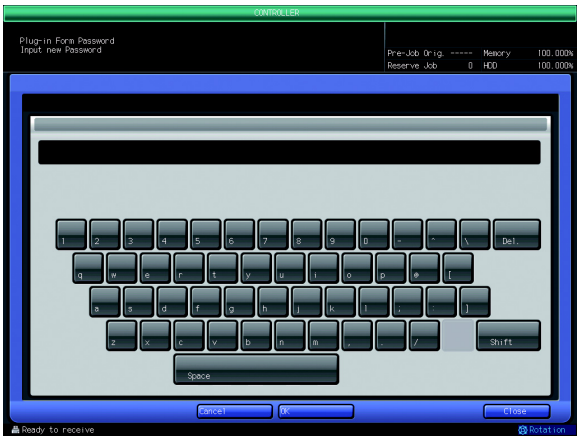
1 Touch [06 Plug-in Form Password] on the Controller Setting Menu Screen.

The Plug-in Form Password Entry Screen will be displayed.

2 Enter the current password, then touch [OK].



3 Enter the new password, then touch [OK].



4 Touch [Return].

The Controller Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

5 Touch [Close] to complete the setting and restore the Machine Status Screen.

4.8 07 Scan Setting

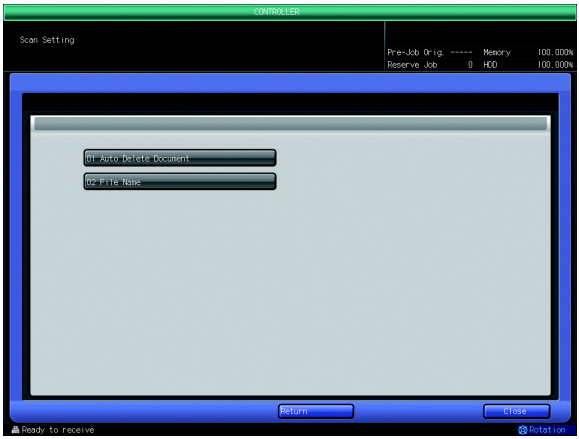
Make settings concerning the storage of scanned data.

Procedure

1 Touch [07 Scan Setting] on the Controller Setting Menu Screen.

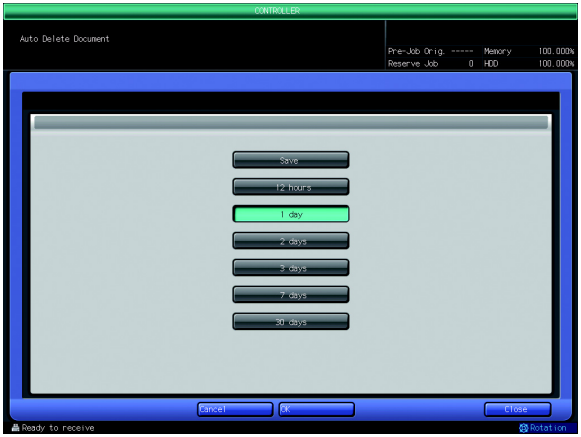
The Scan Setting Menu Screen will be displayed.

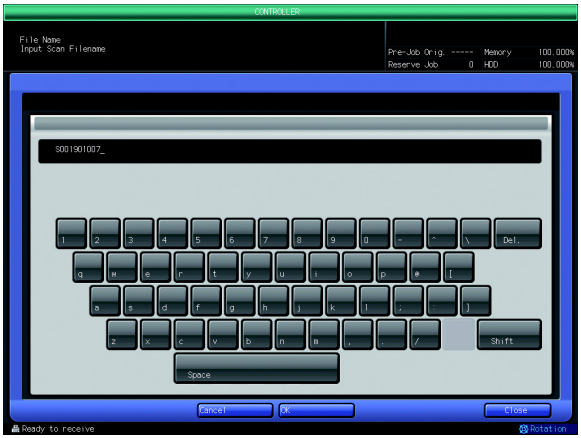
2 Touch the desired key to make a setting for each.



– 01 Auto Delete Document: Select the desired time for the scanned data to be stored in a box.

– 02 File Name: Enter the file name within 11 alphanumeric characters.





3 Touch [OK].

4 Touch [Return] when settings are completed.

The Controller Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

5 Touch [Close] to complete the setting and restore the Machine Status Screen.

4.9 08 Administrator Setting

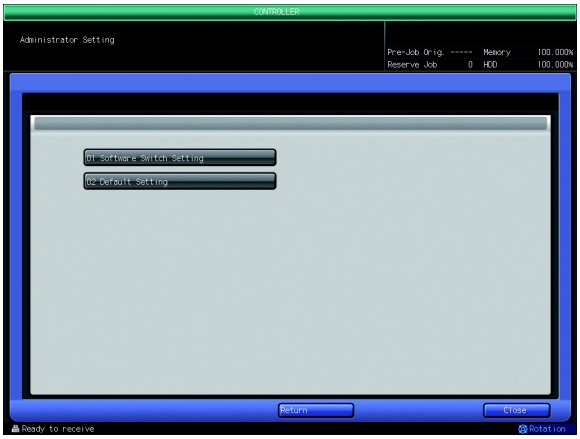
Make the software switch setting and default setting.

Procedure

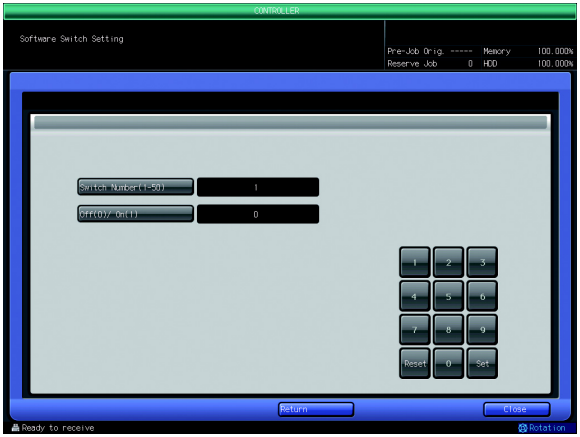
1 Touch [08 Administrator Setting] on the Controller Setting Menu Screen.

2 Make the software switch setting.

– Touch [01 Software Switch Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen.



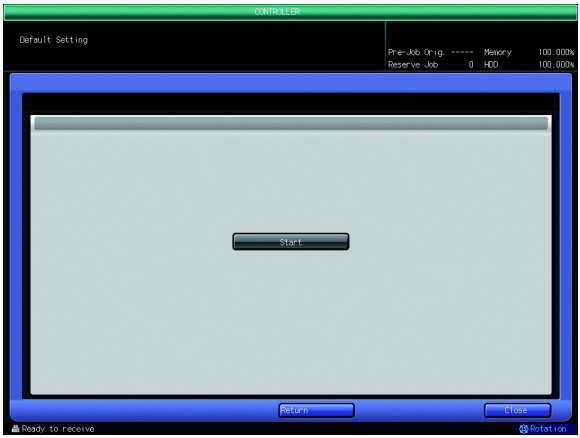
– Touch [Switch Number (1–50)], then enter the desired switch number from the touch panel keypad. If a wrong number is entered, continue by entering the correct number.



– Touch [Off (0)/ On (1)], then enter 0 or 1.
– Touch [Set]. To restore the previous setting, touch [Reset].
– Touch [Return] to return to the Administrator Setting Menu Screen.

3 Make the default setting.

– Touch [02 Default Setting], then touch [Start].



– Touch [Return] to return to the Administrator Setting Menu Screen.

4 Touch [Return].

The Controller Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

5 Touch [Close] to complete the setting and restore the Machine Status Screen.

5 Settings on Utility Menu Screen

5 Settings on Utility Menu Screen

5.1 Outlines of Settings on Utility Menu Screen

Pressing the [Utility/Counter] on the control panel displays the Utility Menu Screen.

On the screen, setting items 01 to 05 can be performed by any user, while “06 Administrator Setting” is supposed to be operated by an administrator and can be set to require a specific password to access the setting menu. Setting items in the menu include functions such as monitoring machine performance, managing user authentication/account track and security settings, and so on. It is recommended to assign the administrator to a sole person to control the administrator settings.

Detail

Please contact your service representative for setting the administrator password.

5.1.1 How to Access the Utility Menu Screen

Procedure

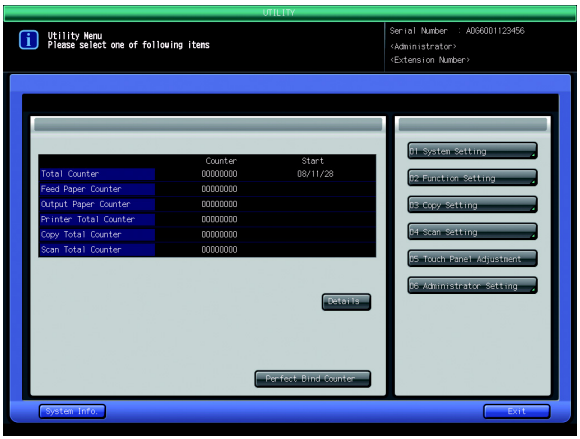
1 Press the [Utility/Counter] on the control panel.

The Utility Menu Screen will be displayed.

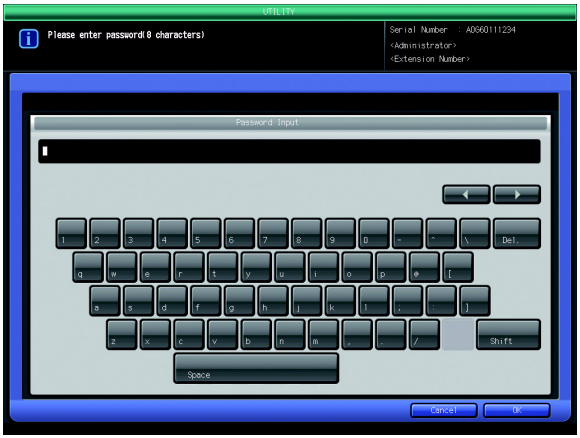


Setting items 01 to 05 are available from this screen. To operate 06 Administrator Setting, proceed to the next step.

2 Touch [06 Administrator Setting].



If the Password Input Screen is displayed, enter the eight-digit administrator password, then touch [OK].



The Administrator Setting Menu Screen will be displayed.

3 Make the desired administrator setting.

4 When all settings are completed, touch [Exit].

The screen displayed before pressing [Utility/Counter] will be restored.

5.1.2 List of Utility Menu Settings

Setting Item/Description	Default
01 System Setting	
01 Language Setting Select the language used in the touch panel. English/ French/ Spanish/ Japanese	English
02 Unit Setting Select the unit of measurement for the value to be entered by user and to be displayed on the touch panel. Paper Size (Length) Unit: mm/inch (decimal)/ inch (fraction) Paper Weight Unit: g/m^2, kg (A-Book)/ kg (B-Book)/ kg (Duodecimo)/ kg (Octavo)/ lb (Bond)/ lb (Book)/ lb (Bristol)/ lb (Cover)/ lb (Index)/ lb (Tag)	Paper Size (Length) Unit: mm Paper Weight Unit: g/m^2
03 Buzzer Setting	
01 Buzzer On/Off, Volume Setting Select whether or not to sound the buzzer as a screen key is touched. On/Off, Buzzer Volume Regulation	On
02 Buzzer for Job Stop Setting Select the duration of the buzzer to beep when the machine stops due to the lack of paper or mishandled paper. Off/ 3 seconds/5 seconds/10 seconds	Off
04 1SHOT Message Indication Time Select the timespan to display a shot message in the message area of the touch panel. 3 seconds/ 5 seconds	3 seconds
05 Default Screen Setting Select the initial screen to display when the machine power is turned on. Machine/ Job list (Reserve/ Suspend)/ Job list (Schedule)/ Copy	Machine
06 Auto Reset Setting Select the reset interval starting from the completion of a copy job until the machine returns to the initial condition without any key operated on the touch panel or on the control panel. Off/ 60 seconds/ 120 seconds/ 180 seconds/ 240 seconds/ 300 seconds/ 360 seconds/ 420 seconds/ 480 seconds/ 540 seconds	60 seconds
07 Key Response Time Select the key response time. Normal/ 0.5 seconds/ 1 seconds/ 2 seconds/ 3 seconds	Normal
08 Change User Password Change a user password previously registered for user authentication.	- - -

Setting Item/Description	Default
09 Shortcut Key Register	
01 Copy Application Register Select the functions for shortcut keys provided under [Application] on the Copy Screen. Up to four keys available. Insert Sheet, Chapters, Combine Originals, Booklet, Insert Image, Book Copy, Program Job, No Image Area Erase, Neg-/Positive Reverse, Image Repeat, Frame Center Erase, Image Centering, All-Image Area, Page Margin, Stamp/Overlay	-
02 Copy Output Setting Register Select the functions for shortcut keys provided under [Output Setting] on the Copy Screen. Up to four keys are available. Fold, Multi Half Fold, Multi Tri-Fold, Fold & Staple, Staple, Hole-Punch, Offset-Sort, Sort, Offset-Group, Group, Perfect Bind	-
03 Function Key Register Set the function keys provided at the bottom of the Copy Screen. Up to five keys are available. 5 entries	-
04 Scan Application Register Select the functions for shortcut keys provided under [Application] on the Scan Screen. Up to four keys are available. Book Copy, No Image Area Erase, Neg-/Positive Reverse, Frame Center Erase, All-Image Area, Stamp/Overlay	-
02 Function Setting	
01 Feed Tray Setting	
01 Feed Tray Auto Selection Select whether or not to activate ATS for each tray, and specify the priority of the detection when ATS functions. ATS/ APS Switch: Tray 1 to Tray 8 Tray Priority	ATS for each tray: Off Tray Priority: Tray4 - Tray 3 - Tray 5 - Tray 7 - Tray 6 - Tray 8 - Tray 1 - Tray 2
02 ATS Permit Set ATS on/off.	Off
03 ATS Setting Select whether to keep up feeding from the current tray selected by ATS, or to return to the tray used till it becomes empty, when that tray is supplied with paper. Keep up/ Non Keep up	Non Keep up
04 PFU Preliminary Dry Setting Select whether or not to wait for feeding during the preliminary dry setting in PFU. On/ Off	Off
05 Auto Paper Type Specify the paper conditions available in ATS. Paper Type/ Weight/ Colored Paper/ Hole-Punch	- - -

Setting Item/Description	Default
02 Individual Function Change Setting	
Page Margin Decimal Point Select whether or not to use a decimal point to enter an image shift amount. Decimal On/ Decimal Off	Decimal Off
Page Margin Input Data Hold Select whether or not to hold the shift value specified the last time. Hold/ Not Hold	Not Hold
Printer Prohibit Timer Select the time interval during which printing via PC is prohibited after the last operation of the touch keys. Off/ 15 seconds/ 30 seconds/ 60 seconds/ 90 seconds	Off
Needless Tab Paper Exit Select whether or not to discharge the oddments of tabbed sheets automatically. On/ Off	On
Auto Image Shift (Tab Print) Select whether or not to print the standard size original having tab part image printed on the right edge properly onto tabbed copy paper by shifting the scanned image 12.5 mm to the right side. On/ Off	Off
Dash Length (Stamp Page) Select the length of the dash to be used in a style of Page Numbering of Stamp. Long/Short	Long
Dark Tone Control Select whether or not, and how to control the dark tone image. Off/Quality/Performance	Quality
Icon Display for Dark Tone Select whether or not to display the Dark Tone icon. On/ Off	Off
HDD Combi. Individual Output Select whether or not to output combined files with Staple and Z-Fold modes retained. On/ Off	Off
Mode Hold After Scanner Upload Select whether or not to retain the mode after scanned data is uploaded. Hold/ Not Hold	Not Hold
Copy Continuation Reserve Select whether or not to allow the continuous operation to reserve copying jobs. On/ Off	Off
Scanner Continuation Reserve Select whether or not to allow the continuous operation to reserve scanning jobs. On/ Off	Off

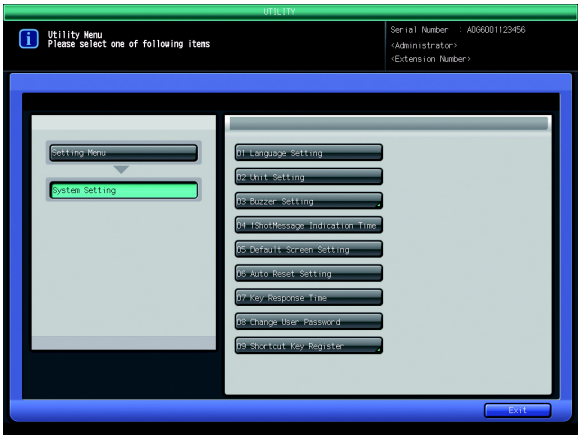
Setting Item/Description	Default
Box Continuation Store Select whether or not to allow the continuous operation for box storing jobs. On/ Off	Off
03 Curl Reform Direction Select the curl reform direction for the paper fed to the decurler unit in order to prevent paper jam, when it tends to occur in finishing options. Off/ Upper/ Lower	Off
04 Skew Detection Threshold Select the threshold of paper skew to be detected for stopping the machine during a copying/printing job. 1.0%/ 0.5%/ No Detection	1.0%
05 Lead Edge Image Erase Select the amount of image erase from the lead edge of the sheet in printing. Standard Size Paper: Non Erase/ Erase 3 mm From Lead Edge Wide/Custom Size Paper: Non Erase/ Erase 3 mm From Lead Edge	Standard Size Paper: Erase 3 mm From Lead Edge Wide/Custom Size Paper: Non Erase
06 Density Setting	
01 Density by Original Type Select the default density level for each original type.	Text/Photo:+3, Dot Matrix:+2, Photo:+3, Text:+3
02 Preset Density Setting Preset the density level to be frequently used.	Preset Density 1: lightest Preset Density 2: darkest
03 Photo Mode Density Selection Select the density level determined by AES when the Photo mode is selected. Lighter/Standard/Darker	Standard
04 Image Density Selection Set the image density lighter or the maximum dark level darker, without degrading the image quality. Darker +1/Standard/ Lighter -1 to -5	+1
07 User Preset Zoom Setting Preset the magnification ratio to be frequently used.	User Preset Zoom 1: 4.000 User Preset Zoom 2: 2.000 User Preset Zoom 3: 0.500
03 Copy Setting	
01 Reset Setting	
01 Initial Setting Select the initial setting to be resumed when the machine is reset. Current Setting/ Factory Default	Factory Default

Setting Item/Description	Default
02 Reset Function Setting	
AUTO RESET Key Setting Select the screen type to be displayed when the [Reset] key is pressed. The Full Auto designates the factory default, and the Initial Setting is that specified in “01 Initial Setting”. Full Auto/ Initial Setting	Full Auto
Each Reset Setting This setting is enabled when [Initial Setting] is selected in “AUTO RESET Key Setting”. Set the copying conditions reset to either Mode Memory 30 or Copy Initial Setting. Initialize Set/ Mode Memory (30)	Initialize Set
Finisher Mode when Full Auto Select the output mode when Full Auto is resumed with the [Reset] key pressed. Offset Sort/ Offset Group/ Sort/ Group/ Staple/ Fold & Staple/ Half Fold/ Face Up/ Face Down	Offset Sort
03 Initial by Key Counter Insert Select whether or not to reset the copy conditions to the initial setting when the key counter and copy card are inserted.	On
02 Individual Function Change Setting	
Auto Select of Booklet Copy Set the machine to automatically select the Booklet mode when Fold & Staple or Multi Half Fold mode is selected. Auto Select/ Manual Select	Auto Select
Original Glass AMS Set the machine to detect the size of the original and select an appropriate magnification ratio to correspond to the selected paper size.	On
Auto Zoom (ADF) Set the machine to automatically select an appropriate magnification ratio when detecting the original size loaded in the ADF.	On
Orig. Glass Auto Size Select Set the machine to automatically select the same size of copy paper as the original placed on the original glass.	On
ADF Auto Size Select Set the machine to automatically select the same size of copy paper as the original loaded in the ADF.	On
Select Tray when APS Cancel Specify the tray to be automatically selected when APS is released. APS Select Tray/ Tray 1/ Tray 2/ Tray 3/ Tray 4/ Tray 5/ Tray 6/ Tray 7/ Tray 8	APS Select Tray

Setting Item/Description	Default
Org./Out Bind Direction Set Set the machine to conform the bind direction of printed sets to that of the original specified in Original Setting.	On
Staple Auto Reset Set the machine to automatically select/deselect the Staple mode when the [Reset] key is pressed.	Off
Original Bind Direction Select whether or not to reset the Direction setting made on the Original Setting Screen and the Bind Direction setting made on the Output Setting Screen after completion of each job. Do Not Release/Release	Release
Status Hold When Auto Reset Select whether or not to reset the Simplex/Duplex setting when Auto Reset functions. Hold/ Not Hold	Not Hold
04 Scan Setting	
01 Default Destination Setting Select the default destination to be displayed on the Scanner Screen. E-mail/HDD/FTP/SMB	E-mail
02 Scan Initial Setting Specify the initial setting in scanning mode.	-
03 Individual Function Change Setting	
File Form Setting (E-mail) Select the default file form when sending data by E-mail. Package PDF/ Division PDF/ Package TIFF/ Division TIFF/ Package XPS/ Division XPS	Package PDF
File Form Setting (HDD) Select the default file form when saving data on HDD. Package PDF/ Division PDF/ Package TIFF/ Division TIFF/ Package XPS/ Division XPS	Package PDF
File Form Setting (FTP) Select the default file form when transmitting data in FTP. Package PDF/ Division PDF/ Package TIFF/ Division TIFF/ Package XPS/ Division XPS	Package PDF
File Form Setting (SMB) Select the default file form when transmitting data in SMB. Package PDF/ Division PDF/ Package TIFF/ Division TIFF/ Package XPS/ Division XPS	Package PDF
05 Touch Panel Adjust	
Check that the touch sensor of the touch panel has been dislocated if touching a key on the touch panel does not make any response.	- - -
06 Administrator Setting	
See section 6.	- - -

5.2 01 System Setting

System Setting Menu Screen



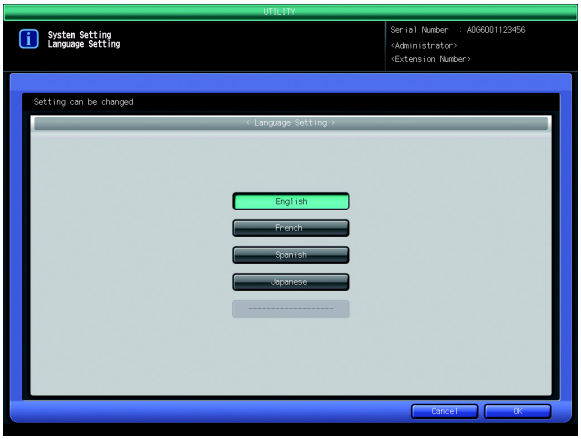
5.2.1 01 Language Setting

Select the language used in the touch panel.
The initial setting is English.

Procedure

1 Touch [01 System Setting] on the Utility Menu Screen, then touch [01 Language Setting].

2 Select the desired language key to highlight it.



3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The System Setting Screen will be restored.

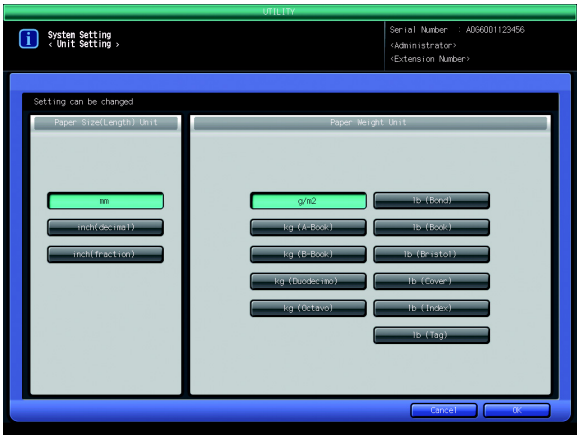
5.2.2 02 Unit Setting

Select the unit of measurement for paper size to be displayed on the touch panel.

Procedure

1 Touch [01 System Setting] on the Utility Menu Screen, then touch [02 Unit Setting].

2 Select the desired paper size unit key and paper weight unit key to highlight it.



3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

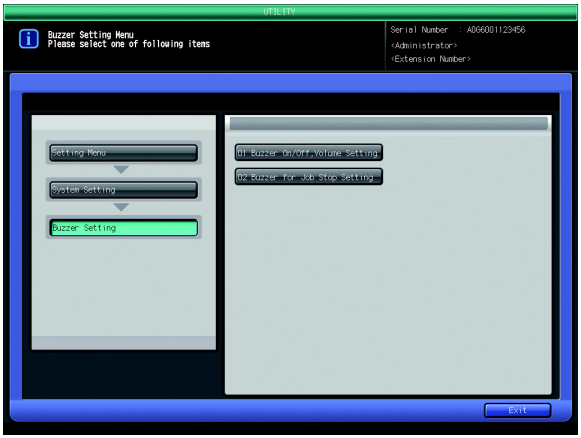
The System Setting Screen will be restored.

5.2.3 03 Buzzer Setting - 01 Buzzer On/Off, Volume Setting

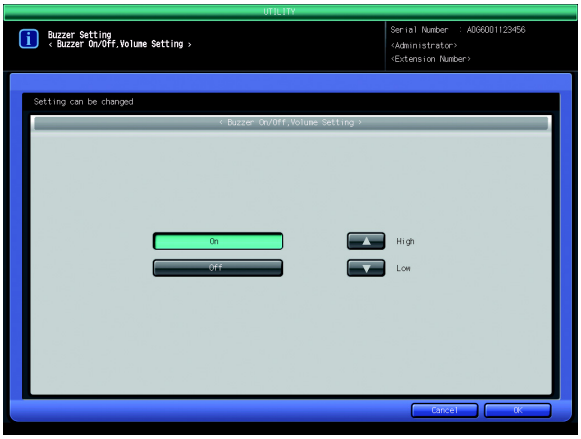
Select whether or not to sound the buzzer as a screen key is touched, and also select the buzzer volume.

Procedure

1 Touch [01 System Setting] on the Utility Menu Screen, then touch [03 Buzzer Setting] and [01 Buzzer On/Off, Volume Setting] in sequence.



2 Touch [On] to highlight it.



- To adjust the buzzer volume, touch [▼] and [▲] to adjust it to the desired volume of the touch keys.
- To turn off the buzzer, touch [Off] to highlight it.

3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Buzzer Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

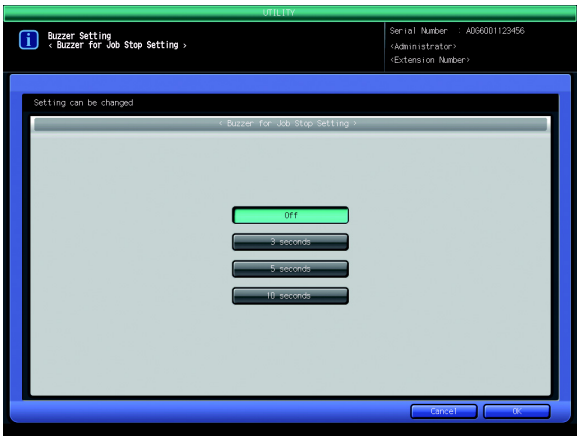
5.2.4 03 Buzzer Setting - 02 Buzzer for Job Stop Setting

Select the duration of the buzzer to beep when the machine stops due to the lack of paper or mishandled paper.

Procedure

1 Touch [01 System Setting] on the Utility Menu Screen, then touch [03 Buzzer Setting] and [02 Buzzer for Job Stop Setting] in sequence.

2 Touch the desired time key to highlight it.



3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Buzzer Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

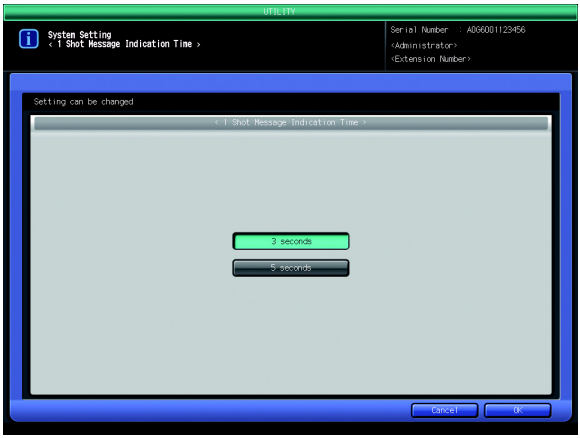
5.2.5 04 1 Shot Message Indication Time

Select the timespan to display a shot message in the message area of the touch panel

Procedure

1 Touch [01 System Setting] on the Utility Menu Screen, then touch [04 1 Shot Message Indication Time].

2 Touch [3 seconds] or [5 seconds] to highlight it.



3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The System Setting Screen will be restored.

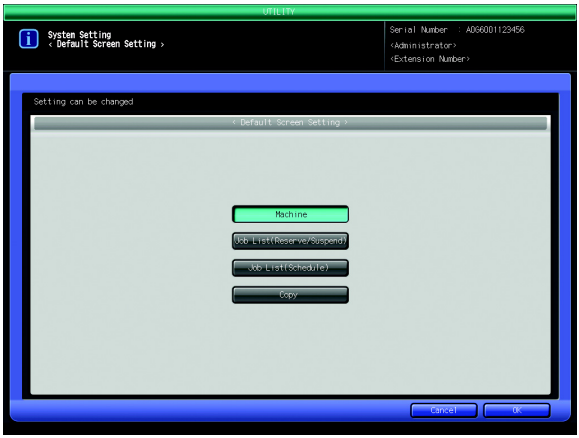
5.2.6 05 Default Screen Setting

Select the initial screen to be displayed when the power switch is turned on or Auto Reset is activated.

Procedure

1 Touch [01 System Setting] on the Utility Menu Screen, then touch [05 Default Screen Setting].

2 Touch the desired initial screen to highlight it.



3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The System Setting Screen will be restored.

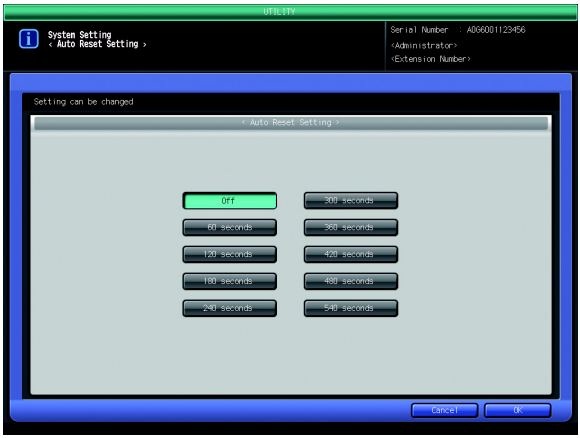
5.2.7 06 Auto Reset Setting

Select the reset interval starting from the completion of a copy job until the machine returns to the initial condition without any key operated on the touch panel or on the control panel.

Procedure

1 Touch [01 System Setting] on the Utility Menu Screen, then touch [06 Auto Reset Setting].

2 Touch the desired time key to highlight it.



3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The System Setting Screen will be restored.

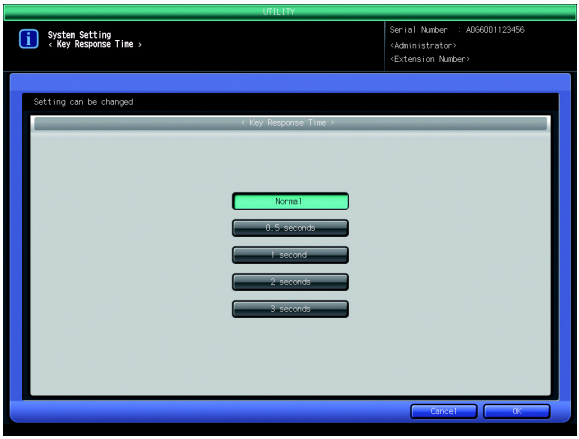
5.2.8 07 Key Response Time

Select the time between the touch of the key and the machine response.

Procedure

1 Touch [01 System Setting] on the Utility Menu Screen, then touch [07 Key Response Time].

2 Touch the desired time key to highlight it.



3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The System Setting Screen will be restored.

5.2.9 08 Change User Password

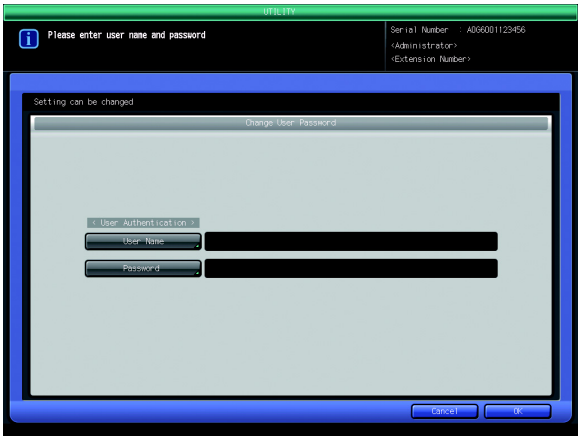
Change a user password previously registered for user authentication.
The changed password is reflected to the user authentication setting.

Procedure

1 Touch [01 System Setting] on the Utility Menu Screen, then touch [08 Change User Password].

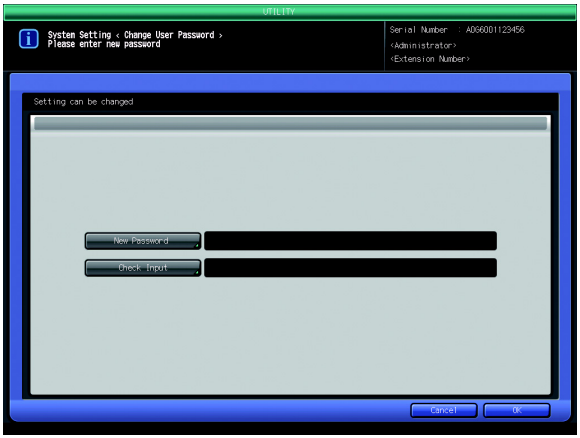
2 Enter the user name and current password, then touch [OK].

– Touch [User Name] to display the touch screen keyboard, then enter the user name.
Similarly, touch [Password] to enter the current password.
Touch [OK] to continue.



3 Enter a new user password.

– Touch [New Password] to enter the new password.
For confirmation, enter the new password also in the next row.



4 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The System Setting Screen will be restored.

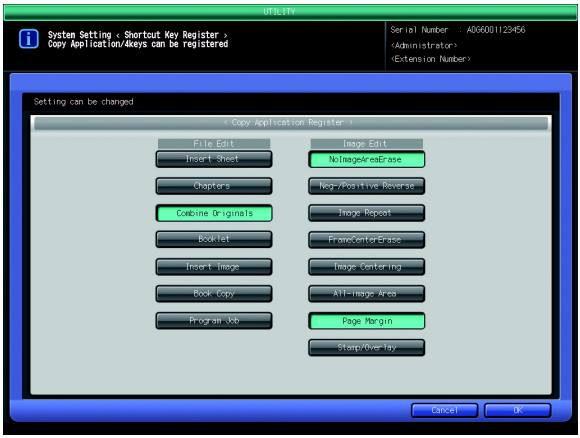
5.2.10 09 Shortcut Key Register - 01 Copy Application Register

Select the application functions for shortcut keys to be displayed under [Application] on the Copy Screen. Up to four keys are available.

Procedure

1 Touch [01 System Setting] on the Utility Menu Screen, then touch [09 Shortcut Key Register] and [01 Copy Application Register] in sequence.

2 Touch the desired keys to highlight them. Up to four functions can be selected.



3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Shortcut Key Register Menu Screen will be restored.

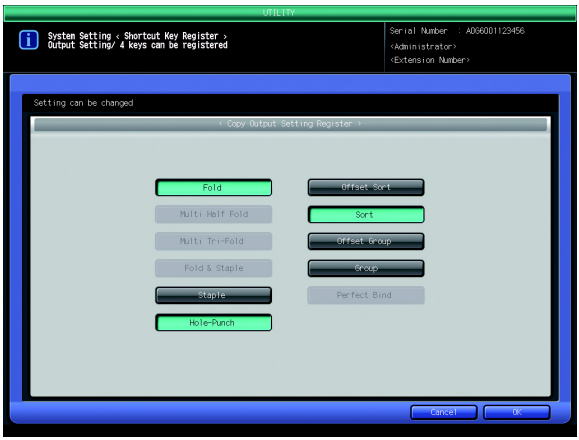
5.2.11 09 Shortcut Key Register - 02 Copy Output Setting Register

Select the output functions for shortcut keys to be displayed under [Output Setting] on the Copy Screen. Up to four keys are available.

Procedure

1 Touch [01 System Setting] on the Utility Menu Screen, then touch [09 Shortcut Key Register] and [02 Copy Output Setting Register] in sequence.

2 Touch the desired keys to highlight them. Up to four functions can be selected.



3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Shortcut Key Register Menu Screen will be restored.

5.2.12 09 Shortcut Key Register - 03 Function Key Register

Assign up to five job settings previously stored using Mode Memory. The registered settings can be recalled by a single touch of the corresponding function key.

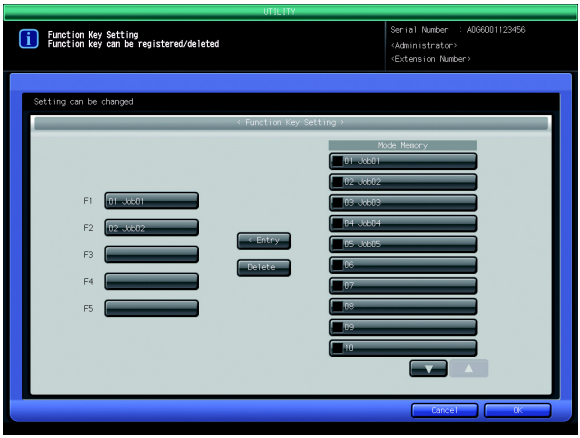
Detail

The job setting to be registered to a function key should firstly be registered using Mode Memory. For storing job settings using Mode Memory, see the User's Guide - Copier.

Procedure

1 Touch [01 System Setting] on the Utility Menu Screen, then touch [09 Shortcut Key Register] and [03 Function Key Register] in sequence.

2 On the left side of the Function Key Setting Screen, touch and highlight the function key (F1 to F5) to be registered or deleted.



3 Register or delete Mode Memory job settings.

– To register a job setting:
(1) Touch [▼] and [▲] to display the desired Mode Memory entry.
(2) Touch the Mode Memory entry key to be registered on the selected function key.
(3) Touch [<Entry]. If the function key selected in step 2 has already been used for another Mode Memory job setting, a popup menu appears to confirm that the key will be overwritten. Touch [Yes].

– To delete a job setting:
(1) Touch [Delete].
(2) A popup menu appears to confirm that the Mode Memory job setting will be deleted from the selected function key. Touch [Yes] to delete, or touch [No] to cancel.

4 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Shortcut Key Register Menu Screen will be restored.

Note
Even though deleted from the function key, the job setting still remains in Mode Memory.

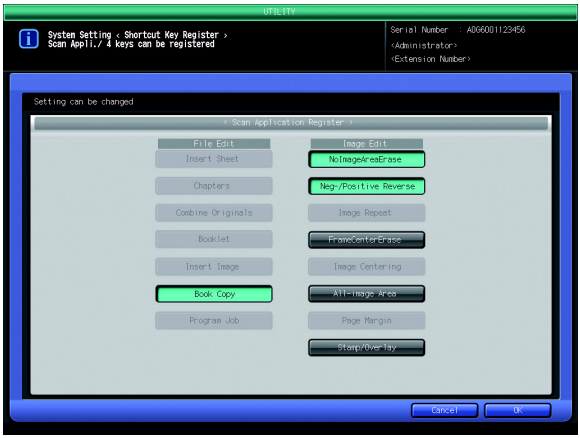
5.2.13 09 Shortcut Key Register- 04 Scan Application Register

Select the shortcut keys to display on the [Application] of the Scan Screen. The key is able to be set up to four.

Procedure

1 Touch [01 System Setting] on the Utility Menu Screen, then touch [09 Shortcut Key Register] and [04 Scan Application Register] in sequence.

2 Touch the desired keys to highlight them. It can be selected until 4 items.

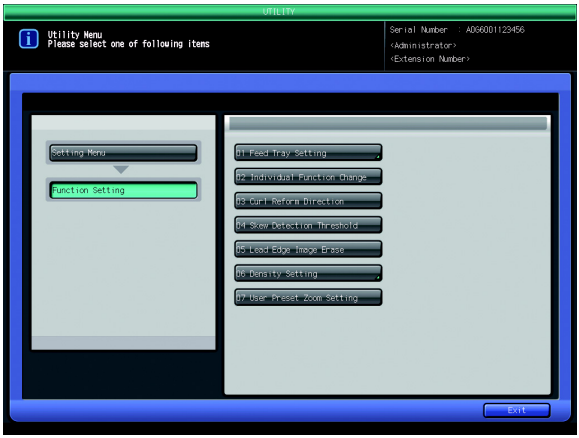


3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Shortcut Key Register Menu Screen will be restored.

5.3 02 Function Setting

Function Setting Menu Screen



5.3.1 01 Feed Tray Setting - 01 Feed Tray Auto Selection

Select the tray to be detected when ATS (Auto Tray Switching) functions, and also specify the priority of the detection.

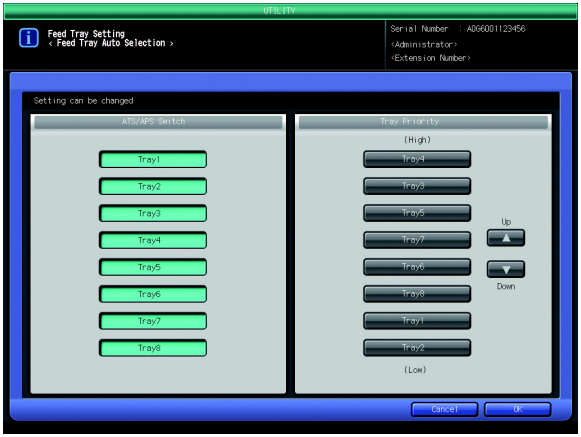
Procedure

1 Touch [02 Function Setting] on the Utility Menu Screen, then touch [01 Feed Tray Setting] and [01 Feed Tray Auto Selection] in sequence.

2 Select the tray to be detected.

– Touch and highlight the desired tray key under ATS/APS Switch. Selected trays will automatically be detected when ATS functions, while deselected trays will not be detected even though ATS is activated.

When selected, the tray will appear under Tray Priority as a tray key.



3 Touch and highlight the desired tray key under Tray Priority, then change its priority by touching [▼] or [▲].

4 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Feed Tray Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

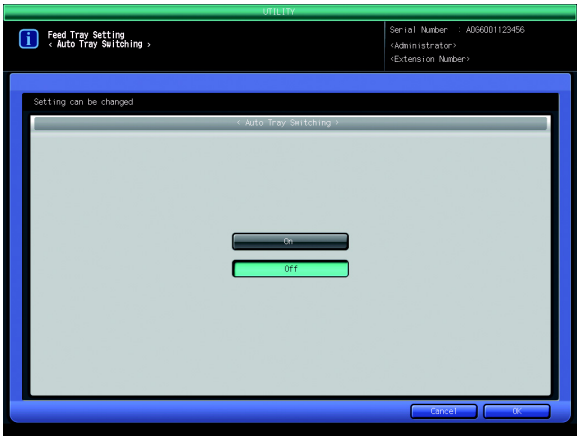
5.3.2 01 Feed Tray Setting - 02 ATS Permit

Set ATS (Automatic Tray Selection) On or Off.

Procedure

1 Touch [02 Function Setting] on the Utility Menu Screen, then touch [01 Feed Tray Setting] and [02 ATS Permit] in sequence.

2 Select [On] to use ATS, or [Off] to deactivate the function.



3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Feed Tray Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

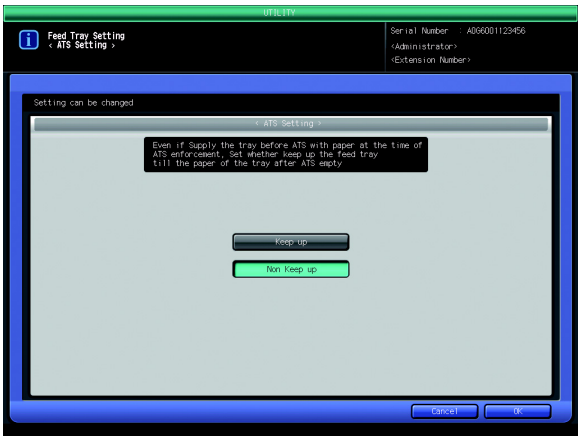
5.3.3 01 Feed Tray Setting - 03 ATS Setting

Select whether to keep up feeding from the current tray selected by ATS, or to return to the tray used till it becomes empty, when that tray is supplied with paper.

Procedure

1 Touch [02 Function Setting] on the Utility Menu Screen, then touch [01 Feed Tray Setting] and [03 ATS Setting] in sequence.

2 Select [Keep up] to use ATS setting, or [Non Keep up] to deactivate the function.



3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Feed Tray Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

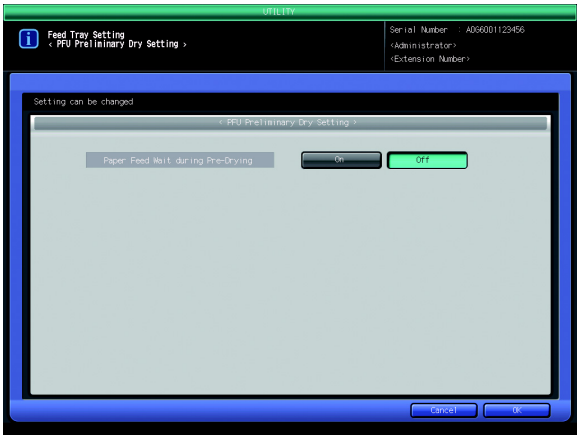
5.3.4 01 Feed Tray Setting - 04 PFU Preliminary Dry Setting

Select whether or not to wait for feeding during the preliminary dry setting in PFU.

Procedure

1 Touch [02 Function Setting] on the Utility Menu Screen, then touch [01 Feed Tray Setting] and [04 PFU Preliminary Dry Setting] in sequence.

2 Select [On] to wait for feeding during PFU preliminary dry setting, or [Off] to deactivate the function.



3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Feed Tray Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

5.3.5 01 Feed Tray Setting - 05 Auto Paper Type

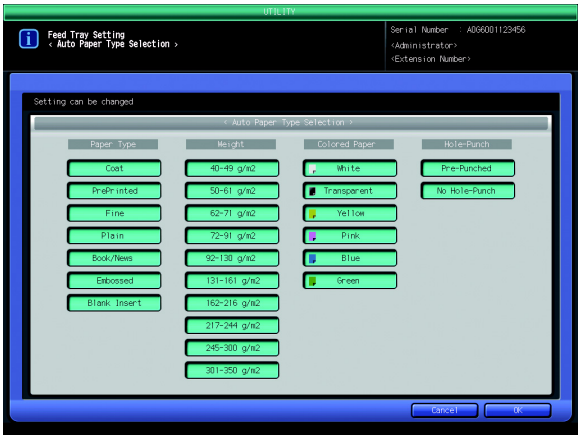
Select the paper conditions of the tray to be automatically selected when ATS functions. When the tray automatically selected by ATS has another paper type than specified in this setting, the machine indicates that the paper type is unmatched.

Procedure

1 Touch [02 Function Setting] on the Utility Menu Screen, then touch [01 Feed Tray Setting] and [05 Auto Paper Type] in sequence.

2 Select the paper conditions of the tray to be automatically selected when ATS functions.

– Touch and highlight the desired condition keys under Paper Type, Weight, Colored Paper, and Hole-Punch. You may choose more than one key for each item.



3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Feed Tray Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

5.3.6 02 Individual Function Change Setting

Use this function to make the following eight settings.

- Page Margin Decimal Point
  Select whether or not to use a decimal point to enter an image shift amount.
- Page Margin Input Data Hold
  Select whether or not to hold the shift value specified the last time.
- Printer Prohibit Timer
  Select the time interval during which printing via PC is prohibited after the last operation of the touch keys.
- Needless Tab Paper Exit
  Select whether or not to discharge the oddments of tabbed sheets automatically.
- Auto Image Shift (Tab Print)
  Select whether or not to print the standard size original having tab part image printed on the right edge properly onto tabbed copy paper by shifting the scanned image 12.5 mm to the right side.
- Dash Length (Stamp Page)
  Select the length of the dash to be used in a style of Page No. function of Stamp.
- Dark Tone Control
  Select whether or not, and how to control the dark tone image.
- Icon Display for Dark Tone
  Select whether or not to display the Dark Tone icon.
- HDD Combi. Individual Output
  Select whether or not to output combined files with Staple and Z-Fold modes retained.
- Mode Hold After Scanner Upload
  Select whether or not to retain the mode after scanned data is uploaded.
- Copy Continuation Reserve
  Select whether or not to allow the continuous operation to reserve copying jobs.
- Scanner Continuation Reserve
  Select whether or not to allow the continuous operation to reserve scanning jobs.
- Box Continuation Store
  Select whether or not to allow the continuous operation for box storing jobs.

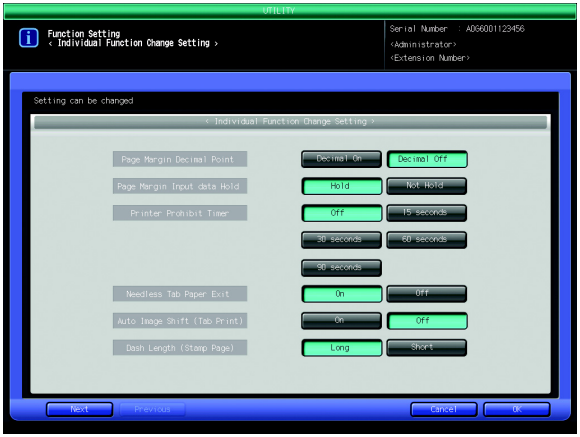
Procedure

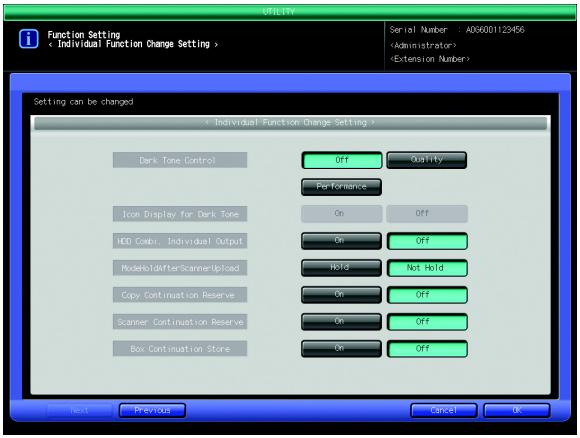
1 Touch [02 Function Setting] on the Utility Menu Screen, then touch [02 Individual Function Change].

2 Make the desired setting on the screen.

- Touch [Decimal On] or [Decimal Off] to specify image shift in decimal point or not.
- Touch [Hold] or [Not Hold] to specify whether or not to retain the input data.
- Select the desired interval time key on the right side of Printer Prohibit Timer to set the timer.
- Touch [On] or [Off] to select whether or not to discharge the oddments of tabbed sheets automatically.
- Touch [On] or [Off] for Auto Image Shift (Tab Print) to specify whether or not to use the function.
- Touch [Long] or [Short] for Dash Length (Stamp Page) to specify the length of the dash.
- Touch [Off], [Quality], or [Performance] to specify the Dark Tone Control function.
- Touch [On] or [Off] to specify whether or not to display the Dark Tone icon.
- Touch [On] or [Off] to specify whether or not to output combined files with Staple and Z-Fold modes retained.
- Touch [Hold] or [Not Hold] to specify whether or not to retain the mode.
- Touch [On] or [Off] for each of Copy Continuation Reserve to specify whether or not to retain the mode.
- Touch [On] or [Performance] to select whether or not to operate the scan reserve continuously.

– Touch [On] or [Performance] to select whether or not to operate the box store continuously.





3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Function Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

5.3.7 03 Curl Reform Direction

Select the curl reform direction for the paper fed to the decurler unit in order to prevent paper jam, when it tends to occur in finishing options.

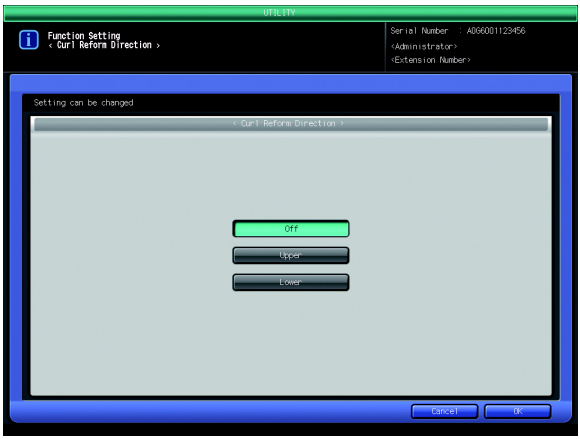
Detail

This setting is effective for paper of the weight 65 lb or less. For paper of the weight 66 lb or more, it will not function even if specified.

Procedure

1 Touch [02 Function Setting] on the Utility Menu Screen, then touch [03 Curl Reform Direction].

2 Touch to select [Upper] or [Lower]. Touch [Off] if you do not use the function.



3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Function Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

5.3.8 04 Skew Detection Threshold

Use this function to check the paper skew for each sheet fed through, and to stop the machine when detected skew data reaches the specified threshold.

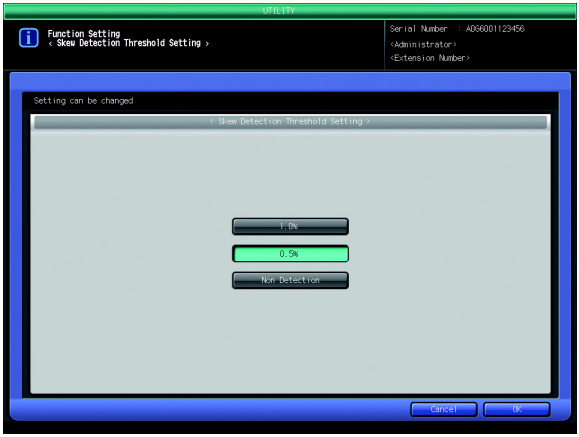
Detail

The skew detection threshold is for normal copying job to stop the machine.

Procedure

1 Touch [02 Function Setting] on the Utility Menu Screen, then touch [04 Skew Detection Threshold].

2 Select the desired threshold for paper skew.



3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Function Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

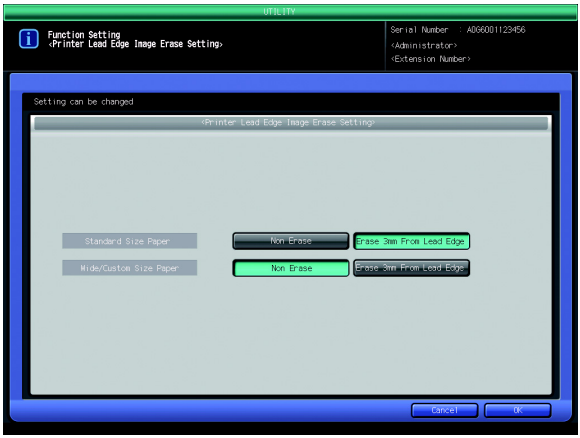
5.3.9 05 Lead Edge Image Erase

Select the amount of image erase from the edge of the sheet for printing.

Procedure

1 Touch [02 Function Setting] on the Utility Menu Screen, then touch [05 Lead Edge Image Erase].

2 Touch the desired key to select each amount of image erase for standard size paper and wide/custom size paper.



3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

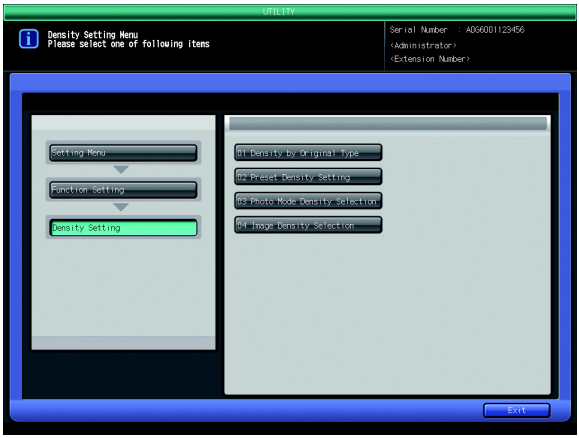
The Function Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

5.3.10 06 Density Setting - 01 Density by Original Type

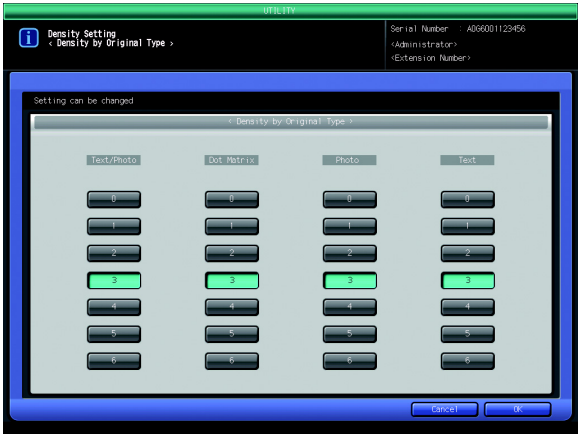
Select the desired copy density level manually from nine levels on the Copy Screen, and also shift each of nine density levels to three levels lighter or three levels darker.
This setting can be applied to each Original Type mode: Text/Photo, Dot Matrix, Photo, and Text.

Procedure

1 Touch [02 Function Setting] on the Utility Menu Screen, then touch [06 Density Setting] and [01 Density by Original Type] in sequence.



2 Touch the desired numeric key (from 0 to 6) for each mode to specify the desired shift amount.



3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Density Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

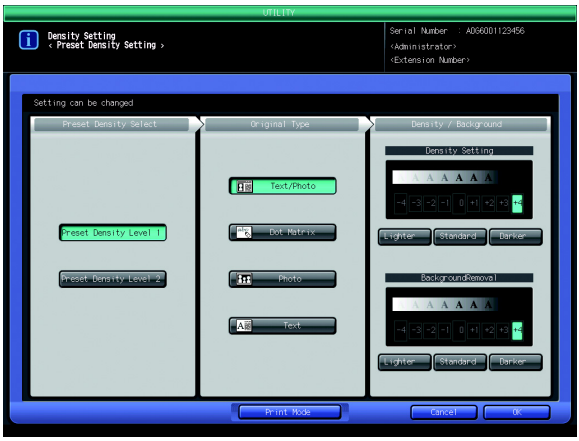
5.3.11 06 Density Setting - 02 Preset Density Setting

Set the desired copy density level and background removal level for each original type (Text/Photo, Dot Matrix, Photo, and Text). The preset density levels can be recalled from the Quality Adjustment Screen, which is to be accessed from the Copy Screen.

Procedure

1 Touch [02 Function Setting] on the Utility Menu Screen, then touch [06 Density Setting] and [02 Preset Density Setting] in sequence.

2 Touch [Preset Density Level 1] or [Preset Density Level 2] to highlight it.



3 Select the desired key of the Original setting, then specify the desired level of Density Setting and Background Removal for each original type.

– To output the sample sheet of the specified density level, touch [Print Mode]. Place original on the original glass, then press [Start] on the control panel. Touch [Close].

4 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Density Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

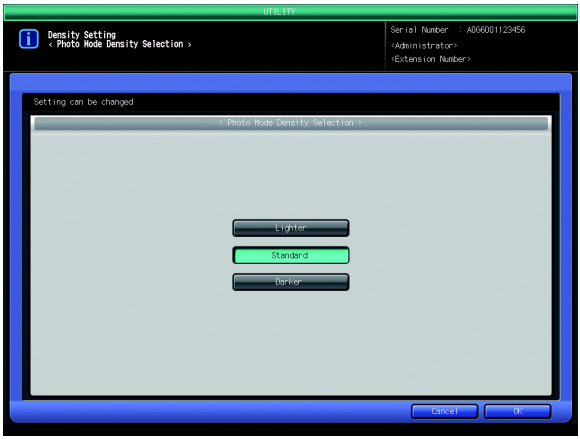
5.3.12 06 Density Setting - 03 Photo Mode Density Selection

Set the density level of Photo mode to be specified in AES.

Procedure

1 Touch [02 Function Setting] on the Utility Menu Screen, then touch [06 Density Setting] and [03 Photo Mode Density Selection] in sequence.

2 Select the desired density key from [Lighter], [Standard] and [Darker].



3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Density Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

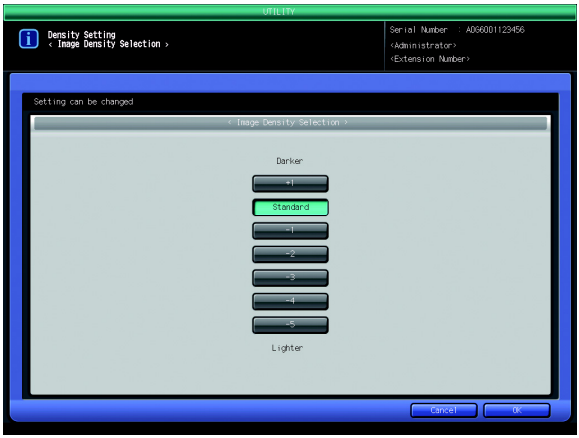
5.3.13 06 Density Setting - 04 Image Density Selection

Change the setting range of density available on the Copy Screen.
Use this function to adjust the image density in shadow part (maximum dark) of the original to darker or lighter, as in offset printing. This is useful to make texts lighter in order to ease the eye strain, as often used in printing materials such as books.

Procedure

1 Touch [02 Function Setting] on the Utility Menu Screen, then touch [06 Density Setting] and [04 Image Density Selection] in sequence.

2 Touch the desired density key to highlight it.



3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Density Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

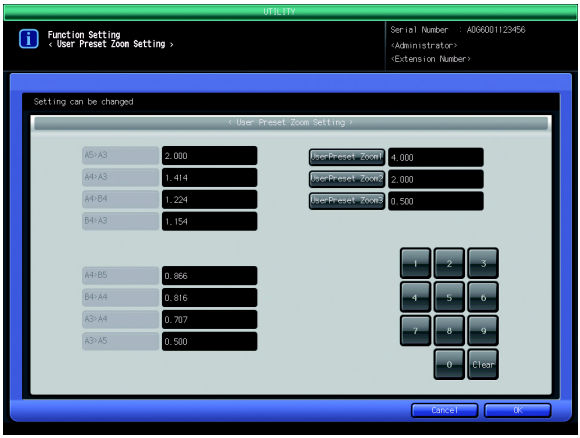
5.3.14 07 User Preset Zoom Setting

Set three types of the preset zoom available from the Zoom Screen.
The initial setting for User Preset Zoom 1 is 4.000, User Preset Zoom 2 is 2.000, and User Preset Zoom 3 is 0.500.

Procedure

1 Touch [02 Function Setting] on the Utility Menu Screen, then touch [07 User Preset Zoom Setting].

2 Touch the desired preset key (from 1 to 3) to highlight it, then use the touch panel keypad to enter the desired zoom ratio and display it on the right side of the key.

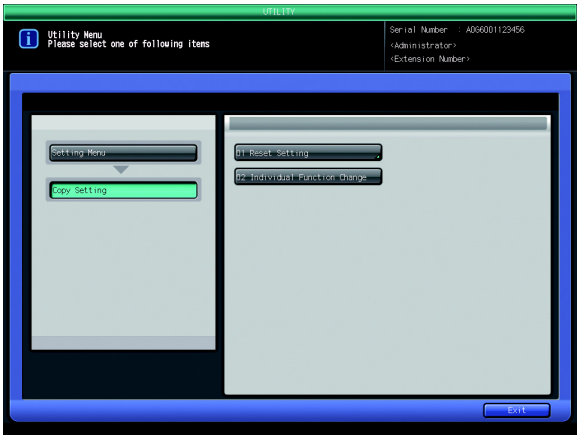


3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Function Setting Screen will be restored.

5.4 03 Copy Setting

Copy Setting Menu Screen



5.4.1 01 Reset Setting - 01 Initial Setting

Change copy conditions to be restored when the machine is reset.

The machine will be reset:
- when the power is turned on
- when Auto Reset functions
- when Power Save functions
- when copying becomes available by entering the password while user authentication/ account track function is activated
- when a key counter or a copy card is inserted
- when [Reset] is pressed on the control panel

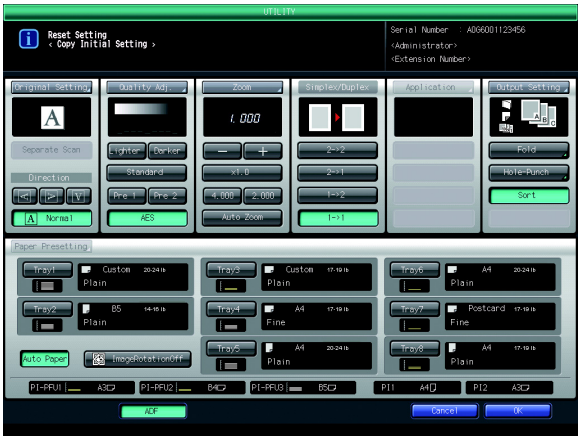
Besides the factory default setting (Full Auto), you may set the desired copy conditions as the initial setting.

Full Auto copy conditions
- Original Setting: Standard
- Quality Adjustment: Standard
- AES: On
- Zoom: 1.000
- Output Setting: To be specified in “02 Reset Function Setting”
- Simplex/Duplex: 1->1
- Auto Paper: On
- Image Rotation: On
- ADF: On

Procedure

1 Touch [03 Copy Setting] on the Utility Menu Screen, then touch [01 Reset Setting] and [01 Initial Setting] in sequence.

2 Specify the following setting items in initial conditions: Original Setting, Quality Adjustment, Zoom, Simplex/Duplex, Output Setting, Auto Paper Select, Image Rotation Off/On
Touch [ADF] to select the ADF mode as the initial setting.



3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Reset Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

5.4.2 01 Reset Setting - 02 Reset Function Setting

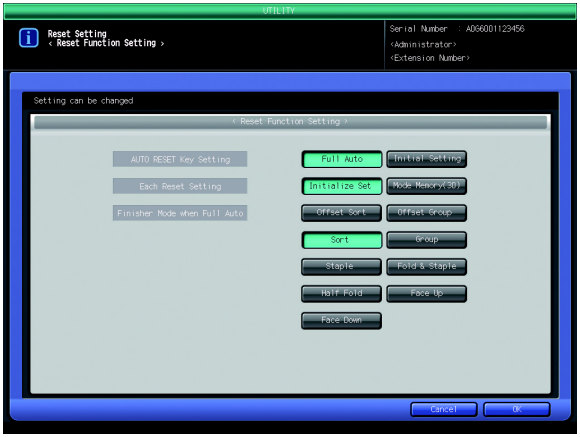
Select the factory default setting (Full Auto) or the initial setting specified in “01 Initial Setting”, for copy conditions to be restored when the machine is reset.
Also, change the output setting of Full Auto as desired.

Procedure

1 Touch [03 Copy Setting] on the Utility Menu Screen, then touch [01 Reset Setting] and [02 Reset Function Setting] in sequence.

2 Select the copy conditions to be restored when the machine is reset.

– Touch [Full Auto] to select to the factory default setting, or touch [Initial Setting] to select the initial setting specified in “01 Initial Setting”.



3 Select the output conditions for Full Auto.

– Touch the desired key on the right side of “Finisher Mode when Full Auto” to highlight it.

4 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Reset Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

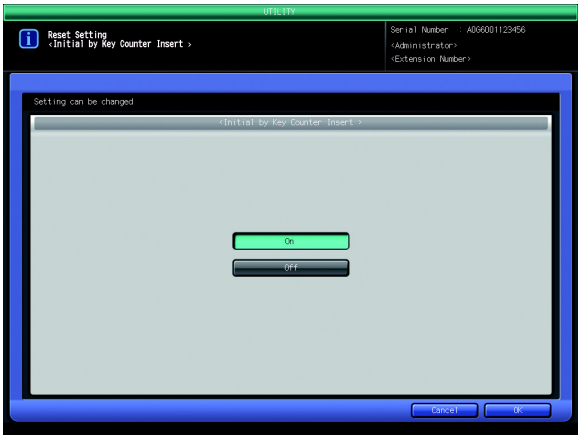
5.4.3 01 Reset Setting - 03 Initial by Key Counter Insert

Select whether or not to reset the machine when the key counter or copy card is inserted.

Procedure

1 Touch [03 Copy Setting] on the Utility Menu Screen, then touch [01 Reset Setting] and [03 Initial by Key Counter Insert] in sequence.

2 Touch [On] to reset the machine, or touch [Off] to retain the current setting when the key counter or copy card is inserted.



3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Reset Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

5.4.4 02 Individual Function Change Setting

The following functions can be specified by switching the selection.

- Auto Select of Booklet Copy
  Automatically set Booklet function in Application when Fold & Staple or Multi Half Fold mode is selected on the machine with Saddle Stitch Unit SD-506 mounted.

- Original Glass AMS
  Activate the Auto Zoom function when scanning the original from the original glass.

- Auto Zoom (ADF)
  Activate the Auto Zoom function when scanning the original from the ADF.

- Orig. Glass Auto Size Select
  Activate the Auto Paper function when scanning the original from the original glass.

- ADF Auto Size Select
  Activate the Auto Paper function when scanning the original from the ADF.

- Select Tray When APS Cancel
  Select the tray to be automatically selected when Auto Paper is released.

- Orig./Out Bind Direction Set
  Set the machine to match the binding direction of printed sets to that of the original.

- Staple Auto Reset
  Automatically cancel the Staple mode after a job is completed with Staple and Sort modes in combination.

- Original Bind Direction
  Select whether to reset or to save the original direction setting made on the Original Setting Screen and the binding direction setting made on the Output Setting Screen after completion of each copying job.

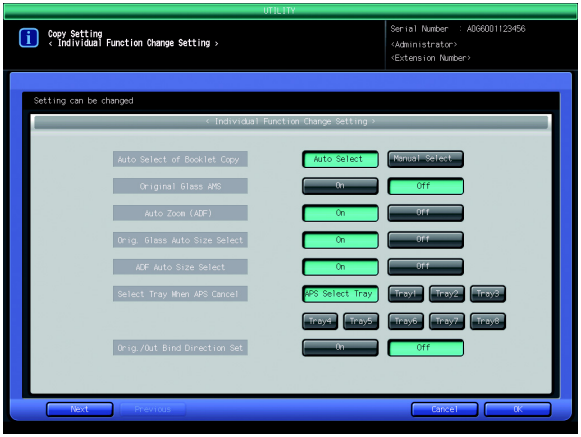
- Status Hold When Auto Reset
  Select whether to reset the ADF mode to the initial setting or to save the previous setting when Auto Reset functions.

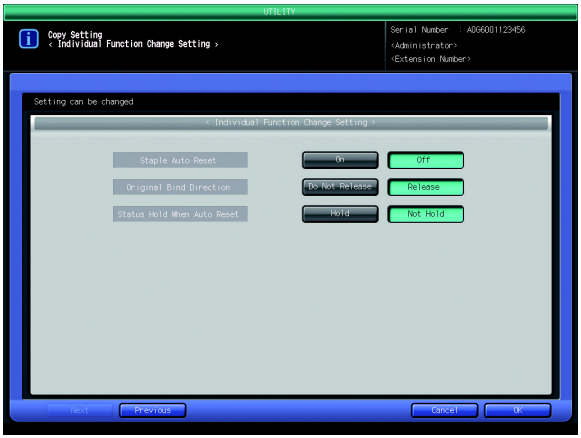
Procedure

1 Touch [03 Copy Setting] on the Utility Menu Screen, then touch [02 Individual Function Change Setting].

2 Select [On], [Off], or touch the desired key to each item on the left side of the screen.

– Two setting screens are provided. Touch [Next] and [Previous] to scroll.



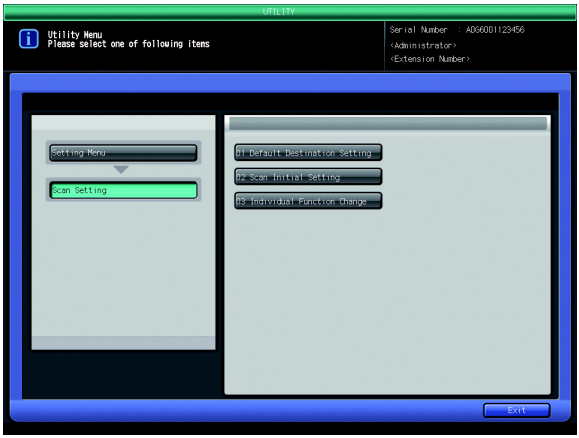


3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Copy Setting Screen will be restored.

5.5 04 Scan Setting

Scan Setting Menu Screen



5.5.1 01 Default Destination Setting

Select the default destination of the scanned image to be displayed on the Scanner Screen.

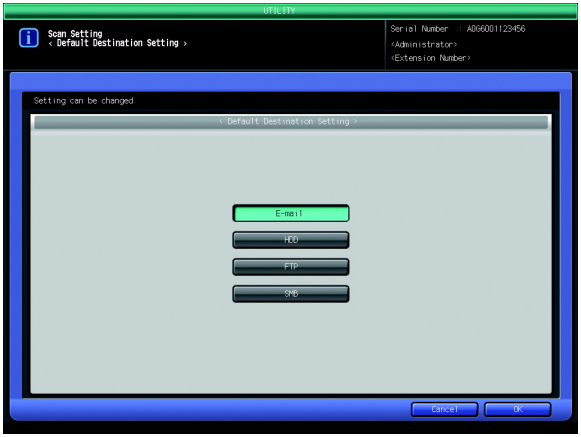
Select one from the following four destinations:

- E-mail (E-mail address)
- HDD (Box No.)
- FTP (FTP server address)
- SMB (Shared folder)

Procedure

1 Touch [04 Scan Setting] on the Utility Menu Screen, then touch [01 Default Destination Setting].

2 Touch the desired key for the destination.



3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Scan Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

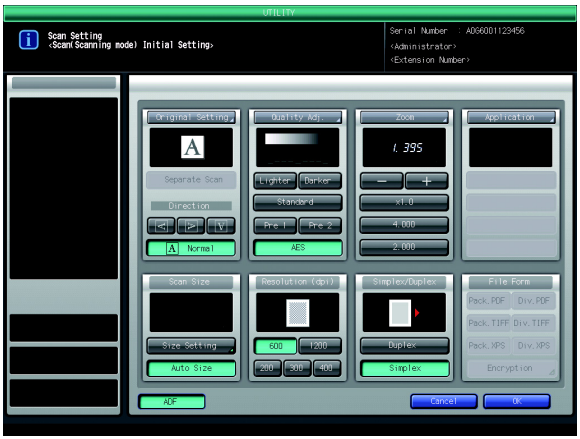
5.5.2 02 Scan Initial Setting

Specify the initial setting in scanning mode.

Procedure

1 Touch [04 Scan Setting] on the Utility Menu Screen, then touch [02 Scan Initial Setting].

2 Specify the following setting items in initial conditions: Original Setting, Quality Adjustment, Zoom, Application, Scan Size Setting, Resolution (dpi), Simplex/Duplex
Touch [ADF] to select the ADF mode as the initial setting.



3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Scan Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

5.5.3 03 Individual Function Change

Select the default settings for the file form and the resolution to be displayed on the Scanner Screen.

- File Form Setting (E-mail)
  Select the data form for transmitting scanned data attached to an e-mail, from Package PDF, Division PDF, Package TIFF, Division TIFF, Package XPS, and Division XPS.

- File Form Setting (HDD)
  Select the data form for saving scanned data to HDD from Package PDF, Division PDF, Package TIFF, Division TIFF, Package XPS, and Division XPS.

- File Form Setting (FTP)
  Select the data form for transmitting scanned data to an FTP server from Package PDF, Division PDF, Package TIFF, Division TIFF, Package XPS, and Division XPS.

- File Form Setting (SMB)
  Select the data form for transmitting scanned data to a public folder from Package PDF, Division PDF, Package TIFF, Division TIFF, Package XPS, and Division XPS.

...

Note

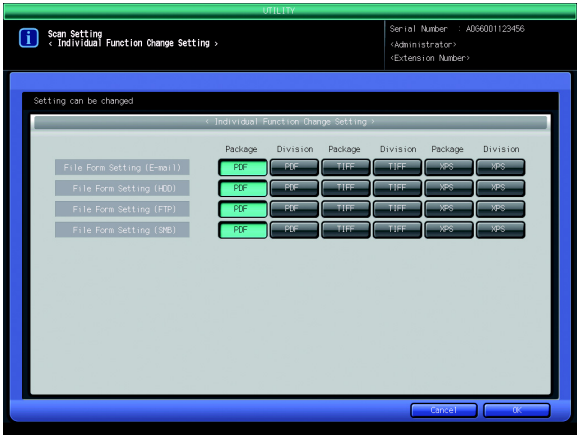
When transmitting simultaneously to multiple destinations, the file form setting cannot be specified individually.

When transmitting simultaneously, the file form setting will be selected in the following priority: E-mail>HDD>FTP>SMB

Procedure

1 Touch [04 Scan Setting] on the Utility Menu Screen, then touch [03 Individual Function Change].

2 Touch the desired key for each item on the left side of the screen.



3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Scan Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

5.6 05 Touch Panel Adjustment

Use this function to check the touch screen and realign the position of the touch sensor that may have shifted.

Note

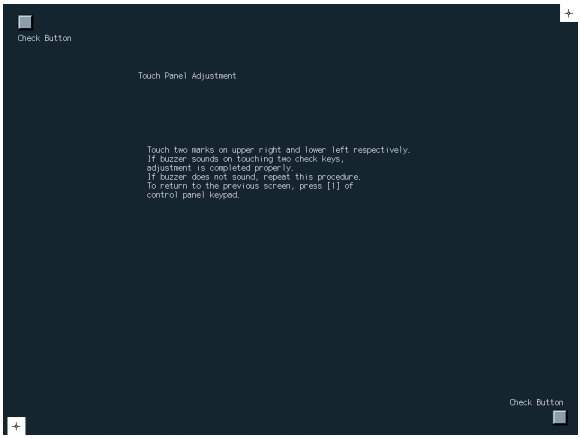
The Touch Panel Adjustment Screen can be displayed on the Utility Menu Screen by pressing [5] of the control panel keypad.

Service can set the machine to disable the [05 Touch Panel Adjustment] key in case of malfunction. If the key is grayed out, press [5] of the control panel keypad to display the Touch Panel Adjustment Screen. Contact your service representative, if desired.

Procedure

1 Touch [05 Touch Panel Adjustment] on the Utility Menu Screen.

2 Touch the [+] symbol at the upper right corner, then lower left corner on the screen. The present coordinates will be displayed in the message area of the screen.



3 Check that the X coordinate and Y coordinate displayed in the first line of the message area fall within the standard value displayed in the second line.

4 Touch each [Check Button] at the upper left and lower right corners on the screen to check that the buzzer tone functions normally.

5 If the coordinates fall out of the range of the standard value in step 3, or the buzzer tone does not sound in step 4, repeat the adjustment procedure from steps 3 to 4 or contact your service representative.

6 Press [1] of the control panel keypad to return to the Utility Menu Screen.

6 Administrator Setting

6 Administrator Setting

6.1 Administrator Setting Outlines

Press the [Utility/Counter] on the control panel to display the Utility Menu Screen.

The Utility Menu Screen includes two types of setting items: user settings and administrator settings. User settings are available to any user, while administrator settings are supposed to be performed by an administrator, requiring a unique password to access the setting menu.

This section describes the setting items in [06 Administrator Setting] on the Utility Menu Screen, and also provides the setting procedure for each.

Note

The administrator settings are initially accessible to the general user. It is recommended to create an administrator who will be the sole person to control the administrator settings. Please contact your service representative to set up your password.

6.1.1 How to access the Administrator Setting Menu Screen

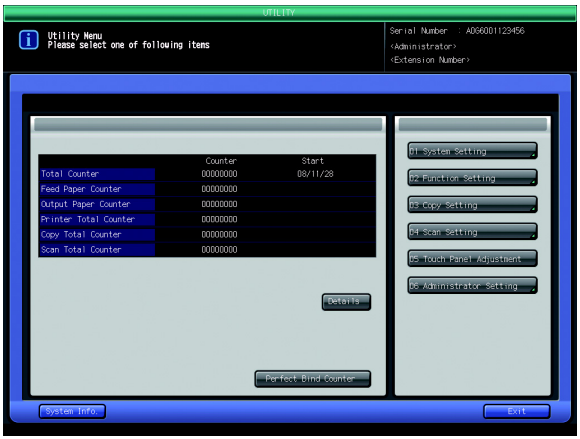
Procedure

1 Press the [Utility/Counter] on the control panel.

The Utility Menu Screen will be displayed.

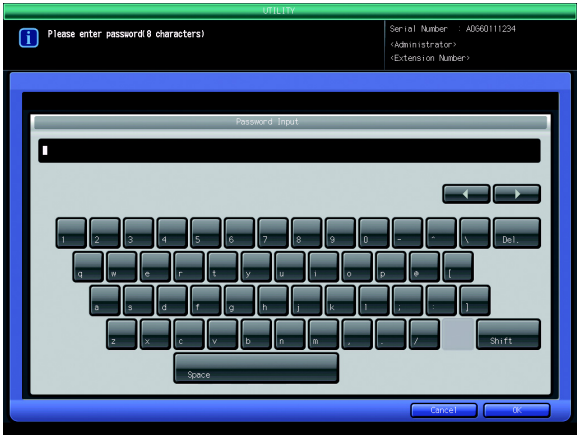


2 Touch [06 Administrator Setting].



The Password Input Screen will be displayed.
When the Password Input Screen is not displayed, proceed to step 4.

3 Enter the eight-digit administrator password, and then touch [OK].



The Administrator Setting Menu Screen will be displayed.

4 Make the desired administrator setting.

5 Touch [Exit] to exit the Utility mode and resume the screen displayed before pressing [Utility/Counter] on the control panel.

6.1.2 List of the Administrator Setting

Setting item and description	Default
01 System Setting	
01 Power Save Setting	
Auto Low Power/Auto Shut Off Set the interval time of Low Power and Auto Shut Off. Auto Low Power: 5 min./ 10 min./ 15 min./ 30 min./ 60 min./ 90 min./ 120 min./ 240 min. Auto Shut Off: Off/ 30 min./ 60 min./ 90 min./ 120 min./ 240 min.	Auto Shut Off Auto Low Power: bizhub PRO 1200: 15 min. bizhub PRO 1051: 5 min. Auto Shut Off: 90 min.
02 Time and Date Setting	
Time/Daylight Save Time/Difference in the Time Setting Set the present time, summer time, and difference in the time setting. Setting Time	- - -
03 Weekly Timer Setting	
01 Weekly Timer On/Off Setting Enable or disable the weekly timer function. Weekly Timer On/Weekly Timer Off	Weekly Timer Off
02 Timer Reserve Setting Set the On/Off times in hours and minutes.	- - -
03 Timer Action On/Off Setting Set the On/Off condition of the machine for a given month.	- - -
04 Lunch Hour Off Setting Set the machine to turn off and then on during the lunch break. Function Valid/Function Invalid, Set Off-time and Restart time.	Function Invalid
05 Timer Interrupt Password The password is required to enter when using the machine by interrupting the Weekly Timer mode. Use this function to set the password. 0000 (4 digits)	0000
04 Management List Print	
Mode Memory List Output the list of programmed contents of Mode memory.	
User Management List Output the list of contents registered by the user.	
Use Management List Output the list of machine use operated by users and sections.	
Font Pattern List Output the list of font patterns used with this machine.	
Audit Log Report Output the audit log report of the security mode.	

Setting item and description	Default
05 Restrict User Access Setting	
Lock/Delete Mode Memory Lock/unlock or Delete a mode memory that has been programmed.	
Change Address Registration Permit/prohibit to enter send address manually on the Scan Screen. Permit/Prohibit	Permit
Change User Preset Zoom Permit/prohibit to alter already programmed magnification ratio. Permit/Prohibit	Prohibit
Change Registered Overlay Permit/prohibit to delete or overwrite a title of programmed overlay image. Permit/Prohibit	Prohibit
Scan Function (E-mail) Permit/prohibit to transmit scanned data via E-mail. Permit/Prohibit	Permit
Scan Function (HDD) Permit/prohibit to save scanned data in HDD. Permit/Prohibit	Permit
Scan Function (FTP) Permit/prohibit to transmit scanned data to FTP Permit/Prohibit	Permit
Scan Function (SMB) Permit/prohibit to transmit scanned data in SMB. Permit/Prohibit	Permit
06 Expert Adjustment	
01 Printer Quality Adj. Select gradation or resolution to give priority in creating print images. Gradation Priority/ Resolution Priority	Gradation Priority
02 Original Scan Area Setting Set to delete the outside area of the original. Erase Outside of Original/ On - APS/AMS Only/ Except Orig. Glass (1:1)	Except Orig. Glass (1:1)
03 ADF Frame Erasure Setting Set to erase the frame when copying in ADF mode. None/1 mm/2 mm/3 mm/4 mm/5 mm	3 mm
04 Non-Image Area Erase Setting Use this function to select the erase mode Erase Mode: Oblique Erase/Rectangle Erase/Auto Original Density: Five levels/Auto	Erase Mode: Auto Original Density: Auto
05 Scan Quality Adjustment Specify the scan image quality. Texture Elimination: On/ Off ED Gradation Select: High/ Low 1200 dpi Scan Photo Screen: Gradation Priority/ Resolution Prior Selected AES Gamma Adjustment: -5 to 5	Texture Elimination: Off ED Gradation Select: Low 1200 dpi Scan Photo Screen: Gradation Priority Selected AES Gamma Adjustment: 0

Setting item and description	Default
07 Size Setting	
Original Size Search Set the detected paper type of the original. Metric A/B/ Inch Series / Only Metric A/ Full Size	Inch Series
Orig. Glass Small Size Set the smallest size when copying by placing the original on the original glass. Postcard ▯/5.5×8.5 ▯/A5 ▯/B5 ▯/A4 ▯/8.5×11 ▯	5.5×8.5 ▯
08 Annotation Setting Register, edit or delete the Annotation setting.	- - -
09 Perfect Binding Setting	
01 Usable Paper Weight Select Specify the paper weight available for each of body and cover when using Perfect Binder. P. B. Body: 17-19 lb/ 20-24 lb Cover: 20-24 lb/ 25-35 lb/ 36-43 lb/ 44-57 lb	P. B. Body: 17-19 lb/ 20-24 lb PB-502 Cover: 20-24 lb/ 25-35 lb/ 36-43 lb PB-503 Cover: 20-24 lb/ 25-35 lb/ 36-43 lb/ 44-57 lb
02 Paper Count Limit for P.B. Specify the minimum and maximum paper count of be bound each for paper weight. 17-19 lb: Minimum 10 15/ 20/ 25, Maximum 200/ 250/ 270/ 300 20-24 lb: Minimum 10/ 15/ 20/ 25, Maximum 200/ 250/ 270/ 300	17-19 lb: Minimum 10, Maximum 300 20-24 lb: Minimum 10, Maximum 300
03 Unfit P.B. Cover Stop Setting Stop/continue the current job when the cover width is not suitable for the body paper size and thickness. Temporary Stop/ Not Temporary Stop	Temporary Stop
10 Keyboard Type Setting Select the keyboard type. EN65/ EN104/ JP101/ JP106/ JP109	EN65
11 Screen Customize Setting	
01 Font Weight Setting Select the font weight for the touch screen. Standard/ Bold	Standard
02 Copy Screen Customize Set Change the layout of the setting items on upper half of the Copy Screen.	- - -
03 Scan Screen Customize Set Change the layout of the setting items on the Scan Screen.	- - -
04 Store Screen Customize Set Change the layout of the setting items on Store Screen.	- - -

Setting item and description	Default
02 Administrator/Machine Setting	
01 Register Administrator Register the name of the administrator and the extension number. The registered contents are displayed on the Counter Screen. Input Name: 20 characters/Extension Extension Number Input: 8 digits E-mail Address Input: 129 digits	- - -
03 User Authentication/Account Track	
01 Authentication Method	
01 Authentication Setting Set the authentication method and the number of sections to be managed. User Authentication, Account Authentication, Account Name Input, Synchronize User/Account Track, Password Input Timing, Account Distribute Number	User Authentication (Off), Account Authentication (Off), Account Name Input (On), Synchronize User/Account Track (Off), Password Input Timing (At Auto Reset), Account Distribute Number (1000)
02 Account Track Setting Set the section management against each mode and the machine condition when reaching the copy limit. Copy/Printer: On/Off Scan: On/Off Limit Reached Stop Setting: Stop Immediately/Stop After Print/Warning Only	Copy/Printer: On Scan: On Limit Reached Stop Setting: Stop Immediately
02 Account Track Setting Set the account track setting. Change, Add, Delete or Counter Clear is available. Account No./Account name/Password/Limit	- - -
03 User Authentication Setting Register, Change, Add, Delete the user authentication, or Counter Clear when the User Authentication is set in “01>01 Authentication Setting”. User No./User Name/Password/Account Name/Useable Function (Copy, Scan, Store/Recall, Printer)	- - -
04 Non register/Output Setting Set to count the output of non-registered users and sections On/Off	On
04 Network Setting	
01 Machine NIC Setting Set the NIC settings.	
01 TCP/IP Setting Set the TCP/IP settings. IP Address/Subnet Mask/Gateway Address/IP Address (DNS Server 1)/IP Address (DNS Server 2)/Line Speed Setting	

Setting item and description	Default
02 http communication setting Set the http communication settings. Enable Proxy Server: On/ Off Proxy Server Address Set Proxy Server Port Enable SSL: On/ Off Enable Authentication: On/ Off Authentication User Name Authentication Password	Enable Proxy Server: Off Enable SSL: Off Enable Authentication: Off
03 E-mail initial setting Set the E-mail initial settings. Use E-mail system: On/ Off Time Zone: Trans (SMTP) mail server SMTP Port number Trans mail server timeout: 030 to 300 sec. New-arrival check interval: 01 to 60 min. Receive mail server Receive mail server type: POP3/ IMAP POP3/IMAP Port number Receive mail account Receive mail password E-mail address for machine POP (IMAP9 before SMTP Auth.: On/Off	Use E-mail system: Off Receive mail server type: POP3 POP (IMAP9 before SMTP Auth.: Off
02 Controller NIC Setting	
01 TCP/IP Setting Set the TCP/IP settings.	
02 NetWare Setting Set the NetWare settings.	
03 HTTP Server Setting Set the HTTP Server settings.	
04 FTP Setting Set the FTP settings.	
05 SNMP Setting Set the SNMP settings.	
06 SMB Setting Set the SMB settings.	
07 AppleTalk Setting Set the AppleTalk settings.	
08 Bonjour Setting Set the Bonjour settings.	
09 E-mail Setting Set the E-mail settings.	
10 TCP Socket Setting Set the TCP Socket settings.	
11 CSRC Setting Specify the CSRC settings for services used by a customer engineer.	
12 OpenAPI Setting Specify the OpenAPI settings.	

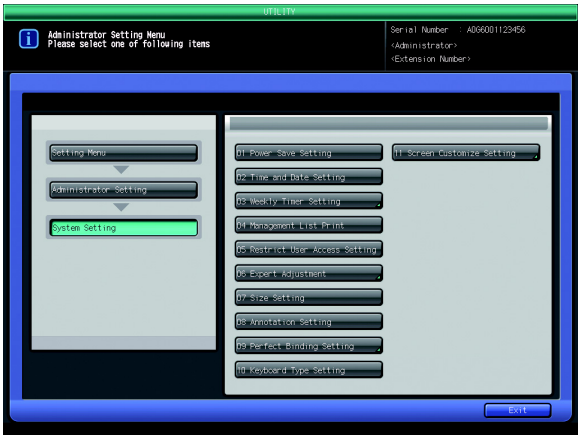
Setting item and description	Default
13 Web Service Setting Set the Web Service settings.	
14 JSP Setting Set the JSP settings.	
15 Detail Setting Set other detailed settings.	
05 Copy/Printer Setting	
01 Offset Setting	
01 Job Offset Operating Select to stop offset by set number and JOB unit. When selecting the [Offset by JOB Unit], specify the offset job number. Offset by Set Number: On/ Off Offset by JOB Unit: On/ Off Offset JOB Number: 0 to 9,999	Offset by Set Number: Off Offset by JOB Unit: Off
02 Offset Output Mode Setting Select the offset output mode. Offset Output Mode: Output Position Switching/ Partition Paper Insertion/ Print Stop Insertion Tray: Tray 1/ Tray 2/ Tray 3/ Tray 4/ Tray 5/ Tray 6/ Tray 7/ Tray 8/ PI-PFU 1/ PI-PFU 2/ PI-PFU 3	Offset Output Mode: Output Position Switching
02 Continuation Print (Printer) Set the machine to output multiple reserve jobs in succession. On/Off	Off
03 Page No. pos. (Booklet) Set the page number position when using Booklet with Page Numbering in Stamp. On (Outside Page Print)/Off	Off
04 Fixing Pre-rotation Set The fixing heat adjustment may be necessary as altering the paper type and the weight. The machine rotates the fixing roller before printing starts, in order to print at the appropriate temperature for the specific paper type and the weight. Rotation On/ Rotation Off	Rotation On
05 Sample Print Setting Select the print mode and feed tray, and set the timing of sample printing. Also select whether or not to include the print count of sample printing in the account track count. Print Mode: Fixed Chart Print/ Job Image Print Feed tray Select: Tray 1/ Tray 2 Print Cycle: On/ Off	Print Mode: Fixed Chart Print Feed Tray Select: Tray 1 Print Cycle: Off Account Track Count Setting: Off
06 Proof Print(1st Sheet) Set Enable the machine to select either the first sheet or a whole set to be output when making a proof print.	Proof Print(1st Sheet): On 1Set/1st Sheet Selection by [Proof Copy] Hard Key: On

Setting item and description	Default
07 Automatic Image Rotation When the trays contain only the paper size different from the original, rotate the image of the original and adjust to fit into the copying paper size On - Always/ On - APS/AMS Only/ On - APS/AMS/Reduce Only	On-Always
08 Interruption suspend Set the timing to interrupt the present job when pressing [Interrupt] while copying. When Current Set Complete/Stop Immediately	Stop Immediately
09 Copy Reserve Operation Set the timing for the reserve job either by setting on the Copy Reserve Confirmation Screen, or by placing the original on the original glass. Enabled by Operation/Enabled by Set Original	Enabled by Operation
10 Scan Stop (pull out tray) Set to stop scanning when pulling out the tray. On/Off	On
11 Continuation Print (Copy) Set the machine to output multiple reserve jobs in succession On/Off	Off
12 Original Glass SDF Method Set the exit direction when copying one set of the original on the original glass. Face Up/Face Down	Face Down
13 SDF Auto Setting Set the machine to automatically start copying when a sheet of original is loaded in the ADF. On/Off	Off
06 System Connection	
01 User Call Touch [Start] when calling CSRC. Start	- - -
07 Security Setting	
01 Administrator Password Change the administrator password which is registered in the Service mode menu.	00000000
02 HDD Management Setting	
01 Folder/User Box List Delete List the details of the folder box, and delete it. List and delete the details.	- - -
02 HDD Stored Data Delete Period Setting Set the period of time to keep data so that it will be deleted automatically when specified period has passed. Not Delete/12 hours/1 day/For 2 days/For 3 days/For 7 days/For 30 days	Not Delete
03 Change HDD Lock Password Change the password when accessing data stored in HDD.	- - -

Setting item and description	Default
04 Delete Temporary Data Specify whether or not to overwrite the temporary image data. Setting Switch: Off/On Erase mode: Mode 1/Mode 2	Setting Switch: Off Erase mode: Mode 1
05 Delete All Data Overwrite all the image data. Erase mode: Mode 1–8	Erase mode: Mode 4
06 HDD Encryption Setting Set the HDD encryption. On/ Off	Off
03 Security Strengthen Mode Set the Security Strengthen mode. On/Off	Off
08 Scan Destination Register	
01 Send Address Edit/Delete Edit or delete the registered scan address.	- - -

6.2 01 System Setting

System Setting Menu Screen



6.2.1 01 Power Save Setting

Specify Auto Low Power or Auto Shut Off when setting the Power Save mode manually, and select the interval of time that must elapse before Auto Low Power and Auto Shut Off.

...

Note

The period of time selected for Auto Low Power cannot exceed the Auto Shut Off setting.

If the same period of time as Auto Shut Off is selected for Auto Low Power, the selected time of Auto Low Power will be highlighted in white, and Auto Shut Off will function instead of Auto Low Power.

If the period of time selected for Auto Shut Off is shorter than that of for Auto Low Power, the selected time of Auto Low Power will be forcibly reset to the same period of time as Auto Shut Off, being highlighted in white. Auto Low Power will not function.

Procedure

1 Touch [01 System Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [01 Power Save Setting].

2 Touch [Auto Low Power] in the left side area of the screen to highlight it.



3 Select the interval of time that must elapse before turning to Auto Low Power automatically.

– Touch [▼]/[▲] under Auto Low Power to select a specific waiting period before activating Auto Low Power.
The initial setting is 15 minutes for bizhub PRO 1200/ 5 minutes for bizhub PRO 1051.
– If Auto Shut Off setting is not necessary, proceed to step 6.

4 Touch [Auto Shut Off] in the left side area of the screen to highlight it.

5 Select the interval of time that must elapse before turning to Auto Shut Off automatically.

– Touch [▼]/[▲] under Auto Shut Off to select a specific waiting period before activating Auto Shut Off.
The initial setting is 90 minutes.

6 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The System Setting Screen will be restored.

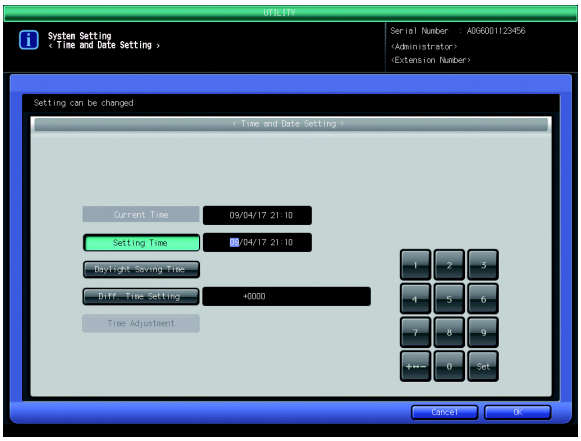
6.2.2 02 Time and Date Setting

Set the current date and time, the daylight-saving time, and also the time difference. The default setting for the daylight-saving time is off.

Procedure

1 Touch [01 System Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [02 Time and Date Setting].

2 Adjust the time.
The time indicated by the machine is displayed in the top row, ordered by month, date, year, and time (in 24-hour expression).



– Check that the month of Setting Time entry box is highlighted, and enter the desired month using the touch panel keypad.
Touch [Set] to move the highlighted section to the right. Similarly, enter the date, year, and time.

3 Set the daylight-saving time.

– The daylight-saving time is initially deactivated.
To activate the daylight-saving time function, touch [Daylight Saving Time] to highlight it. The present time will gain one hour.

4 The time difference setting is provided in order to give the time difference information at the same time when an e-mail is received.
To set this function, follow the procedure below.

– Touch [Diff. Time Setting].

– Use the touch panel keypad to enter the time difference between the universal time and the local time in the machine setting area. (e.g. Enter “-0600” for six hours later than the universal time.)
– Use [+<->–] to display “+” when the local time is earlier than the universal time, or “–” when the local time is later.

5 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The System Setting Screen will be restored.

6.2.3 03 Weekly Timer Setting

This function can be accessed only by the administrator.

The Weekly Timer is a machine management function that shuts down power to the machine on a daily or hourly basis, and can be programmed specifically for lunch breaks, weekends and holidays, or any time the copier is not required.

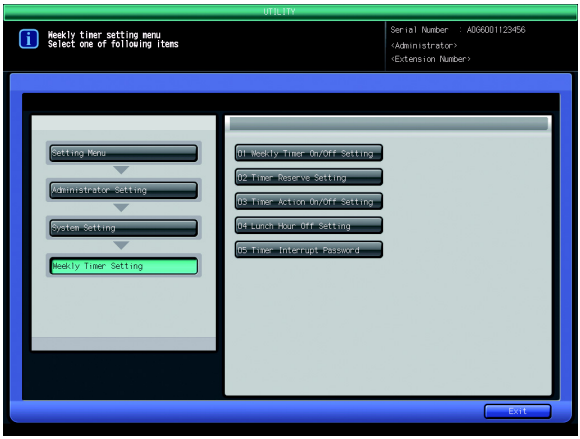
In addition, Timer Interrupt can be enabled (with or without a password requirement) to allow temporary use of the machine during periods when power is shut down by the timer function.

The Weekly Timer is not activated as factory default.

Conditions required to use the Weekly Timer:

- The power plug is inserted into the socket.
- The main power switch and sub power switch are turned on.
- The current date and time are correctly set.

Weekly Timer Setting Menu Screen



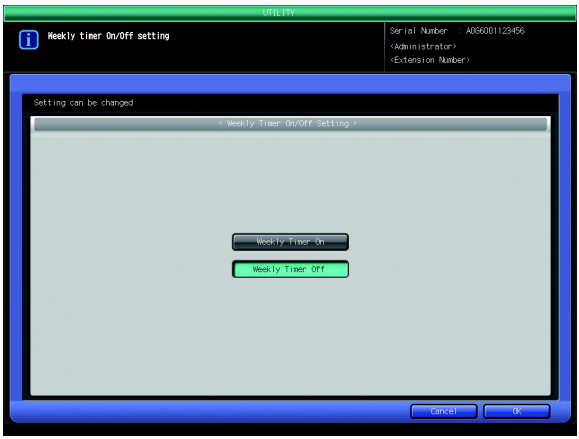
6.2.4 03 Weekly Timer Setting - 01 Weekly Timer On/Off Setting

Enable or disable the Weekly Timer function.

Procedure

1 Touch [01 System Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [03 Weekly Timer Setting] and [01 Weekly Timer On/Off Setting] in sequence.

2 Touch [Weekly Timer On] or [Weekly Timer Off] to highlight it.



– The default setting is [Weekly Timer Off].
Touching [Weekly Timer On] will activate the Weekly Timer, requiring the machine to always be turned on.
Touching [Weekly Timer Off] will deactivate the Weekly Timer. The power supply should be managed by switching on/off the main and sub power switches.

3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Weekly Timer Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

6.2.5 03 Weekly Timer Setting - 02 Timer Reserve Setting

Use this function to set the On/Off times in hours and minutes for each day of the week, or set the collective time for the entire week, i.e., the same On/Off time for a certain day of the week.

Note

If On-time and Off-time are the same, the power will not be turned on.

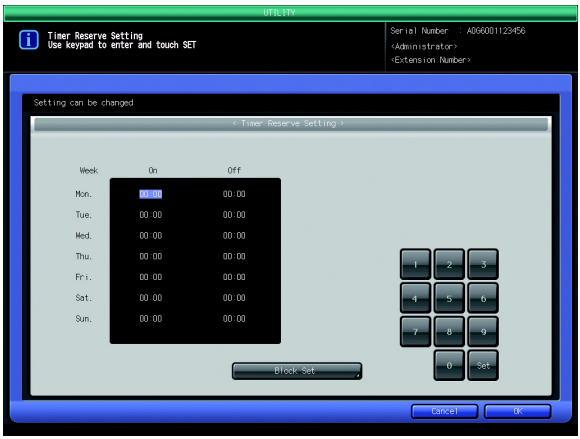
Even though On/Off times are specified here, the setting in [03 Timer Action On/Off Setting] still needs to be made in order to activate the timer, i.e., setting On/Off times for holidays will not turn on the machine on those holidays.

Procedure

1 Touch [01 System Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [03 Weekly Timer Setting] and [02 Timer Reserve Setting] in sequence.

- To specify On/Off times individually for each day of the week, proceed to the next step.
- To specify On/Off times collectively for the entire week, proceed to step 3.

2 Enter On/Off times for each day.

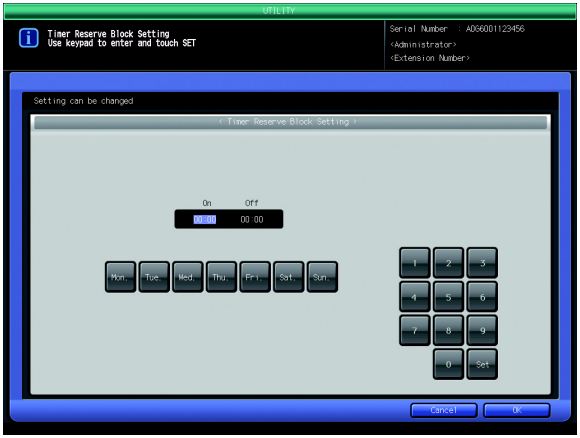


– When the Timer Reserve Setting Screen is displayed, the On-time of Monday is always highlighted.
  Use [Set] to highlight the On-time or Off-time of the desired day of the week.
  Enter a two-digit hour in 24-hour expression (ex. 2 p.m. is 14) and a two-digit minute (ex. 7 min. is 07) using the touch panel keypad.
– Repeat this procedure to enter all On/Off times needed.

3 To set the On/Off time collectively for more than one day of the week, touch [Block Set].

The Timer Reserve Block Setting Screen will be displayed.
The On and Off times are always set at 00:00–00:00.

4 Enter the On-time and Off-time for the desired day(s) of the week.



– Touch and highlight the day(s) of the week to be set. More than one can be selected at a time.
  Use [Set] to highlight the On-time or Off-time, then use the touch panel keypad to enter it. See step 2, if detailed procedure is desired.
– Touching [OK] or [Cancel] on this screen will restore the previous screen (Timer Reserve Setting Screen). Specified On/Off times are reflected on the screen.

5 Touch [OK] on the Timer Reserve Setting Screen to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Weekly Timer Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

6.2.6 03 Weekly Timer Setting - 03 Timer Action On/Off Setting

Use this function to set the timer On/Off for a given day of a given month. Set the On-Off condition for specific days individually, or collectively for all Mondays through Sundays of the given month.

Note

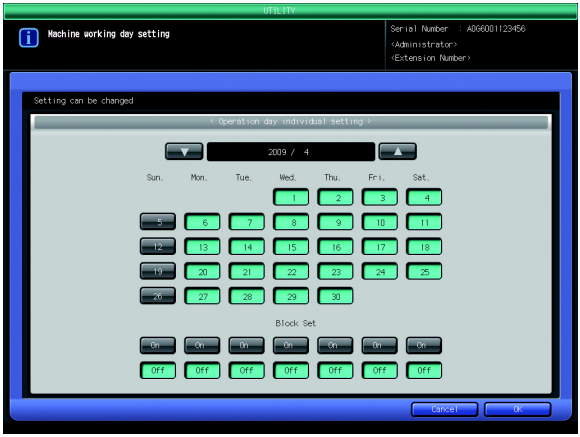
The default setting is collective: On for Mondays through Saturdays, and Off for Sundays.

Procedure

1 Touch [01 System Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [03 Weekly Timer Setting] and [03 Timer Action On/Off Setting] in sequence.

2 Touch the key for the desired day to activate the timer on the calendar displayed in the center of the screen.

– Use [▼]/[▲] to scroll to the desired year/month.



3 To collectively set the On/Off data for the entire month by the day of the week, touch [On] or [Off] for the desired day at the bottom of the screen to highlight it.

4 If any change is made in the collective setting area, a popup menu will appear for confirmation.

– The collective setting has priority to the individual setting made on the calendar.
Touch [Yes] to change the timer action, or touch [No] to cancel.

5 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Weekly Timer Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

6.2.7 03 Weekly Timer Setting - 04 Lunch Hour Off Setting

The Weekly Timer function turns the machine On and Off once a day. Use the Lunch Hour Off Setting to shut down the power during the lunch break and then turn it on again according to the Weekly Timer function setting. Only one off-time interval can be programmed.

Note

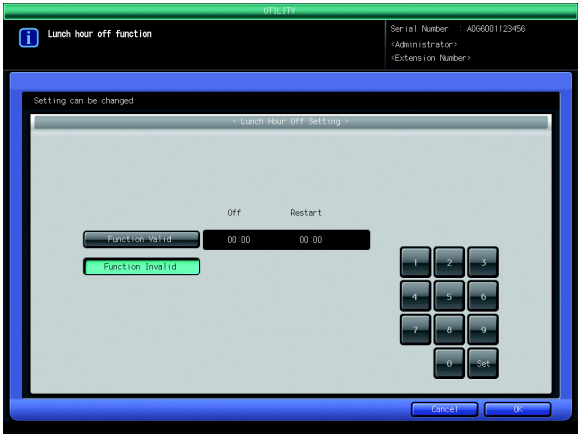
The Lunch Hour Off Setting will be ineffective if specified off-time interval does not fall within the working time of the machine.

The factory default setting is [Function Invalid].

Procedure

1 Touch [01 System Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [03 Weekly Timer Setting] and [04 Lunch Hour Off Setting] in sequence.

2 Touch [Function Valid] to activate this function.



- The Off-time in the entry box will be highlighted. Enter the desired Off-time using the touch panel keypad, then touch [OK]. Also enter the Restart time.
- Touch [Function Invalid] to deactivate the lunch hour off function.

3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Weekly Timer Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

6.2.8 03 Weekly Timer Setting - 05 Timer Interrupt Password

Use this password setting mode to establish a four-digit password required for using the Timer Interrupt function. With this password specified, the machine will not allow the use during off-hours until the specified password is entered after [Power Save] is pressed on the control panel.

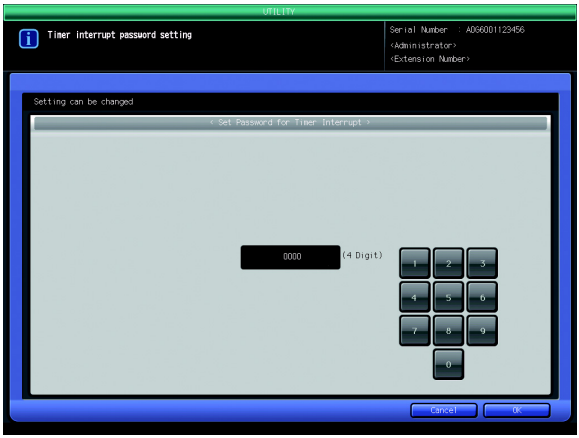
Note

When the password setting is 0000, the machine can be used simply by pressing [Power Save] on the control panel during off-hours. In this case, you will be asked to enter the duration of use (the time to elapse before the machine power is turned off).
The factory default setting is 0000.

Procedure

1 Touch [01 System Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [03 Weekly Timer Setting] and [05 Timer Interrupt Password] in sequence.

2 Use the touch panel keypad to enter a four-digit password.



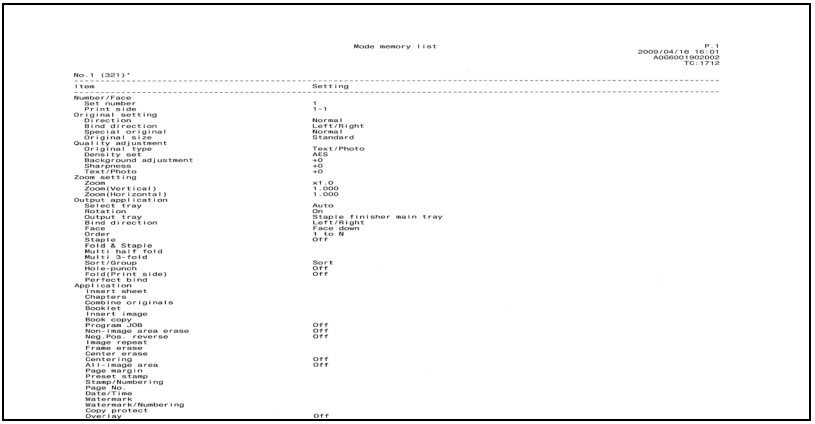
3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Weekly Timer Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

6.2.9 04 Management List Print

Use this function to print out the list selected from the following items.

- Mode Memory List:
  Programmed contents of Mode Memory



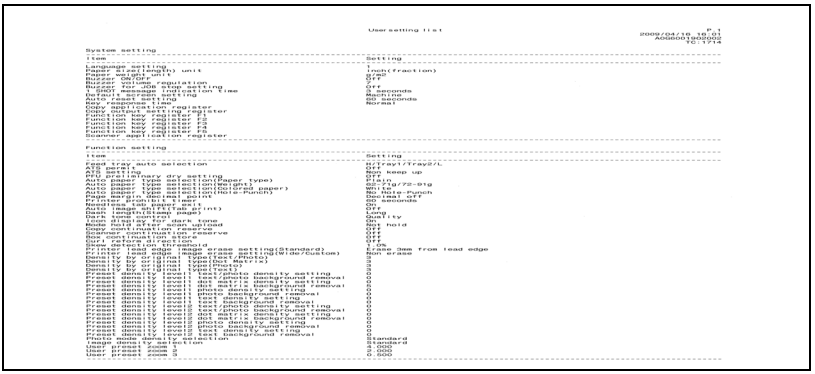
Mode memory list

P.1
2009/04/10 16:01
A0G8001902002
TC:1712

No.1 (321)*

Item	Setting
Number/Face	
Set number	1
Print side	1-1
Original setting	
Direction	Normal
Bind direction	Left/Right
Size original	Normal
Original size	Standard
Quality adjustment	
Original type	Text/Photo
Density set	AES
Background adjustment	+0
Sharpness	+0
Text/Photo	+0
Zoom setting	
Zoom	x1.0
Zoom(Vertical)	1.000
Zoom(Horizontal)	1.000
Output application	
Select tray	Auto
Rotation	On
Output tray	Staple finisher main tray
Bind direction	Left/Right
Face	Face down
Order	1 to N
Staple	Off
Fold & Staple	
Z-fold & fold	
Multi 3-fold	
Sort/Group	Sort
Hole-punch	Off
Fold(Print side)	Off
Perfect bind	
Application	
Insert sheet	
Chapters	
Combine originals	
Booklet	
Book 1-image	
Book Copy	
Program JOB	Off
Non-image area erase	Off
Neg.Pos. reverse	Off
Image repeat	
Mirror image	
Center erase	
Centering	Off
All-image area	Off
Page margin	
Page margin	
Stamp/Numbering	
Page No.	
Date/Time	
Watermark	
Background/Numbering	
Copy protect	
Overlay	Off

- User Management List:
  Home position settings selected by user



User setting list

P.1
2009/04/10 16:01
A0G8001902002
TC:1714

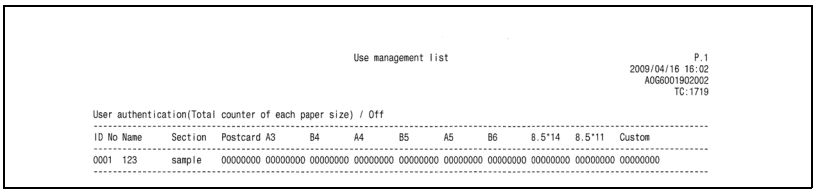
System setting

Item	Setting
Language setting	---
Paper weight(Basis weight) unit	Inch(fraction)
Paper weight unit	g/m2
Buzzer	Off
Buzzer volume regulation	0
Error Message Indication Time	5 seconds
Default screen setting	Machine
Auto reset time	60seconds
Key response time	Normal
Copy protect register	
Copy protect setting/register	
Function key register F1	
Function key register F2	
Function key register F3	
Function key register F4	
Function key register F5	
Scanner application register	

Function setting

Item	Setting
Tray setting	---
Feed tray auto selection	On(Tray1/Tray2/L
ATS setting	Key keep up
ATS Preliminary dry setting	Off
Auto paper type selection(Paper type)	Plain
Auto paper type selection(Weight)	91g/72-91g
Auto paper type selection(Colored paper)	White
Auto paper type selection(Hole-Punch)	No Hole-Punch
Printer function setting	Print Job
Printer prohibit timer	60 seconds
Auto image shift(Tab print)	Off
Auto image shift(Tab page)	Odd page
Dark tone control	Quality
Icon display for dark tone	On
Copy continuation reserve	Job hold
Copy continuation reserve	Off
Box continuation reserve	Off
Box destination store	Off
Skew detection threshold	0.5%
Printer lead edge image erase setting(Standard)	Erase 3mm from lead edge
Printer lead edge image erase setting(Binder/Custom)	Non erase
Density by original type(Text/Photo)	3
Density by original type(Dot Matrix)	3
Density by original type(Text)	3
Density by original type(Photo)	3
Preset density level1 text/photo density setting	0
Preset density level1 text/photo background removal	0
Preset density level1 text density setting	0
Preset density level1 dot matrix background removal	0
Preset density level1 photo density setting	0
Preset density level1 photo background removal	0
Preset density level2 text density setting	0
Preset density level2 text background removal	0
Preset density level2 text/photo density setting	0
Preset density level2 text/photo background removal	0
Preset density level2 dot matrix density setting	0
Preset density level2 dot matrix background removal	0
Preset density level2 photo density setting	0
Preset density level2 photo background removal	0
Preset density level2 text background removal	0
Image density selection	Standard
User preset zoom 1	4.000
User preset zoom 2	2.000
User preset zoom 3	0.500

- Use Management List:
  Information controlled by user authentication/ account track



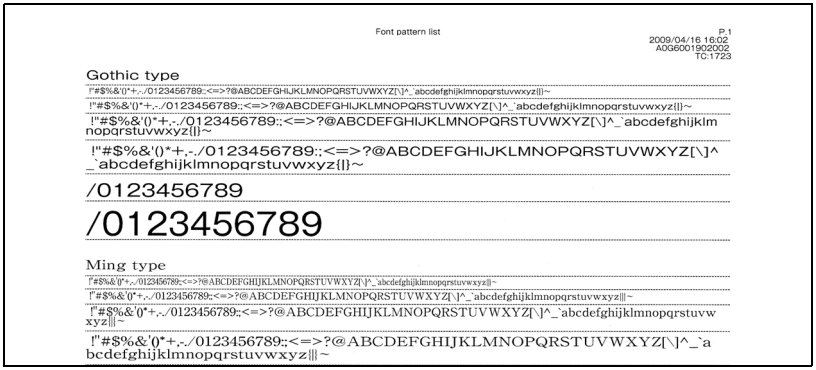
Use management list

P.1
2009/04/16 16:02
A0G600190200Z
TC:1719

User authentication(Total counter of each paper size) / Off

ID No	Name	Section	Postcard	A3	B4	A4	B5	A5	B6	8.5*14	8.5*11	Custom
0001	123	sample	00000000	00000000	00000000	00000000	00000000	00000000	00000000	00000000	00000000	00000000

- Font Pattern List:
  Font patterns used in the machine



Font pattern list

P.1
2009/04/16 16:02
A0G600190200Z
TC:1723

Gothic type

!"#$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{|}~

!"#$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{|}~

!"#$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{|}~

!"#$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{|}~

/0123456789

/0123456789

Ming type

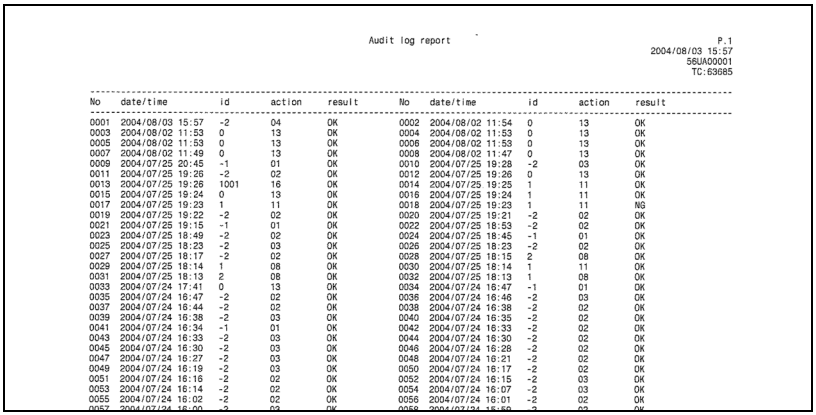
!"#$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz|||~

!"#$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz|||~

!"#$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz|||~

!"#$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz|||~

- Audit Log Report:
  Audited log



Audit log report

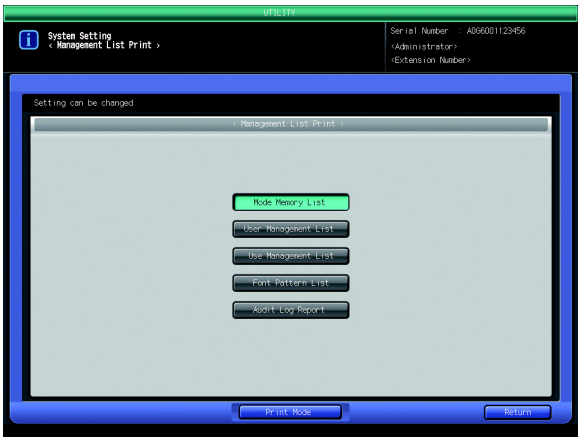
P.1
2004/08/03 15:57
56UA00001
TC:63685

No	date/time	id	action	result	No	date/time	id	action	result
0001	2004/08/03 15:57	-2	04	OK	0002	2004/08/02 11:54	0	13	OK
0003	2004/08/02 11:53	0	13	OK	0004	2004/08/02 11:53	0	13	OK
0005	2004/08/02 11:53	0	13	OK	0006	2004/08/02 11:53	0	13	OK
0007	2004/08/02 11:49	0	13	OK	0008	2004/08/02 11:47	0	13	OK
0009	2004/07/25 20:45	-1	01	OK	0010	2004/07/25 19:28	-2	03	OK
0011	2004/07/25 19:26	-2	02	OK	0012	2004/07/25 19:26	0	13	OK
0013	2004/07/25 19:26	1001	16	OK	0014	2004/07/25 19:25	1	11	OK
0015	2004/07/25 19:24	0	13	OK	0016	2004/07/25 19:24	1	11	OK
0017	2004/07/25 19:23	1	11	OK	0018	2004/07/25 19:23	1	11	NG
0019	2004/07/25 19:22	-2	02	OK	0020	2004/07/25 19:21	-2	02	OK
0021	2004/07/25 19:15	-1	01	OK	0022	2004/07/25 18:53	-2	02	OK
0023	2004/07/25 18:49	-2	02	OK	0024	2004/07/25 18:45	-1	01	OK
0025	2004/07/25 18:23	-2	03	OK	0026	2004/07/25 18:23	-2	02	OK
0027	2004/07/25 18:17	-2	02	OK	0028	2004/07/25 18:15	2	08	OK
0029	2004/07/25 18:14	1	08	OK	0030	2004/07/25 18:14	1	11	OK
0031	2004/07/25 18:13	2	08	OK	0032	2004/07/25 18:13	1	08	OK
0033	2004/07/24 17:41	0	13	OK	0034	2004/07/24 16:47	-1	01	OK
0035	2004/07/24 16:47	-2	02	OK	0036	2004/07/24 16:46	-2	03	OK
0037	2004/07/24 16:44	-2	02	OK	0038	2004/07/24 16:38	-2	02	OK
0039	2004/07/24 16:38	-2	03	OK	0040	2004/07/24 16:35	-2	02	OK
0041	2004/07/24 16:34	-1	01	OK	0042	2004/07/24 16:33	-2	02	OK
0043	2004/07/24 16:33	-2	03	OK	0044	2004/07/24 16:30	-2	02	OK
0045	2004/07/24 16:30	-2	03	OK	0046	2004/07/24 16:28	-2	02	OK
0047	2004/07/24 16:27	-2	03	OK	0048	2004/07/24 16:21	-2	02	OK
0049	2004/07/24 16:19	-2	03	OK	0050	2004/07/24 16:17	-2	02	OK
0051	2004/07/24 16:16	-2	02	OK	0052	2004/07/24 16:15	-2	03	OK
0053	2004/07/24 16:14	-2	02	OK	0054	2004/07/24 16:07	-2	03	OK
0055	2004/07/24 16:02	-2	02	OK	0056	2004/07/24 16:01	-2	02	OK
0057	2004/07/24 16:00	-2	03	OK	0058	2004/07/24 15:59	-2	03	OK

Procedure

1 Touch [01 System Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [04 Management List Print].

2 Touch the desired key of the list to print.



3 Touch [Print Mode] tab to display the Copy Screen.

4 Press [Start] on the control panel to start printing the selected list.

– To suspend printing, press Stop. Touch [Close] to return to the Management List Print Screen.

5 Touch [Return].

The System Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

6.2.10 05 Restrict User Access Setting

Use this function to permit or prohibit the following programmed contents of Mode Memory.

- Lock/Delete Mode Memory:
  Lock/Unlock or delete job settings stored in Mode Memory. The settings of a locked entry cannot be changed.

- Change Address Registration:
  Permit/Prohibit to enter the sender address manually on the Scan Screen.

- Change User Preset Zoom:
  Permit/Prohibit to change already programmed magnification ratio.

- Change Registered Overlay:
  Permit/Prohibit to delete or overwrite a title of registered overlay image.

- Scan Function (E-mail):
  Permit/Prohibit to transmit scanned data via E-mail.

- Scan Function (HDD):
  Permit/Prohibit to save scanned data on HDD.

- Scan Function (FTP):
  Permit/Prohibit to transmit scanned data to an FTP server.

- Scan Function (SMB):
  Permit/Prohibit to transmit scanned data to a public folder.

...

Note

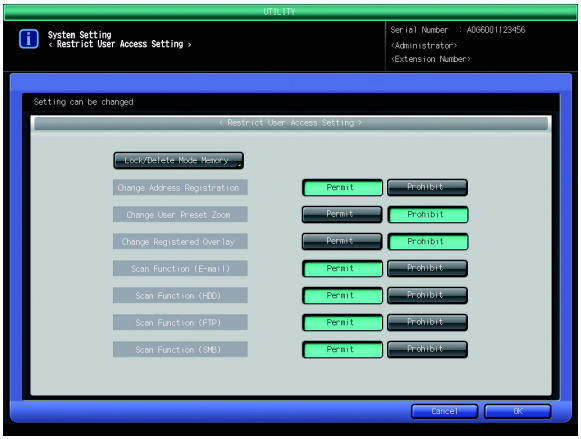
Locked entry of Mode Memory can be deleted with the lock deleted from that key. Note that the entry once deleted cannot be recalled.
30 job settings can be stored in Mode Memory. Use [Next] or [Previous] to display the desired entry.

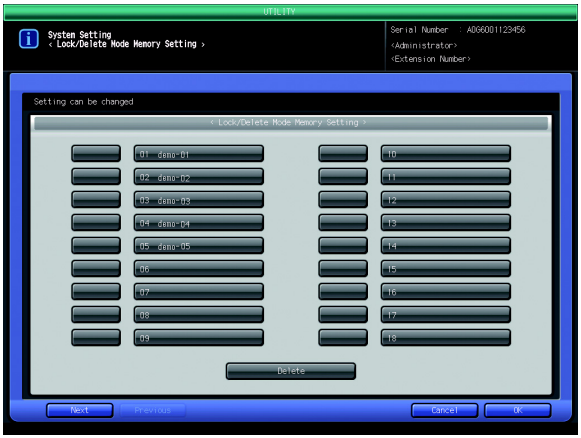
Procedure

1 Touch [01 System Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [05 Restrict User Access Setting].

2 Make the setting of Lock/Delete Mode Memory.

– Touch [Lock/Delete Mode Memory]. The Lock/Delete Mode Memory Setting Screen will be displayed.





- The programmed name is displayed on the right side of the entry number, when the setting is already programmed.
  Touch the key on the left side of the desired entry to lock it with a lock mark displayed.
  Touching the locked key will clear the lock mark and release the lock.
  Touching the key without a name entered will neither lock the key nor display the lock mark.
- Touch and highlight the entry number you want to delete.
  Touching [Delete] will delete the selected program and the name on that key.
- Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch Cancel to resume the previous setting. The Restrict User Access Setting Screen will be restored.

3 As to Change Address Registration, Change User Preset Zoom, Change Registered Overlay, Scan Function (E-mail), Scan Function (HDD), Scan Function (FTP), and Scan Function (SMB), select [Permit] or [Prohibit] to highlight it for each.

4 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The System Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

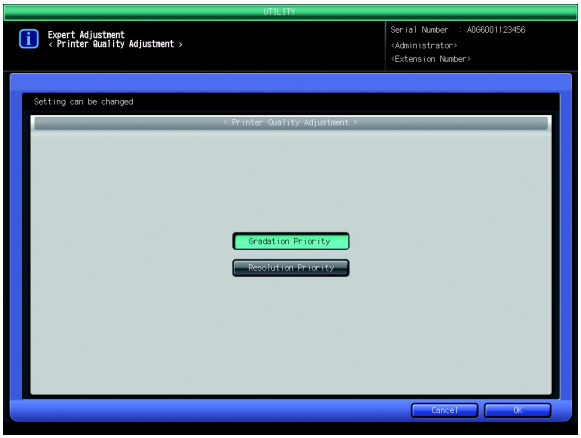
6.2.11 06 Expert Adjustment - 01 Printer Quality Adjustment

Select gradation or resolution to give priority in creating print images.

Procedure

1 Touch [01 System Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [06 Expert Adjustment] and [01 Printer Quality Adj.] in sequence.

2 Touch [Gradation Priority] or [Resolution Priority].



3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Expert Adjustment Menu Screen will be restored.

6.2.12 06 Expert Adjustment - 02 Original Scan Area Setting

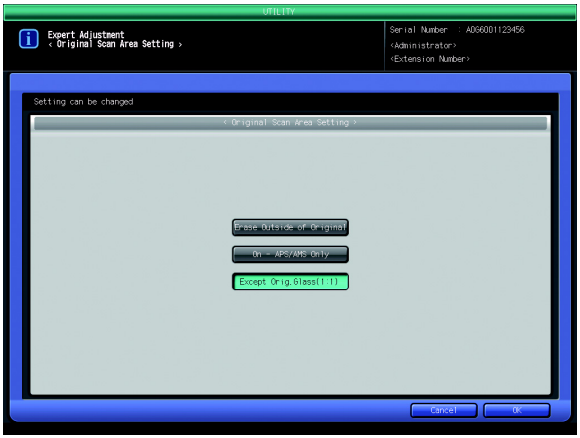
Select whether or not to delete the outside area of the original from the following three options:

- Erase Outside of Original:
  Set the machine to always delete the outside area of the original.
- On - APS/AMS Only:
  Set the machine to delete the outside area of the original only when Auto Paper or Auto Zoom functions.
- Except Orig. Glass (1:1):
  Set the machine to delete the outside area of the original except when copying in real size of the original scanned from the original glass.

Procedure

1 Touch [01 System Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [06 Expert Adjustment] and [02 Original Scan Area Setting] in sequence.

2 Touch the desired setting key to highlight it.



3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Expert Adjustment Menu Screen will be restored.

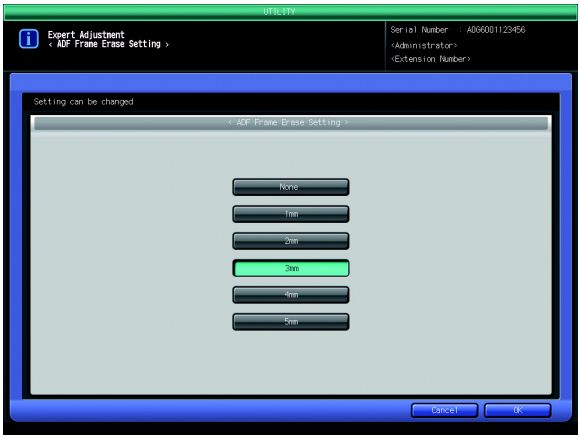
6.2.13 06 Expert Adjustment - 03 ADF Frame Erase Setting

Select whether or not to operate the Frame Erasure function anytime when using the ADF for copying, and select the amount of the outside area to be deleted.

Procedure

1 Touch [01 System Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [06 Expert Adjustment] and [03 ADF Frame Erase Setting] in sequence.

2 Touch the key of the desired erasure amount to highlight it.
Touch [None] if Frame Erasure is not necessary.



3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Expert Adjustment Menu Screen will be restored.

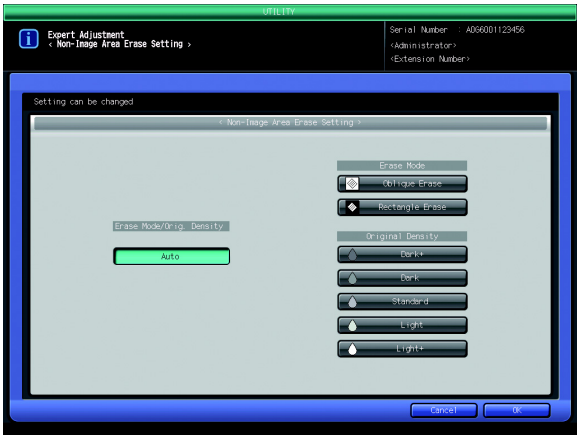
6.2.14 06 Expert Adjustment - 04 Non-Image Area Erase Setting

Use this function to select the erase mode, and set the density level of the original (five levels). The default setting is Auto.

Procedure

1 Touch [01 System Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [06 Expert Adjustment] and [04 Non-Image Area Erase Setting] in sequence.

2 Select the erase mode and density level of the original.



- Touch [Auto] to automatically select an appropriate erase mode and exposure level for the original placed on the original glass.
- To select the erase mode manually, touch [Oblique Erase] or [Rectangle Erase], then select the desired original density from five exposure levels.

3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

4 The Expert Adjustment Menu Screen will be restored.

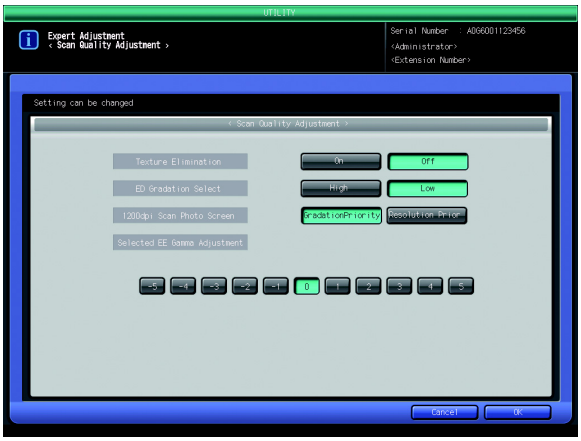
6.2.15 06 Expert Adjustment - 05 Scan Quality Adjustment

Specify the scan image quality.

Procedure

1 Touch [01 System Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [06 Expert Adjustment] and [05 Scan Quality Adjustment] in sequence.

2 Touch the desired key to highlight it for each item. For Selected EE Gamma Adjustment, select the desired level key from –5 to +5 to highlight it.



3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

4 The Expert Adjustment Menu Screen will be restored.

6.2.16 07 Size Setting

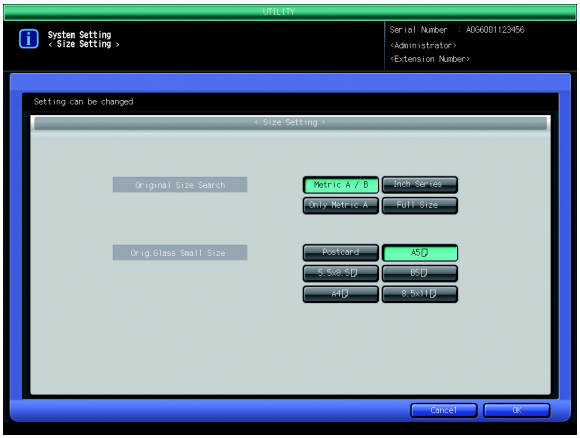
Use this function to select the detectable series of the original size and the minimum detectable size of the original placed on the original glass.

Procedure

1 Touch [01 System Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [07 Size Setting].

2 Select the series of the original size to be detected in the ADF or on the original glass.

– Touch the desired key on the right side of Original Size Search.



3 Select the minimum size of the original to be detected in Auto Paper.

– Touch the desired size key to highlight it.

4 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The System Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

6.2.17 08 Annotation Setting

Use this function to newly register, edit, or delete annotations.
For setting an annotation, the following items are provided:

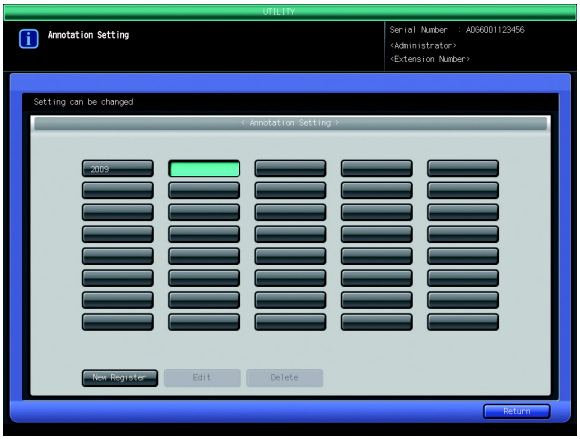
- Title
  Enter the title of annotation within 12 alphanumerical characters.
- Item 1, 2, and 3
  Specify the contents of each item in printing order, from among Type In, Date/Time, and Annotation No. along with character size and font.
- Type In
  When selecting Type In as an item of the annotation, specify the words to be printed within 40 alphanumerical characters.
- Date/Time
  When selecting Date/Time as an item of the annotation, specify the style to be printed.
  Date: 5 styles provided (04/11/23, 11/23/'04, 23/11/'04, Nov 23, 2004, 23 Nov, 2004)
  Time: 3 styles provided (No Display, 1:23 PM, 13:23)
- Annotation No.
  When selecting Annotation No. as an item of the annotation, specify words (referred as Type In) within 20 alphanumerical characters and start number of Annotation Number (numbering) within 9 alphanumerical characters in a row, and select whether to print Type In and Annotation Number.
  When selecting Annotation Number to be printed, also select the print form between All Digit and Effective Digit.
- Character Set
  Specify the character size and font of the item to be printed as annotation.
  (Character size: 8/10/12/14 point, Font: Gothic/Ming)
- Combination method for items
  Select to print the specified items either in a line or in three lines.

Procedure

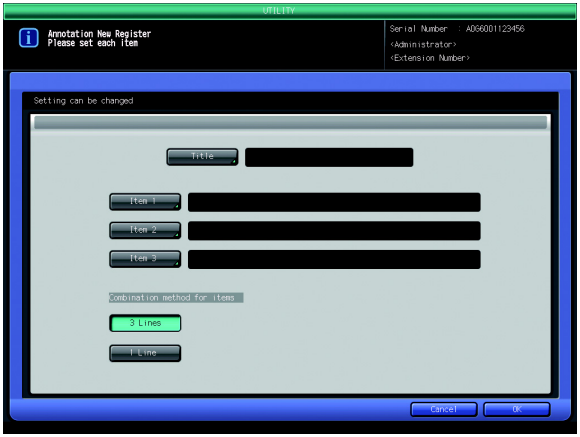
1 Touch [01 System Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [08 Annotation Setting].

2 Register an annotation.

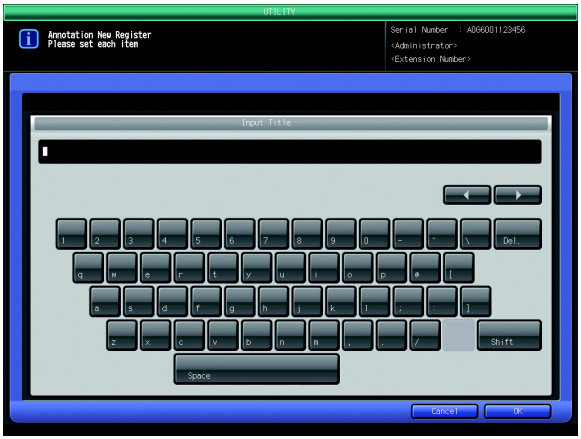
– Touch a non-registered title key on the Annotation Setting Screen, then touch [New Register].



The Annotation New Register Screen will be displayed.
If selected title key has already been registered, [New Register] remains dimmed and cannot be touched.

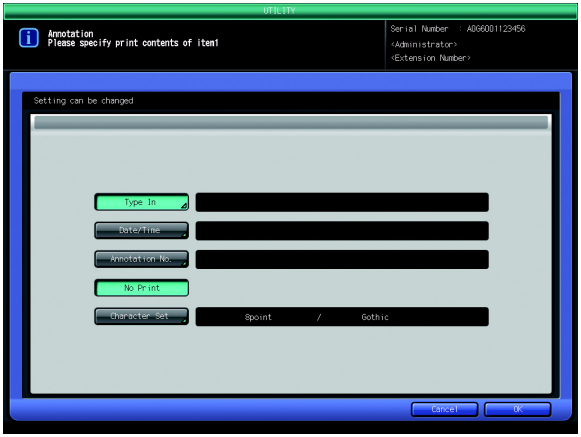


– Specify the title of annotation.
Touch [Title] to display the Input Title Screen, then enter the desired title. Touch [OK] to continue.

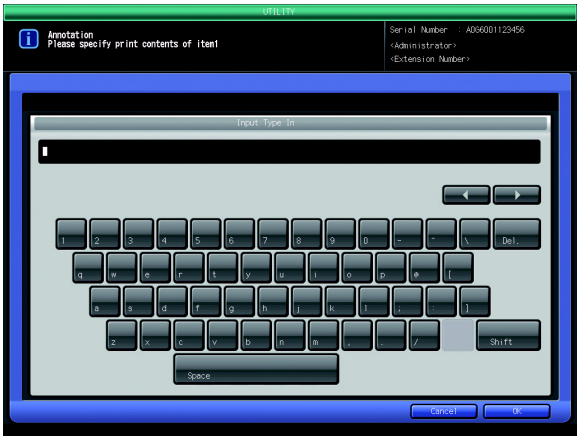


Without the title specified, the [OK] key on the Annotation Setting Screen cannot be touched to impede the completion of the setting.

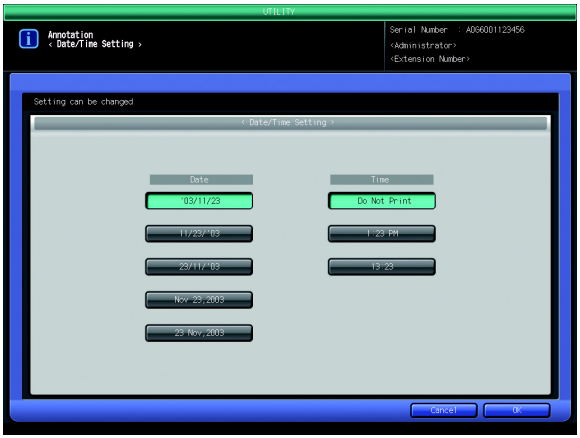
– Touch [Item 1] to specify the first line of the annotation.
Touch one of the key from [Type In], [Date/Time], [Annotation No.], and [No Print] to select it.



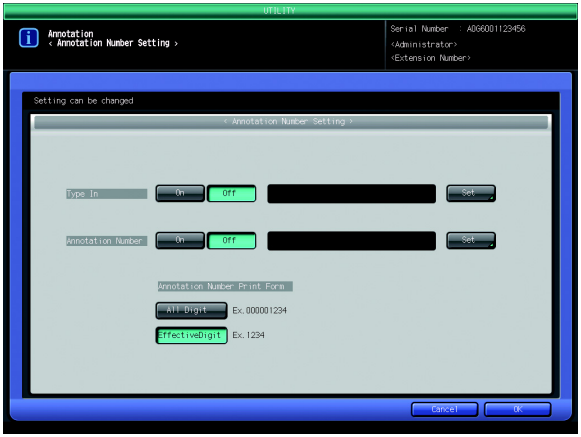
When [Type In] is selected:
The Input Type In Screen will be displayed.
Enter the desired words to be printed, then touch [OK].



When [Date/Time] is selected:
The Date/Time Setting Screen will be displayed.
Select the desired style for each from 5 Date keys and 3 Time keys, then touch [OK].



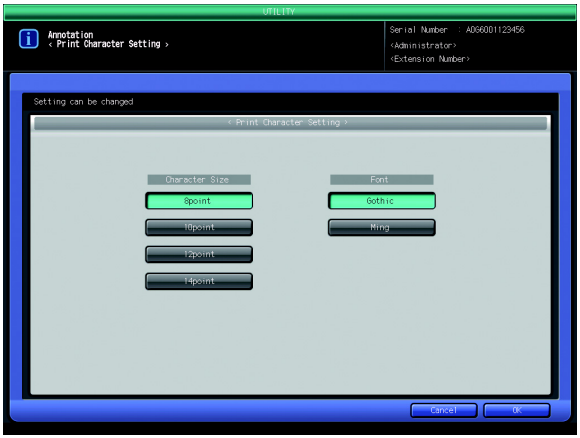
When [Annotation No.] is selected:
The Annotation No. Setting Screen will be displayed.



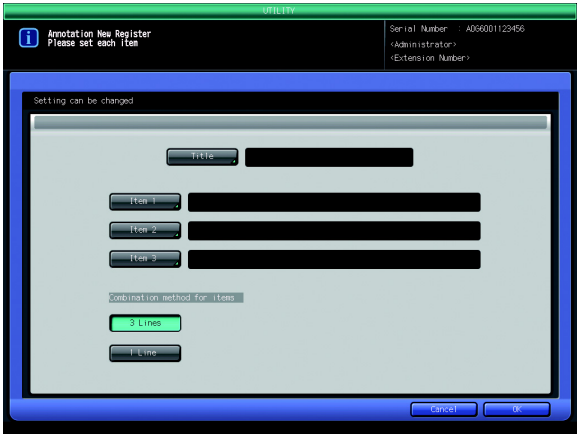
To specify the Type In words, touch [Set] on the right side of Type In indication to display the Input Type In Screen, enter the desired words, then touch [OK]. To clear the specified words and leave the line blank, touch [Clear] next to [Set].
To specify the Annotation Number, touch [Set] on the right side of Annotation Number indication to display the Input Annotation Number Screen, enter the start number, then touch [OK].
Touch [All Digit] or [Effective Digit] to select the print form of the serial number.
Touch [OK] on the Annotation Number Setting Screen to complete the setting.

When [No Print] is selected:
The key will be highlighted, and the Item 1 will not be printed.

When [Character Set] is selected:
Touch [Character Set] to specify the character size and font type of the Item 1. The Print Character Setting Screen will be displayed. Select the desired size from 4 character size keys, and font type between the two font keys, then touch [OK].



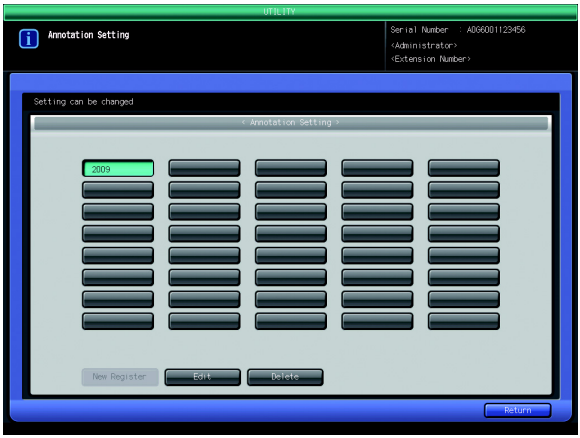
– Repeat the above step to specify the Item 2 and Item 3.
– Touch [3 Lines] or [1 Line] under the Combination method for items indication to select the desired print style of the annotation.



Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to clear the setting. The Annotation Setting Screen will be restored.

3 Edit an annotation.

– Touch the registered title key on the Annotation Setting Screen, then touch [Edit].

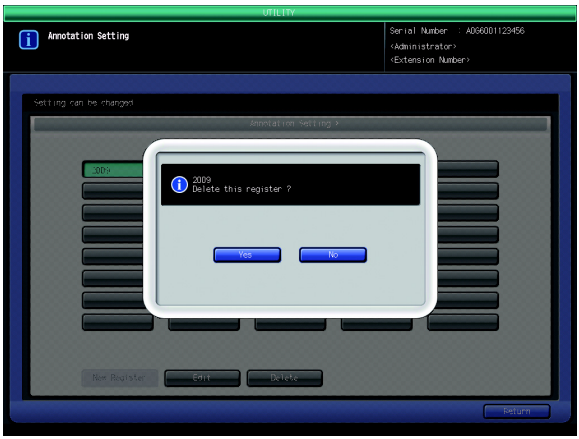


The Annotation Edit Screen will be displayed.
Edit the selected annotation, then touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to clear the setting.
The Annotation Setting Screen will be restored.

4 Delete an annotation.

– Touch the registered title key on the Annotation Setting Screen, then touch [Delete].
A popup menu will be displayed to confirm that the selected register will be deleted.

– Touch [Yes] to delete, or [No] to cancel.

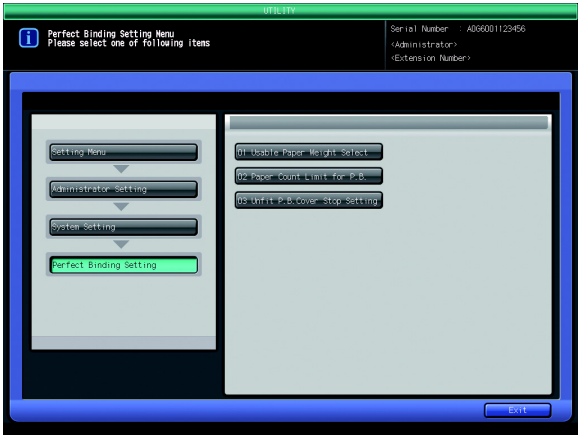


5 Touch [Return] to return to the System Setting Screen.

6.2.18 09Perfect Binding Setting\ 01 Useful Paper Weight

Use this function to specify the paper weight available for each of body and cover when using Perfect Binder.

Perfect Binding Setting Menu Screen



...

Note

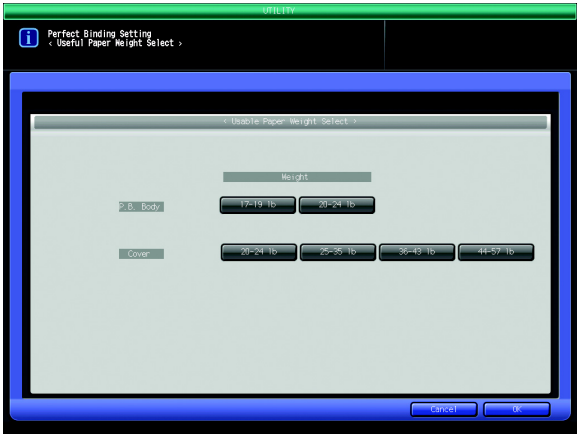
If one of the paper weight selected here is not specified for the tray to be used in the perfect binding mode, the binding operation will become unavailable with an "unsuitable" message displayed.

Procedure

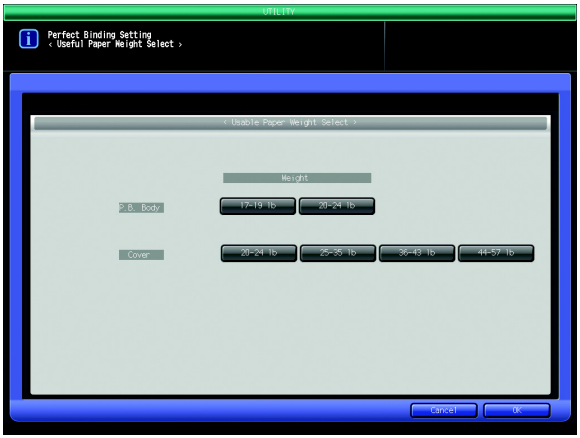
1 Touch [01 System Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [09 Perfect Binding Setting] and [01 Useful Paper Weight] in sequence.

2 Touch the desired paper weight keys for each of P.B. Body and Cover to highlight them.

PB-502



PB-503



3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Perfect Binding Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

6.2.19 09 Perfect Binding Setting\ 02 Paper Count Limit

Use this function to specify the minimum and maximum paper count to be bound each for paper weight.

Procedure

1 Touch [01 System Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [09 Perfect Binding Setting] and [01 Useful Paper Weight] in sequence.

2 Touch the desired minimum and maximum count limit keys for each paper weight to highlight it.



3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Perfect Binding Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

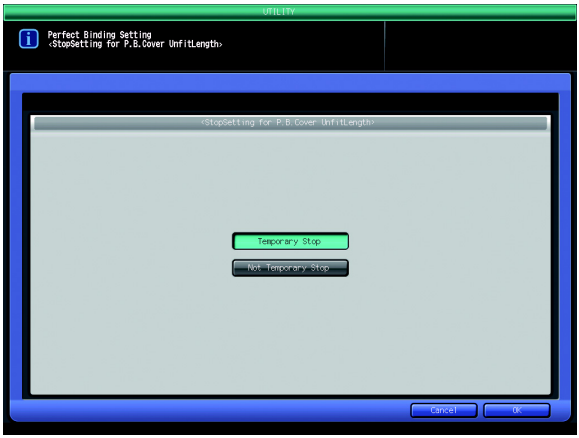
6.2.20 09 Perfect Binding Setting\ 03 Unfitting Cover Stop

Use this function to stop/continue the current job when the cover width is not suitable for the body paper size and thickness.

Procedure

1 Touch [01 System Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [09 Perfect Binding Setting] and [03 Unfitting Cover Stop] in sequence.

2 Touch [Temporary Stop] or [Not Temporary Stop] to highlight it.



3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Perfect Binding Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

6.2.21 10 Keyboard Type Setting

Select the keyboard type if the service port device is used.

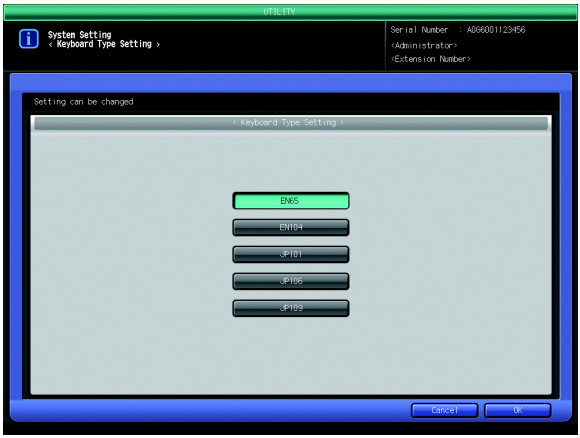
Note

When using the service port device, contact your service representative.

Procedure

1 Touch [01 System Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [10 Keyboard Type Setting].

2 Touch the desired key to select a keyboard type.



3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Perfect Binding Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

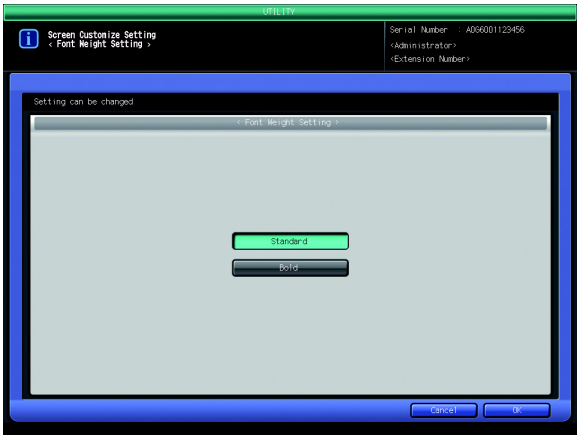
6.2.22 11 Screen Customize Setting\ 01 Font Weight Setting

Select the font weight for touch screen.

Procedure

1 Touch [01 System Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [11 Screen Customize Setting] and [01 Font Weight Setting] in sequence.

2 Touch [Standard] or [Bold].



3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Screen Customize Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

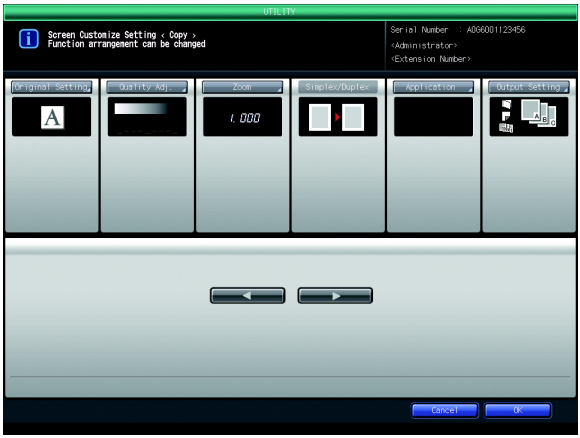
6.2.23 11 Screen Customize Setting\ 02 Copy Screen Customize Setting

Change the layout of the setting items on upper half of the Copy Screen as desired.

Procedure

1 Touch [01 System Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [11 Screen Customize Setting] and [02 Copy Screen Customize Set] in sequence.

2 Touch the desired item, then use [◀] [▶] to shift it right and left.



3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Screen Customize Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

6.2.24 11 Screen Customize Setting\ 03 Scan Screen Customize Setting

Change the layout of the setting items on the Scan Screen.

Procedure

1 Touch [01 System Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [11 Screen Customize Setting] and [03 Scan Screen Customize Set] in sequence.

2 Touch the desired item, then use [◀] [▶] to shift it right and left. The item is unable to be moved up and down.



3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Screen Customize Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

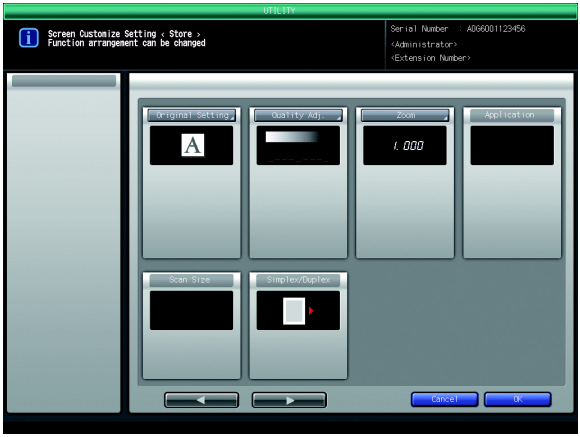
6.2.25 11 Screen Customize Setting\ 04 Store Screen Customize Set

Change the layout of the setting items on the Store Screen.

Procedure

1 Touch [01 System Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [11 Screen Customize Setting] and [04 Store Screen Customize Set] in sequence.

2 Touch the desired item, then use [◀] [▶] to shift it right and left. The item is unable to be moved up and down.

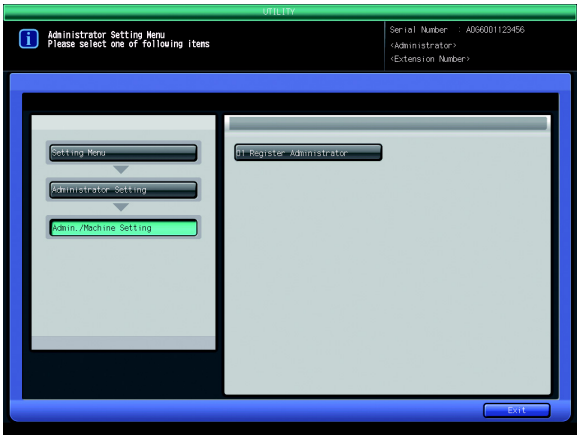


3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Screen Customize Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

6.3 02 Admin./Machine Setting

Admin./Machine Setting Screen



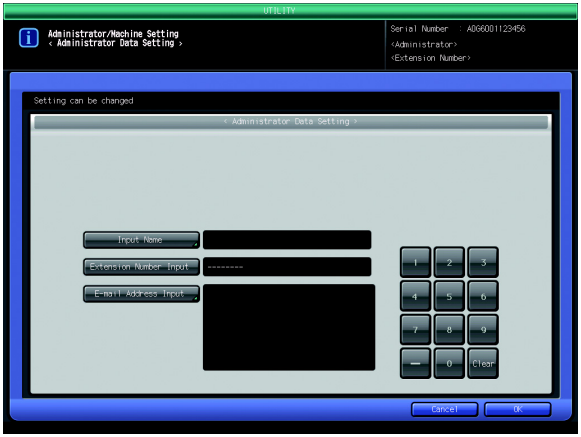
6.3.1 01 Register Administrator

Use this function to register the administrator name, extension number, and E-mail address to be displayed on the left side of the Utility Menu Screen.

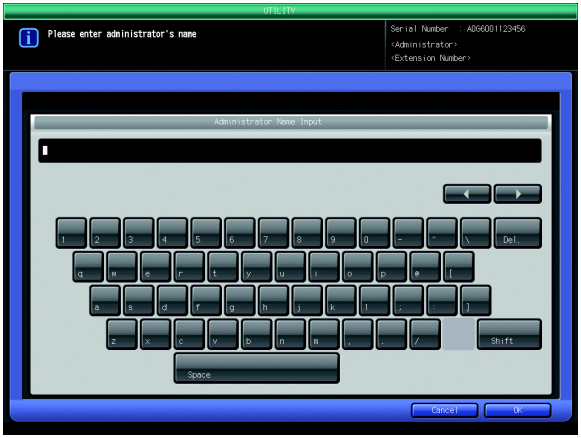
Procedure

1 Touch [02 Admin./Machine Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [01 Register Administrator].

2 Enter the administrator name.



– Touch [Input Name] to display the Administrator Name Input Screen.
Use the touch panel keyboard to register the administrator name.
Twenty characters including a hyphen (-) can be entered.



3 Touch OK to complete the setting, or touch Cancel to cancel the setting.

In either case, the previous screen will be restored.

4 Enter the extension number.

– Touch [Extension Number Input] to highlight it, then enter the extension number of the administrator using the touch panel keypad. Eight-digit number including hyphen (-) can be entered.
When the extension number is below eight digits, enter hyphens to make it eight. If a hyphen is entered as the first number, it will be displayed as a space on the Help Screen. The entered number will be displayed from the last digit and shift leftward as the next number is entered.

5 Enter the E-mail address.

– Touch [E-mail Address Input] to display the E-mail Address Input Screen.
Use the touch panel keyboard to register the E-mail address of the administrator.

6 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Admin./Machine Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

6.4 03 User Auth./ Account Track

Specify user authentication and account track settings in order to control the use of this machine.

User authentication settings are specified to manage individuals, and account track settings are specified to manage groups and multiple users.

By specifying both user authentication and account track settings, the number of prints made by each account can be managed for each individual user.



Note

A total of 1,000 users and accounts can be registered on this machine.

If an authentication mode is set, the authentication screen is displayed while this machine is in standby. In order to use this machine when user authentication or account track settings are specified, the user name and password must be entered.

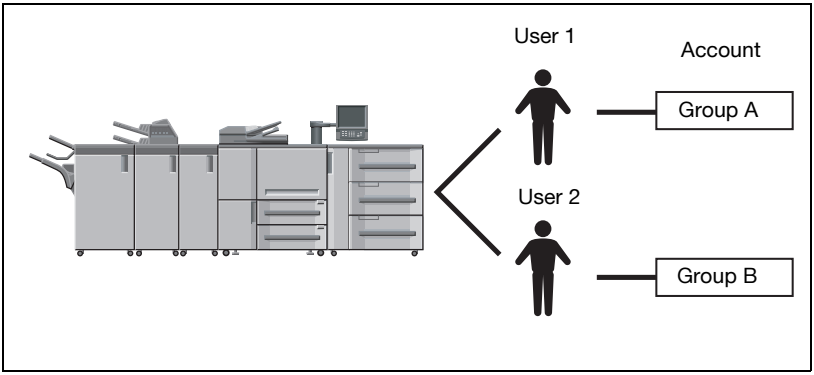
User authentication and account track can be specified without synchronizing.

User authentication and account track

User authentication and account track can be used to specify the following settings.

- User Authentication
  - Limits on the available functions (copy operations, scanning operations, storing data on HDD, recalling stored data)
  - Counters for printing/scanning by each user
- Account Track
  - Counters for printing/scanning from each account

When user authentication and account track are synchronized

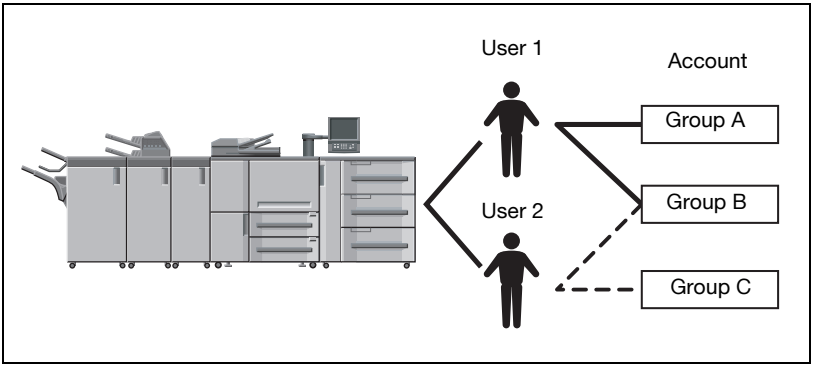


This setup is used when the machine is used by multiple departments and the use by each employee is managed by each department. With this setup, statistics can be maintained on each employee (each user) and on each department (each account).

To manage the use of this machine in this way, specify the following authentication settings.

Setting items on Authentication Setting Screen	Required setting
User Authentication	Select “On” (“On (MFP)” for PSWC).
Account Authentication	Select “On”, and then specify the account name and password.
Synchronize User/Account Track	Select “On” (“Synchronize” for PSWC).
Account Name Input	Select an account name if “On (MFP)” was selected.

When user authentication and account track are used separately

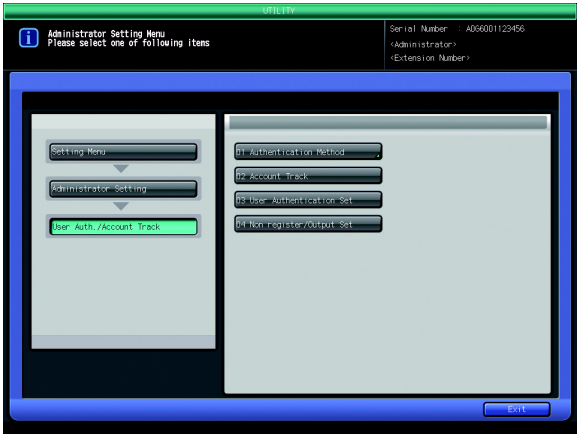


This setup is used when the machine is used by multiple employees with each employee performing multiple duties, which are to be totaled separately. With this setup, statistics can be maintained for each employee (each user) and on each duty of the employee (each account). In addition, totals can be maintained on each employee (each user) and each duty (each account) even if the same duty is performed by two different employees.

To manage the use of this machine in this way, specify the following authentication settings.

Setting items on Authentication Setting Screen	Required setting
User Authentication	Select “On” (“On (MFP)” for PSWC).
Account Authentication	Select “On”, and then specify the account name and password.
Synchronize User/Account Track	Select “Off” (“Do Not Synchronize” for PSWC).

User Auth./ Account Track Screen



6.4.1 01 Authentication Method - 01 Authentication Setting

Establish the authentication settings by combining the following six elements.

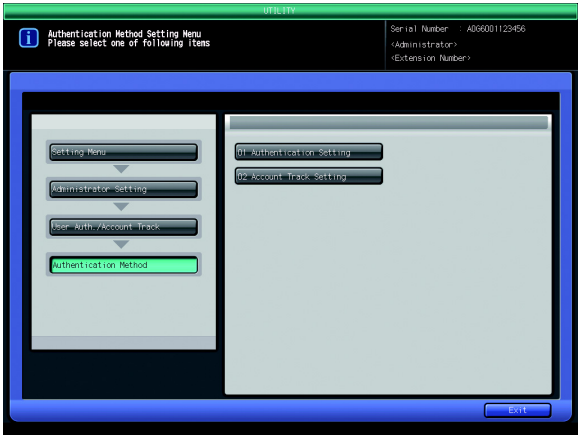
- User Authentication:
  Enter the user name and the user password.
- Account Authentication:
  Enter the account password.
- Account Name Input:
  Enter the account name. (Account Name Input cannot be selected when Account Authentication is set to Off.)
- Synchronize User/Account Track:
  When User Authentication and Account Authentication are set to On and Synchronize User/Account Track is set to On, only the user authentication will be required.
- Password Input Timing:
  Set the timing of entering the password.
- Account Distribute Number:
  Enter the number of accounts. The total number of authentication to be distributed is 1,000 for both user and account. The remaining number from which the number of account is subtracted from 1,000 will be the users.

Note

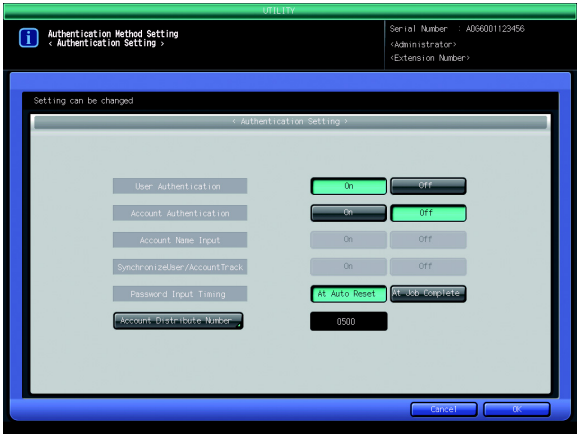
It is recommended to distribute authentication for both the user and the account, otherwise either party cannot be assigned authentication if it is distributed to only one party.

Procedure

1 Touch [03 User Auth./ Account Track] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [01 Authentication Method] and [01 User Authentication] in sequence.

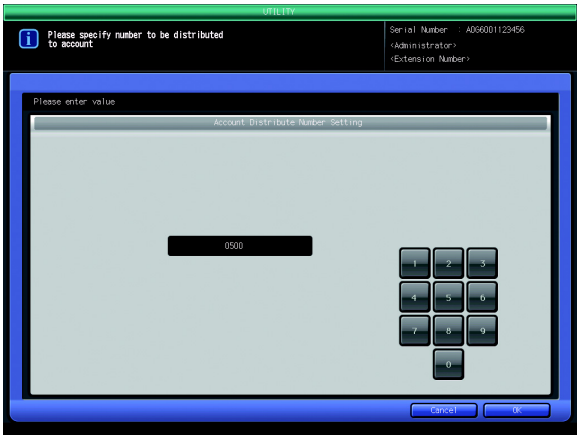


2 Select [On] or [Off] on the right side of User Authentication, Account Authentication, Account Name Input, and Synchronize User/Account Track.



3 Touch [At Auto Reset] or [At JOB Complete] on the right side of Password Input Timing to select it.

4 Touch [Account Distribute Number] to display the touch screen keypad, then enter the number to distribute.
Touch [OK] to continue.



5 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Authentication Method Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

6.4.2 01 Authentication Method - 02 Account Track Setting

Use this function to set Copy/Printer or Scan jobs managed by the account, and select the machine condition in which the machine stops due to reaching the copy limit.

...

Note

If Copier/Printer or Scan is set to Off when Account Authentication is set to On on the Authentication Setting Screen, the account password is not required for authentication. In this case, job count and copy limit count will be suspended.

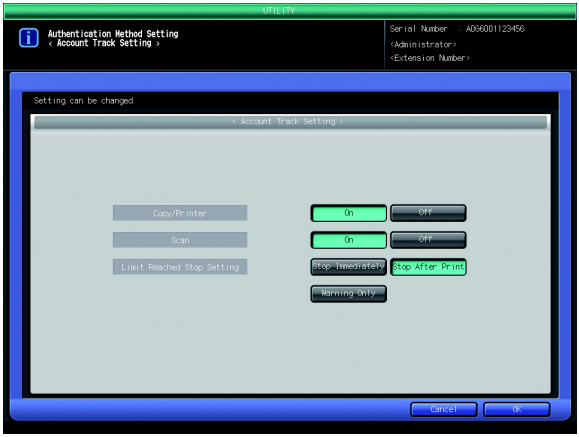
If [Stop Immediately] of Limit Reached Stop Setting is selected, a job will be immediately suspended as soon as the copy limit is reached. In this case, copying conditions, output data, and scanned data will not be retained. In order to continue the job with the same account password, change the limit count specified for the account password or reset the count.

When [Stop After Print] is selected, the machine stops after completing the job as reaching the copy limit. The message “Copy limit reached” is displayed, and the machine stops its operation.
When [Warning Only] is selected, the message “Copy limit reached” is displayed as reaching the copy limit, and the machine is still available for the next job.

Procedure

1 Touch [03 User Auth./ Account Track] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [01 Authentication Method] and [02 Account Track Setting] in sequence.

2 Touch [On] or [Off] on the right side of Copy/Printer and Scan to select for each.



3 Touch [Stop Immediately], [Stop After Print], or [Warning Only] on the right side of Limit Reached Stop Setting to select it.

4 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Authentication Method Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

6.4.3 02 Account Track

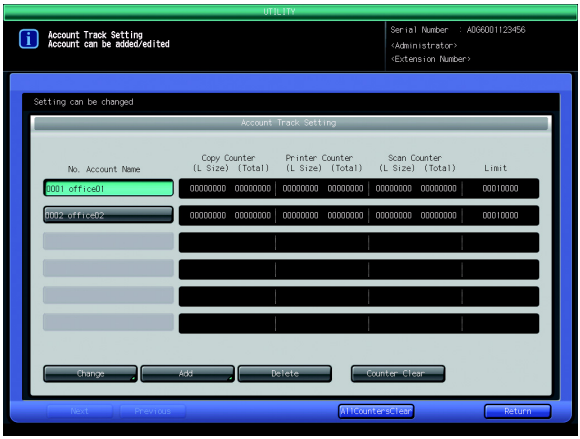
Use this function to assign a number to each account, and set an account name, password and limit count to each number. The registered account data will be listed on the screen. Select the account data from the list to change, reset or delete the contents.

Procedure

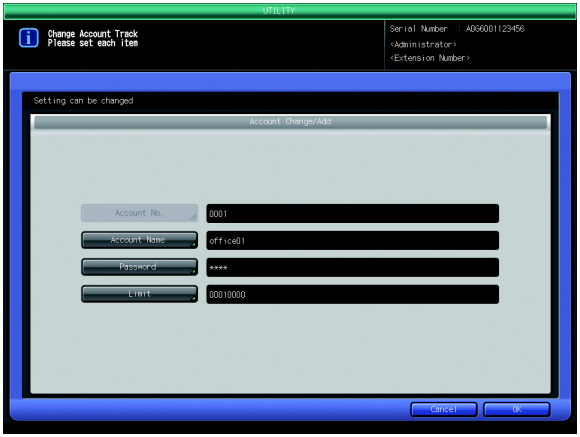
1 Touch [03 User Auth./ Account Track] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [02 Account Track].

2 Follow the instructions below to change an account data.

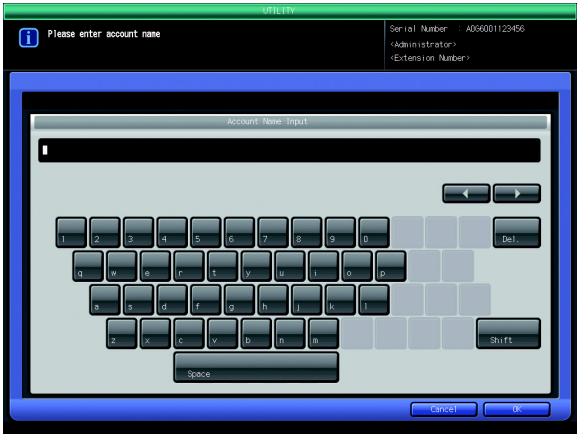
– Touch [Next]/[Previous] to display the account name to be changed, then touch the key to highlight it.



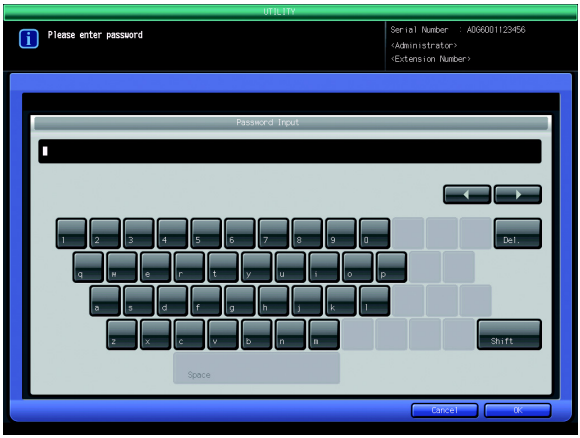
– Touch [Change] to display the Change Account Track Screen.



– Touch the desired item to be changed to display the input screen.



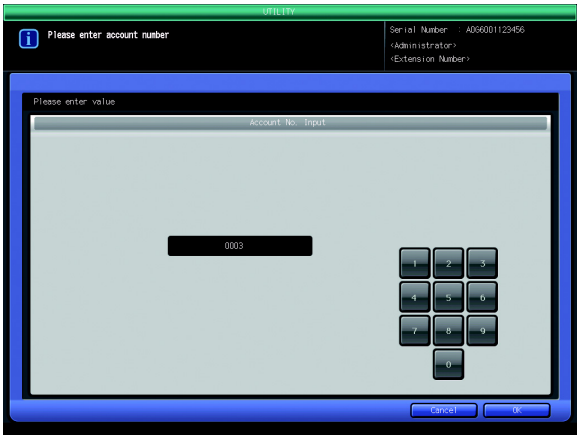
– Enter the new data using the touch screen keyboard/keypad.
For details on entering texts in the input screen, see the appendix.
You may enter eight digits for the password, eight characters for the account name, and eight digits for the copy limit.



– Touch [OK] to complete the entry.
If changed password or account name is duplicated, a confirmation message will be displayed.
When the account name is specified, the duplication of account name is not possible and the change of password is possible.
When account name is not specified, the duplication of account name is not possible.

3 Follow the instructions below to add a new account data.

- Touch [Add] on the Account Track Setting Screen to display the Add Account Track Screen.
- Touch [Account No.] to display the touch panel keypad. Enter the account number, then touch [OK]. You may enter four digits for the account number.



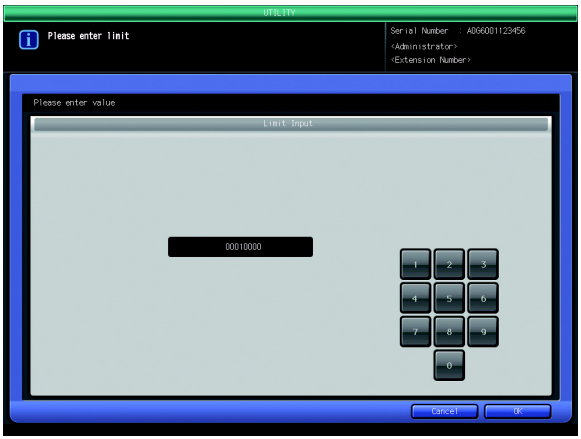
- Touch [Account Name] to display the input screen. Enter the account name and touch [OK]. You may enter eight characters for the account name.



– Touch [Password] to display the input screen. Enter the password and touch [OK]. You may enter eight digits for the password.



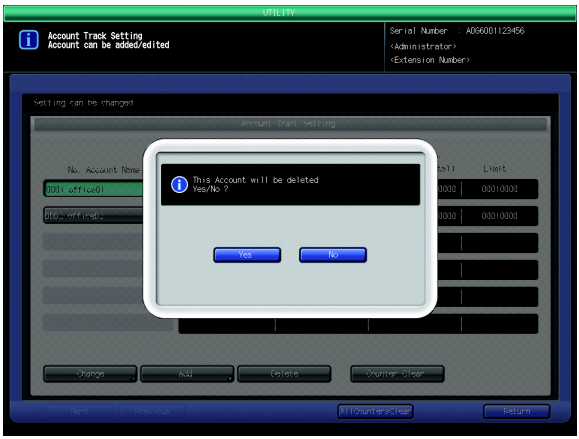
– Touch [Limit] to display the touch panel keypad. Enter the copy limit value and touch [OK]. You may enter eight digits for the copy limit.



– Touch [OK] to complete the entry.
If added password or account name is duplicated, a confirmation message will be displayed.
When the account name is specified, the duplication of account name is not possible and the change of password is possible.
When account name is not specified, the duplication of account name is not possible.

4 Follow the instructions below to delete the account data.

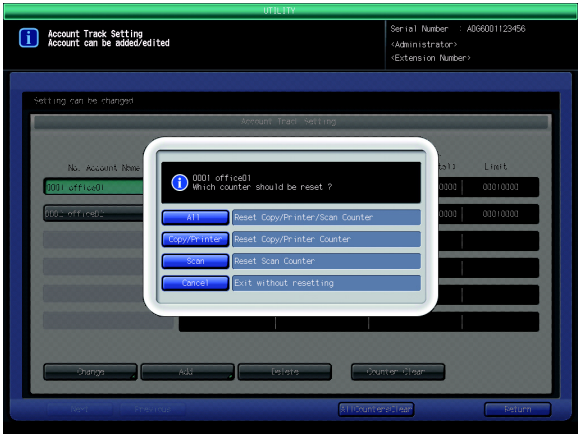
– Touch [Next]/[Previous] to display the account name to be deleted, then touch the key to highlight it.
– Touch [Delete]. The confirmation popup menu will appear.
– Touch [Yes] to delete, or touch [No] to cancel.



5 Follow the instructions below to reset the copy counter.

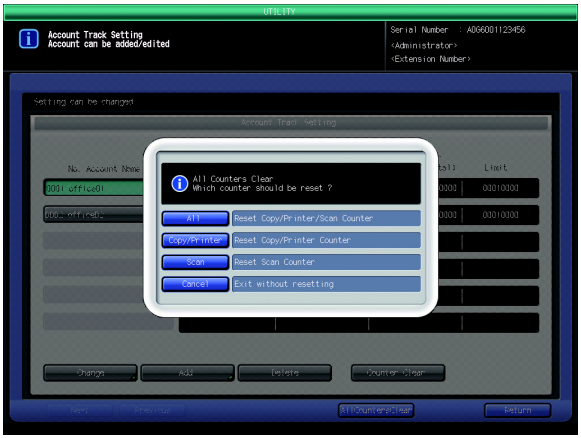
– Touch [Next]/[Previous] to display the account name to be reset, then touch the key to highlight it.
– Touch [Counter Clear]. The confirmation popup menu will appear.

– Touch the desired key to reset. Touch [Cancel] to cancel the operation.



6 Follow the instructions below to reset all counters.

– Touch [All Counters Clear]. The confirmation popup menu will appear.
– Touch the desired key to reset. Touch [Cancel] to cancel the operation.



7 Touch [Return] to return to the User Auth./ Account Track Screen.

6.4.4 03 User Authentication Setting

Use this function to assign a number to each user, and set a user name, password and limit count to each number. The registered user data is listed on the screen. Select the user data from the list, and change, reset or delete the data.

Detail

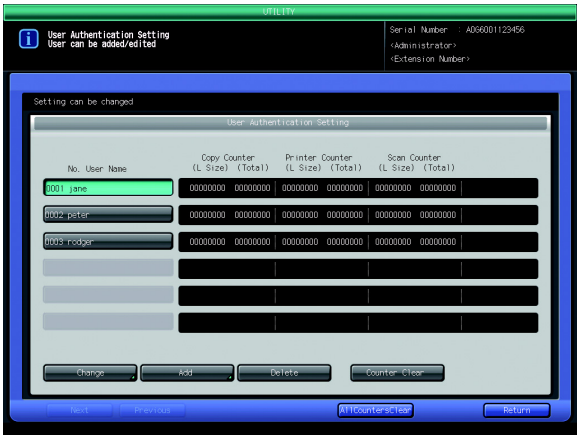
When Synchronize User/Account Track of the Authentication Method settings is set to On, Account Name can be specified.

Procedure

1 Touch [03 User Auth./ Account Track] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [03 User Authentication Set].

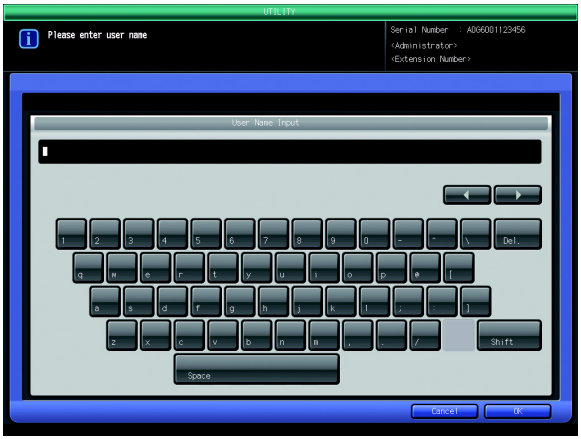
2 Follow the instructions below to change a user data.

– Touch [Next]/[Previous] to display the user name to be changed, then touch the key to highlight it.



– Touch [Change] to display the Change Registered User Screen.

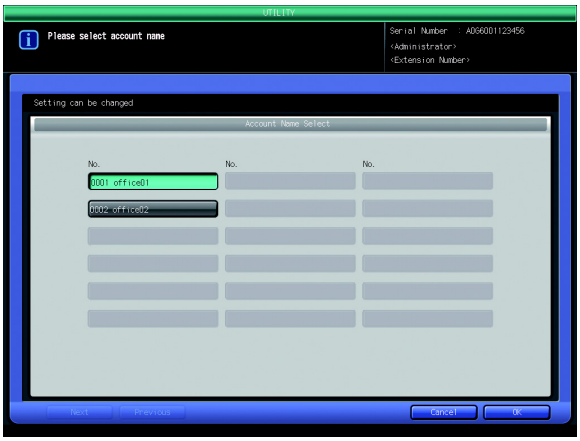
– Touch [User Name] to display the input screen, enter the user name and touch [OK]. You may enter 64 letters for the user name. For the details on entering texts in the input screen, see the appendix.



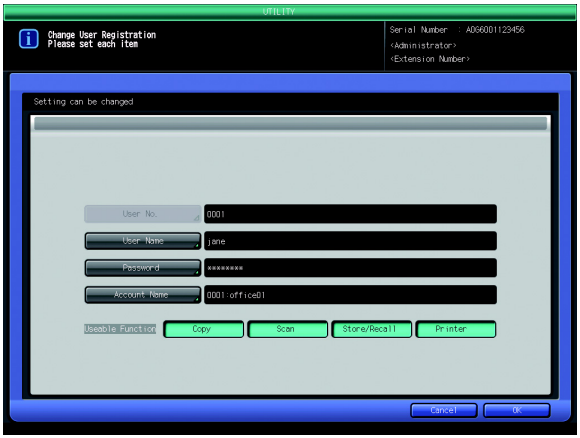
– Touch [Password] to display the input screen. Enter the password and touch [OK]. You may enter 64 digits for the password.



– Touch [Account Name] to display the screen to select an account belong to.
The account name can be specified when Synchronize User/Account Track of the Authentication Method settings is set to On.
Use [Next]/[Previous] to display the desired account name, touch to highlight it, then touch [OK].



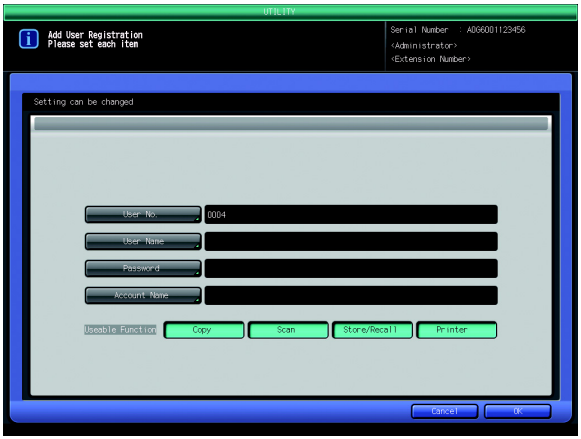
– Touch any key on the right side of Useable Function to select the job necessary to authenticate a newly registered user.



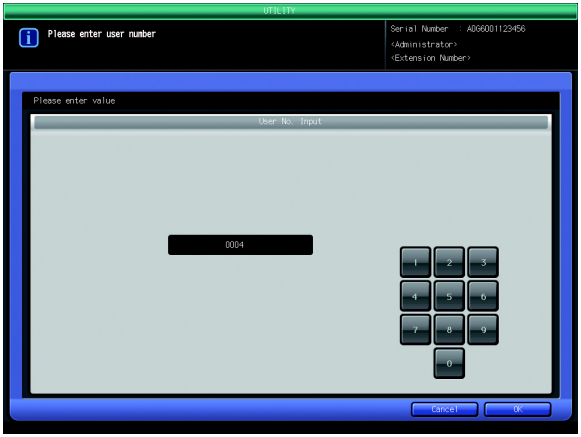
Touch [OK] to complete the setting.

3 Follow the instructions below to add a new user data.

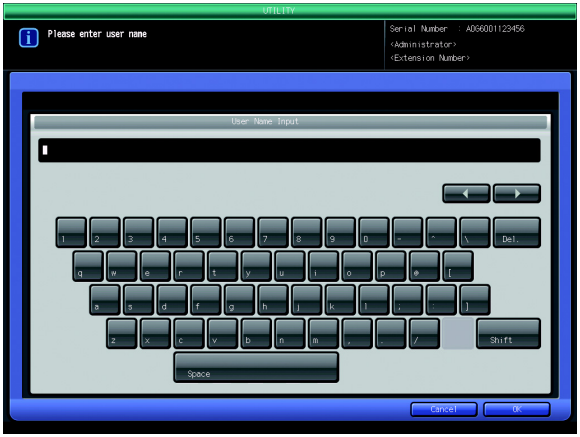
– Touch [Add] to display the Add New User Screen.



– Touch [User Number] to display the touch panel keypad.
– Enter the user number and touch [OK]. You may enter four digits for the user number.



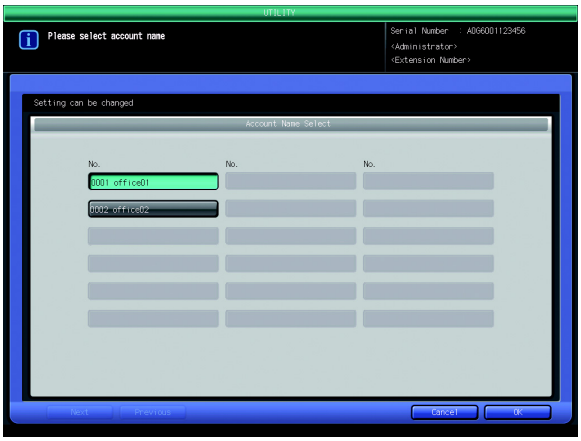
– Touch [User Name] to display the input screen. Enter the user name and touch [OK]. You may enter 64 letters for the user name.



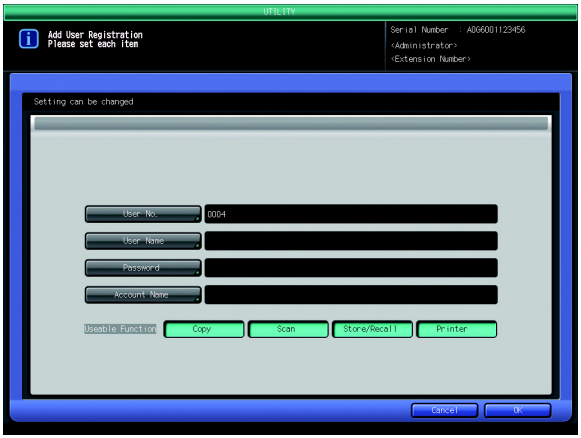
– Touch [Password] to display the input screen. Enter the password and touch [OK]. You may enter 64 digits for the password.



– Touch [Account Name] to display the screen to select an account belong to.
The account name can be specified when Synchronize User/Account Track of the Authentication Method settings is set to On.
Use [Next]/[Previous] to display the desired account name, touch to highlight it, then touch [OK].

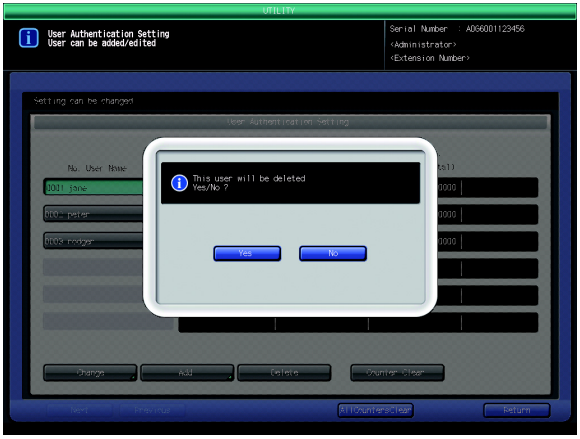


– Touch the desired key on the right side of [Useable Function] to select the job necessary to authenticate a newly registered user.
– Touch [OK] to complete the setting.



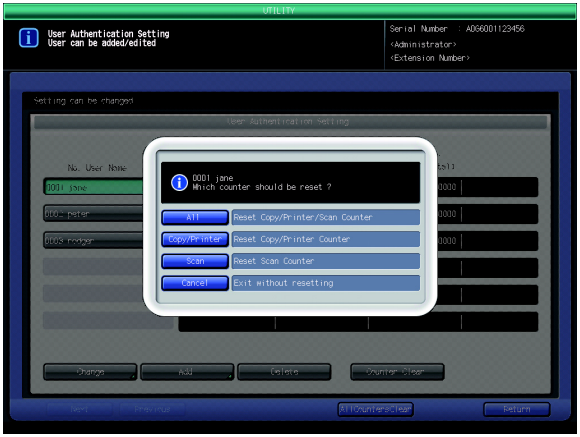
4 Follow the instructions below to delete the user data.

- Touch [Next]/[Previous] to display the user name to be deleted, then touch the key to highlight it.
- Touch [Delete]. The confirmation popup menu will appear.
- Touch [Yes] to delete, or touch [No] to cancel.



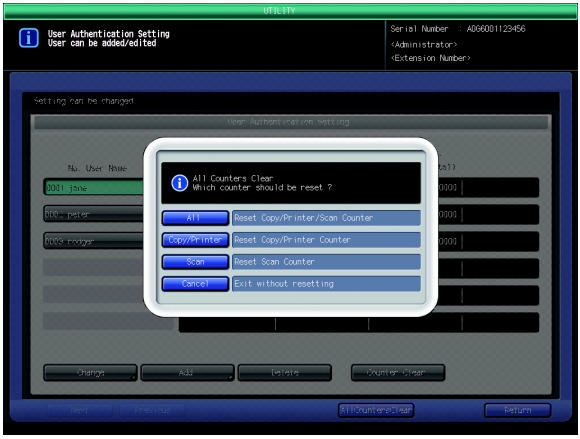
5 Follow the instructions below to reset the user count.

- Touch [Next]/[Previous] to display the user name to reset the count, then touch the key to highlight it.
- Touch [Counter Clear]. The confirmation popup menu will appear.
- Touch the desired key to reset. Touch [Cancel] to cancel the operation.



6 Follow the instructions below to reset all counters.

– Touch [All Counters Clear]. The confirmation popup menu will appear.
– Touch the desired key to reset. Touch [Cancel] to cancel the operation.



7 Touch [Return] to return to the User Auth./ Account Track Screen.

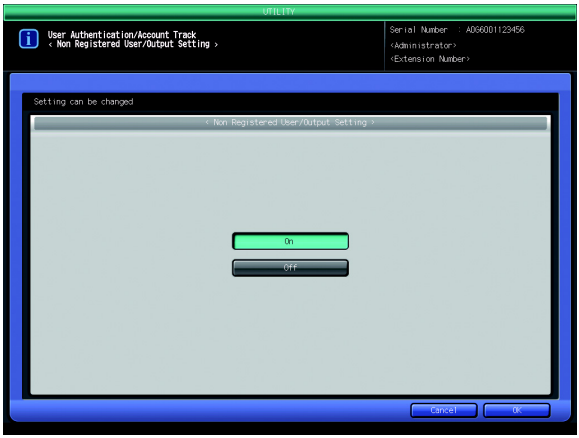
6.4.5 04 Non Registered User/Output Setting

Use this function to limit the output setting available for an unregistered user or account.
When this function is set to On, only the initial output setting can be used to a job performed while user authentication and/or account authentication is Off.

Procedure

1 Touch [03 User Auth./ Account Track] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [04 Non Register/Output Set].

2 Touch [On] to activate, or touch [Off] to deactivate this function.

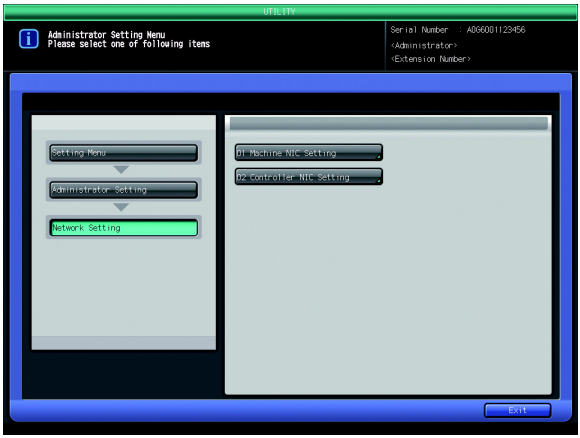


3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The User Auth./ Account Track Screen will be restored.

6.5 04 Network Setting

Network Setting Screen



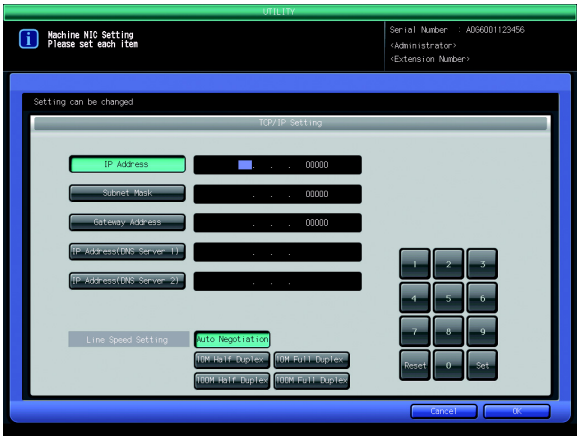
6.5.1 01 Machine NIC Setting - 01 TCP/IP Setting

Control the NIC settings such as the IP address and line speed of the machine.

Procedure

1 Touch [04 Network Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [01 Machine NIC Setting] and [01 TCP/IP Setting] in sequence.

2 Specify the following items.
Use the touch panel keypad to enter numeric values. Touching [Set] will shift the cursor to the next setting area. Continue in this manner.



- IP Address
  Enter the IP address of the machine.
- Subnet Mask
  Enter the subnet mask.
- Gateway Address
  Enter the gateway address.
- IP Address (DNS Server 1/2)
  Enter the IP address (DNS Server).
- Line Speed Setting
  Specify the line speed of the network. Choose from the options provided.

3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Machine NIC Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

6.5.2 01 Machine NIC Setting - 02 http communication setting

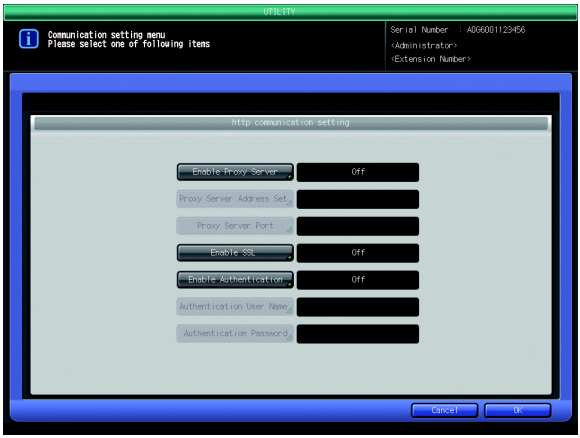
Specify the http communication settings.

Procedure

1 Touch [04 Network Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [01 Machine NIC Setting] and [02 http communication setting] in sequence.

2 Specify the following items.

– When using Proxy server, Select [On] in [Enable Proxy Server], then enter [Proxy Server Address Set] and [Proxy Server Port].



– When using SSL, Select [On] in [Enable SSL].

– When using Authentication, Select [On] in [Enable Authentication], then enter [Authentication User Name] and [Authentication Password].

3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Machine NIC Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

6.5.3 01 Machine NIC Setting - 03 E-mail initial setting

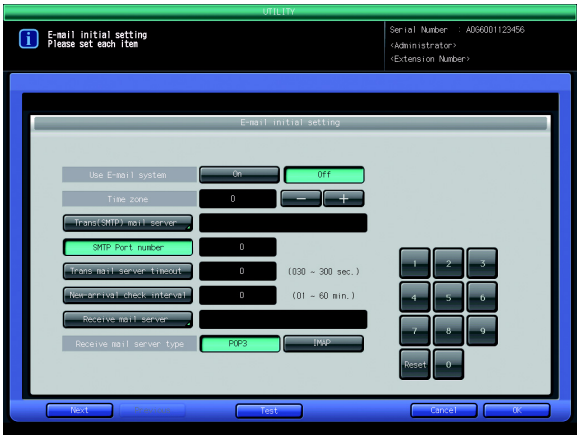
Specify the initial settings for e-mail.

Procedure

1 Touch [04 Network Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [01 Machine NIC Setting] and [03 E-mail initial setting] in sequence.

2 Specify the following items.

- Enter numeric values using the touch panel keypad.
- Touch [Trans (SMTP) mail server] or [Receive mail server] to enter the IP address. When using the DNS server, the host name can also be entered. (Full path, up to 128 characters)
- If the Name resolution is not in operation, enter the IP address as usual.
- When using the Security Strengthen mode, only the IP address can be entered.



3 When the desired items are entered, touch [Test], then [Yes] on the popup menu to check that the setting has been made properly.

4 Touch [OK] to complete the setting.

- To cancel the change, touch [Cancel].

In either case, the Network Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

5 If further changes are required, touch the desired key.

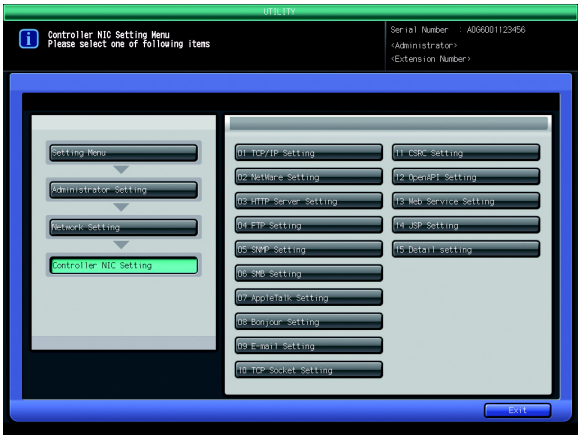
6.5.4 02 Controller NIC Setting

Specify the controller settings. Various default settings or network setting can be customized as required.

Procedure

1 Touch [04 Network Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [02 Controller NIC Setting].

2 Specify the desired item on the Controller NIC Setting Menu Screen.



- For details of each setting item, see the following “List of the Network Settings”.
- When the message to turn off/on the main power switch is displayed after a setting change is made, be sure to turn off then on the main power switch.

3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Machine NIC Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

6.5.5 List of IP NIC Setting

Specify the controller settings. Various default settings or network settings can be customized as required.
List of the Network Settings

List of the Controller NIC Settings

Setting item	Setting options (Default is highlighted)
01 TCP/IP Setting	
<TCP/IP Setting>	
TCP/IP Setting	***Enable***/ Disable
IP Address Set Method	***Direct Setting***/ Auto Setting[*1]
Auto Setting	
DHCP Setting	***Enable***/ Disable
BOOTP Setting	***Enable***/ Disable
ARP/PING Setting	***Enable***/ Disable
AUTO IP Setting	***Enable***/ Disable
Direct Setting	
IP Address	0.0.0.0 (0–255)
Subnet Mask	0.0.0.0 (0–255)
Default Gateway	***0.0.0.0*** (0–255)
IPv6 Setting	
IPv6 Setting	***Enable***/ Disable[*2]
IPv6 Auto Setting	***Enable***/ Disable[*3]
Global Address	0000: 0000: 0000: 0000: 0000: 0000: 0000: 0000[*4] (1–39 bytes)
Prefix Length	0–128 (0)
Link Local Address	fe 80: :XXXX [*5]
Gateway Address	0000: 0000: 0000: 0000: 0000: 0000: 0000: 0000[*6] (1–39 bytes)
DNS Server Setting	
DNS Server Auto Setting	***Enable***/ Disable
Primary DNS Server	IPv4/ IPv6 ***0.0.0.0*** (0–255) 0: 0: 0: 0: 0: 0: 0: 0 (1–39 byte)
Secondary DNS Server 1	IPv4/ IPv6 ***0.0.0.0*** (0–255) 0: 0: 0: 0: 0: 0: 0: 0 (1–39 byte)

Setting item	Setting options (Default is highlighted)
Secondary DNS Server 2	IPv4/ IPv6 ***0.0.0.0*** (0–255) 0: 0: 0: 0: 0: 0: 0: 0 (1–39 byte)
Dynamic DNS Setting	Enable/ ***Disable***
Host Name	***KMBT + the last 6 digits of MAC address*** Max. 63 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.
DNS Domain Name Setting	
DNS Domain Auto Obtain	***Enable***/ Disable
DNS Default Domain Name	Max. 251 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.*7
DNS Default Domain Name 1	Max. 251 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.*7
DNS Default Domain Name 2	Max. 251 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.*7
DNS Default Domain Name 3	Max. 251 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.*7
RAW port	
RAW 1 port	1–65535 (***9100***) ***Enable***/ Disable*8
RAW 2 port	1–65535 (***9112***) ***Enable***/ Disable*8
RAW 3 port	1–65535 (***9113***) ***Enable***/ Disable*8
RAW 4 port	1–65535 (***9114***) ***Enable***/ Disable*8
RAW 5 port	1–65535 (***9115***) ***Enable***/ Disable*8
RAW 6 port	1–65535 (***9116***) ***Enable***/ Disable*8
IP Filtering	
Permission Setting	Enable/ ***Disable*** Range 1: Start 0.0.0.0 - End 0.0.0.0 (0–255)*9 Range 2: Start 0.0.0.0 - End 0.0.0.0 (0–255) Range 3: Start 0.0.0.0 - End 0.0.0.0 (0–255) Range 4: Start 0.0.0.0 - End 0.0.0.0 (0–255) Range 5: Start 0.0.0.0 - End 0.0.0.0 (0–255)

Setting item	Setting options (Default is highlighted)
Denial Setting	Enable/ ***Disable*** Range 1: Start 0.0.0.0 - End 0.0.0.0 (0–255)*9 Range 2: Start 0.0.0.0 - End 0.0.0.0 (0–255) Range 3: Start 0.0.0.0 - End 0.0.0.0 (0–255) Range 4: Start 0.0.0.0 - End 0.0.0.0 (0–255) Range 5: Start 0.0.0.0 - End 0.0.0.0 (0–255)
IPsec Setting	Permit/ ***Prohibit***
IPsec Setting/IKE Setting	
Group 1–Group 4 Encryption Algorithm	DES CBC/ 3DES CBC/ ***Disable***
Group 1–Group 4 Authentication Algorithm	MD5/ SHA-1/ ***Disable***
Key Valid Time	80–604800 (***28800***) (sec.)
Diffie-Hellman Group	Group 1/ ***Group 2***
IPsec Setting/IPsec SA Setting	
Group 1–Group 8 Security Protocol	AH/ ESP/ ESP AH/ ***Disable****12
Group 1–Group 8 ESP Encryption Algorithm	DES CBC/ 3DES CBC/ AES CBC/ NULL/ ***Disable***
Group 1–Group 8 EPS Authentic Algorithm	MD5/ SHA-1/ ***Disable***
Group 1–Group 8 AH Authentic Algorithm	MD5/ SHA-1/ ***Disable***
Destroy Time after Set up	120–604800 (***3600***) (sec.)
IPsec Set/Register Communication Address	
Group 1–Group 10 Encapsulation Mode	Tunnel Mode/ Transport/ ***Disable****12
Group 1–Group 10 IP Address	IPv4/ IPv6 0.0.0.0 (0–255) 0: 0: 0: 0: 0: 0: 0: 0 (1–39 bytes)
Group 1–Group 10 Pre-Shared Key	Max. 64 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.
Group 1–Group 10 Perfect Forward Secrecy	Enable/ ***Disable***
02 NetWare Setting	
<NetWare Print Setting>	
IPX Setting	Enable/ ***Disable***
Ethernet Frame Type	***Auto Detect***/ 802.2/ 802.3/ Ethernet II/ 802.3SNAP
Netware Print Mode	***Disable***/ Pserver/ Nprinter/Rprinter

Setting item	Setting options (Default is highlighted)
Nprinter/Rprinter Setting	
Print Server Name	***KMBT + the last 6 digits of MAC address*** Max. 63 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.
Printer Number	0–255 (***255***)
Pserver Setting	
Print Server Name	***KMBT + the last 6 digits of MAC address*** Max. 63 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.
Print Server Password	Max. 63 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.
Polling Interval	1–65535 (***1***) (sec.)
Bindery/NDS Setting	***NDS***/ Bindery/NDS
File Server Name	Max. 47 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.
NDS Context Name	Max. 191 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.
NDS Tree Name	Max. 63 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.
03 HTTP Server Setting	
<HTTP Server Setting>	
HTTP Server Setting	***Enable***/ Disable
PSWC Setting	***Enable***/ Disable
IPP Setting	
IPP Setting	***Enable***/ Disable
IPP Job Accept	***Enable***/ Disable
<HTTP Server Setting/IPP Setting>	
Operation Support Number	
Print Job	***Enable***/ Disable[*8]
Valid Job	***Enable***/ Disable[*8]
Cancel Job	***Enable***/ Disable[*8]
Open Job Attributes	***Enable***/ Disable[*8]
Open Job	***Enable***/ Disable[*8]
Open Printer Attributes	***Enable***/ Disable[*8]
Printer Information	
Printer Name	Max. 127 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.
Printer Location	Max. 127 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.

Setting item			Setting options (Default is highlighted)
		Printer Information	Max. 127 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.
		Printer URI	Cannot be changed.
	IPP Authentication Setting		
		IPP Auth. Setting	***Enable***/ Disable
		Authentication Method	***requesting-user-name***/ basic/ digest
		User Name	***user*** Max. 20 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.
		Password	***pass*** Max. 20 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.
		realm	***IPP*** Max. 127 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.
04 FTP Setting			
<FTP Setting>			
	FTP Server Setting		***Enable***/ Disable
	FTP Send Setting		
		FTP Send Setting	***Enable***/ Disable
		Proxy Server Address	IPv4 0.0.0.0 (0–255) IPv6 0: 0: 0: 0: 0: 0: 0: 0 (1–39 bytes) Host Name Max. 253 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.*7
		Proxy Server Port Number	1–65535 (***21***)
		PASV Mode	Enable/ ***Disable***
		Connection Time Out Time	5–300 (***60***) (sec.)
		Port Number	1–65535 (***21***)
05 SNMP Setting			
<SNMP Setting>			
	SNMP Setting		
		SNMP Setting	***Enable***/ Disable
		SNMPv1/v2c (IP)	***Enable***/ Disable*8
		SNMPv3 (IP)	***Enable***/ Disable*8
		SNMPv1 (IPX)	***Enable***/ Disable*8
	UDP Port Number		
		UDP Port Number	1–65535 (***161***)

Setting item	Setting options (Default is highlighted)
<SNMP Setting/ SNMPv1/v2c Setting>	
Read Community Name Setting	
Read Community Name	***public*** Max. 15 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.
Write Community Name Setting	
Write Permission Setting	***Permit***/ Prohibit*8
Write Community Name	***private*** Max. 15 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.
<SNMP Setting/SNMPv3 Setting>	
Context Name Setting	
Context Name	Max. 63 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.
Discovery User Name Setting	
Discovery User Permit Set	***Permit***/ Prohibit*8
Discovery User Name	***public*** Max. 32 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.*11
Read User Name Setting	
Read User Name	Max. 32 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.*11
Security Level	No Admission/ auth-password/ ***auth-password/priv-password***
<SNMP/SNMPv3/Read user Name Setting>	
Password Setting	
Read User auth-Password	***AuthPassword*** 8 to 32 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.
Read User priv-Password	***PrivPassword*** 8 to 32 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.
<SNMP/SNMPv3/Write User Name Setting>	
Write User auth-Password	
Write User Name	***restrict*** Max. 32 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.*11
Security Level	No Admission/ auth-password/ ***auth-password/priv-password***
Password Setting	
Write User auth-Password	8 to 32 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used. ***MAC Address*** (Colons ":" excluded)

Setting item	Setting options (Default is highlighted)
Write User priv-Password	8 to 32 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used. ***MAC Address*** (Colons ":" excluded)
<SNMP Setting>	
TRAP Permission Setting	Permit/ ***Prohibit***
TRAP setting (auth. failure)	Enable/ ***Disable***
06 SMB Setting	
<SMB Setting>	
SMB Setting	
SMB Send Setting	***Enable***/ Disable
NTLM Setting	***NTLMv1***/ NTLMv2/ NTLMv1/NTLMv2
Print Setting	
Print Setting	***Enable***/ Disable
NetBIOS Name	***KMBT + the last 6 digits of MAC address*** Max. 15 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.
Print Service Name	***PRO_1200***/ ***PRO_1051*** Max. 12 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.
Work Group	***WORKGROUP*** Max. 15 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.
<SMB/WINS Setting>	
WINS Setting	
WINS Setting	***Permit***/ Prohibit
WINS Auto Setting	***Permit***/ Prohibit
WINS Server Address	
WINS Server Address 1	0.0.0.0 (0–255)
WINS Server Address 2	0.0.0.0 (0–255)
Node Type Setting	B Node/ P Node/ M Node/ ***H Node***
07 AppleTalk Setting	
<AppleTalk Setting>	
AppleTalk Setting	
AppleTalk Setting	Permit/ ***Prohibit***
Printer Name	***KMBT + the last 6 digits of MAC address*** Max. 31 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.
Zone Name	***Asterisks (*)*** Max. 31 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.

Setting item	Setting options (Default is highlighted)
Current Zone	Cannot be changed.
08 Bonjour Setting	
<Bonjour Setting>	
Bonjour Setting	
Bonjour Setting	***Permit***/ Prohibit
Bonjour Name	Max. 63 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.
09 E-mail Setting	
<E-mail Setting>	
SMTP Setting	
SMTP Setting	***Enable***/ Disable
SMTP Server Address	***IPv4*** 0.0.0.0 (0–255) IPv6 0: 0: 0: 0: 0: 0: 0: 0 (1–39 bytes) Host Name Max. 253 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.*7
SSL Setting	Enable/ ***Disable***
Port Number	1–65535 (***25***)
Port Number (SSL)	1–65535 (***465***)
Connection Time Out Time	30/ ***60***/ 90/ 120/ 150/ 180/ 210/ 240/ 270/ 300 (sec.)
Binary Division	Enable/ ***Disable***
Divided Mail Size	100–15000 (***500***) (step: 100) (Kbyte)
Server Quantity	0–100 (***0***) (Mbyte) (0 = unlimited)
Authentication Setting	
POP Before SMTP	Enable/ ***Disable***
SMTP Authentication	Enable/ ***Disable***
POP Before SMTP Time	
POP Before SMTP Time	0–60 (***0***) (sec.)
SMTP Authentication Setting	
User ID	Max. 255 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.
Password	Max. 128 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.
realm	Max. 255 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.

Setting item	Setting options (Default is highlighted)
POP Setting	
POP Server Address	IPv4 0.0.0.0 (0–255) IPv6 0: 0: 0: 0: 0: 0: 0: 0 (1–39 bytes) Host Name Max. 253 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.[7]
Login name	Max. 63 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.
Password	Max. 15 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.
APOP Authentication	Enable/ ***Disable***
SSL Setting	Enable/ ***Disable***
Port Number	1–65535 (***110***)
Port Number (SSL)	1–65535 (***995***)
Connection Time Out Time	30/ ***60***/ 90/ 120/ 150/ 180/ 210/ 240/ 270/ 300 (sec.)
<Register E-mail Subject>	
E-mail Default Select	
Title of Register No.1 to No.5	***Register No.1*** Max. 64 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.
<Register E-mail Sentence>	
E-mail Default Select	
Text of Register No.1 to No.5	***Register No.1*** Max. 256 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.
10 TCP Socket Setting	
<TCP Socket Setting>	
TCP Socket Setting	
TCP Socket Setting	***Enable***/ Disable
Port Number	1–65535 (***59158***)
SSL Setting	Enable/ ***Disable***
Port Number (SSL)	1–65535 (***59159***)
TCP Socket (ASCII Mode)	
TCP Socket (ASCII Mode)	***Enable***/ Disable
Port Number (ACSII Mode)	1024–65535 (***59160***)
11 CSRC Setting	
<CSRC Send Setting>	
CSRC Send Setting	***Enable***/ Disable

Setting item	Setting options (Default is highlighted)
SMTP server address	IPv4 0.0.0.0 (0–255) IPv6 0: 0: 0: 0: 0: 0: 0: 0 (1–39 bytes) Host Name Max. 253 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.*7
Port Number	1–65535 (***25***)
Admin. From Address	Max. 127 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.*7
Connection time out	30/ ***60***/ 90/ 120/ 150/ 180/ 210/ 240/ 270/ 300 (sec.)
Authentication setting	
POP Before SMTP	Enable/ ***Disable***
Authentication setting	Enable/ ***Disable***
POP Before SMTP time	0–60 (***0***) (sec.)
SMTP Authentication Setting	
User ID	Max. 255 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.
Password	Max. 128 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.
realm	Max. 255 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.
<CSRC Receive Setting>	
CSRC Receive Setting	
CSRC Receive Setting	***Enable***/ Disable
POP server address	IPv4 0.0.0.0 (0–255) IPv6 0: 0: 0: 0: 0: 0: 0: 0 (1–39 bytes) Host Name Max. 253 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.*7
Login name	Max. 63 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.
Password	Max. 15 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.
APOP authentication	Enable/ ***Disable***
Port number	1–65535 (***110***)
Connection time out	30/ ***60***/ 90/ 120/ 150/ 180/ 210/ 240/ 270/ 300 (sec.)
Auto Receive Check	***Enable***/ Disable
Polling interval	1–60 (***15***) (min.)
CSRC Communication Test	Start

Setting item	Setting options (Default is highlighted)
12 OpenAPI Setting	
<OpenAPI Setting>	
OpenAPI Setting	***Enable***/ Disable
SSL Setting	Enable/ ***Disable***
Authentication Setting	
Authentication Setting	Enable/ ***Disable***
Login name	Max. 8 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.
Password	Max. 8 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.
Port number	1–65535 (***50001***)
Port number (SSL)	1–65535 (***50003***)
13 Web Service Setting	
<Web Service Setting>	
Web Service Setting	
Friendly Name	***KMBT + the last 6 digits of MAC address*** Max. 62 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.
SSL Setting	Enable/ ***Disable***
Print Setting	
Print Setting	Enable/ ***Disable***
Printer Name	***KMBT + the last 6 digits of MAC address*** Max. 63 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.
Printer Location	Max. 63 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.
Printer Information	Max. 63 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.
Scan Setting	
Scan Setting	Enable/ ***Disable***
Scanner Name	***KMBT + the last 6 digits of MAC address*** Max. 63 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.
Scanner Established Place	Max. 63 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.
Scanner Information	Max. 63 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.

Setting item	Setting options (Default is highlighted)
14 JSP Setting	
<JSP Setting>	
JSP Setting	***Enable***/ Disable
SSL Setting	Enable/ ***Disable***
Authentication Setting	
Authentication Setting	Enable/ ***Disable***
Login name	***Unknown*** Max. 8 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.
Password	***change it*** Max. 8 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.
Port number	30081–30090 (***30081***)
Port number (SSL)	30081–30090 (***30082***)
15 Detail Setting	
<Detail Setting>	
Device Setting	
MAC Address	- - -
Network Speed	***Auto Setting***/ 10Mbps Half Duplex/ 10Mbps Full Duplex/ 100Mbps Half Duplex/ 100Mbps Full Duplex
<Detail Setting/Time adjust Setting>	
NTP Setting	Enable/ ***Disable***
NTP Server Setting	
NTP Server Address	IPv4 ***0.0.0.0*** (0–255) IPv6 0: 0: 0: 0: 0: 0: 0: 0 (1–39 bytes) Host Name Max. 253 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.*7
Port number	1–65535 (***123***)
<Detail/Status Notification/Alert E-mail>	
Alert E-mail Setting	Enable/ ***Disable***
Trans E-mail Address	Max. 250 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.*7
Trans Items	Service Call/ Jam/ Replenish Paper Tray/ Toner Supply/ PM Call/ Staple Cartridge Supply/ Finisher Tray Full/ Dispose of Punch Scrap Box/ Dispose of Trim Scrap Box/ Glue Pellet Supply/ Exchange Trim Receiver

Setting item	Setting options (Default is highlighted)
<Detail/Status Notification/SNMP Trap>	
Trans Setting 1–5	
Trans Setting	Enable/ ***Disable***
Trans Address	IPv4 ***0.0.0.0*** (0–255) IPv6 0: 0: 0: 0: 0: 0: 0: 0 (1–39 bytes) Host Name Max. 253 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.
Trans Port No.	1–65535 (***162***)
Trans Community Name	***public*** Max. 15 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.
Trans Items	Service Call/ Jam/ Replenish Paper Tray/ Toner Supply/ PM Call/ Staple Cartridge Supply/ Finisher Tray Full/ Dispose of Punch Scrap Box/ Dispose of Trim Scrap Box/ Glue Pellet Supply/ Exchange Trim Receiver
Trans Setting	Enable/ ***Disable***
Trans IPX Network Address	0.0.0.0 (0–255)
Trans IPX Node Address	0: 0: 0: 0: 0: 0
Trans IPX Community Name	***public*** Max. 15 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.
Trans Items	Service Call/ Jam/ Replenish Paper Tray/ Toner Supply/ PM Call/ Staple Cartridge Supply/ Finisher Tray Full/ Dispose of Punch Scrap Box/ Dispose of Trim Scrap Box/ Glue Pellet Supply/ Exchange Trim Receiver
PING Confirmation	
PING Send Address	IPv4 0.0.0.0 (0–255) IPv6 0: 0: 0: 0: 0: 0: 0: 0 (1–39 bytes) Host Name Max. 253 characters combining symbols and alphanumerics can be used.*7
Check Connection	Start
LPD Setting	***Enable***/ Disable
SLP Setting	***Enable***/ Disable
For Invalid Certificate	***Job Delete***/ Job Continue
Network Setting Clear	Start

*1: Select [Auto Setting] to make the DHCP Setting, BOOTP Setting, ARP/PING Setting, and AUTO IP Setting available. However, changing the selection from Auto Setting to Direct Setting will invalidate the settings made for DHCP Setting and BOOTP Setting. Also, changing from Direct Setting to Auto Setting will validate the settings made for DHCP Setting, BOOTP Setting, ARP/PING Setting, and AUTO IP Setting.

*2: Selecting [Disable] for IPv6 Setting will disable this function, even if [Enable] is selected for IPv6 Auto Setting. In this case, the drop-down list of IPv6 Auto Setting in PSWC will be dimmed to show inactivity.

*3: Selecting [Disable] for IPv6 Auto Setting will enable the setting change of Global Address, Prefix Length, and Gateway Address.

*4: Unavailable for the ranges fe80: : –febf: ffff: ffff: ffff: ffff: ffff: ffff: ffff and ff00: : –ffff: ffff: ffff: ffff: ffff: ffff: ffff: ffff.

*5: XXXX will be calculated from the MAC address.

*6: Unavailable only for the range fe80: 0: 0: 0: : –fe80: 0: 0: 0: ffff: ffff: ffff: ffff.

*7: The characters between periods should be 63 characters at maximum. Use periods to connect the character strings to make the entry up to 251 (253 including host name) characters.

*8: In PSWC, put/remove the check mark (✔) to enable/disable it.

*9: Only one IP address, not a range, can be permitted/denied in three ways. e.g. Permitting/Denying 192.168.11.22 only:
192.168.11.22 - 0.0.0.0
0.0.0.0 - 192.168.11.22
192.168.11.22 - 192.168.11.22

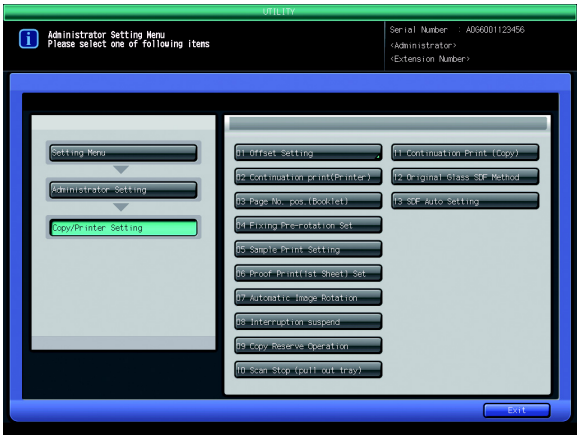
*10: This setting may be unavailable depending on the set combination of Security Protocol, ESP Encryption Algorithm, EPS Authentic Algorithm, and AH Authentic Algorithm.
When setting it in PSWC, an alarm message will appear for forbidden combination.
If an error is found in PSWC, a message will be displayed.

*11: Discover User Name cannot be set with the same entry as that for Read User Name or Write User Name.

*12: Tunnel mode in ESP AH setting is not supported.

6.6 05 Copy/Printer Setting

Copy/Printer Setting Menu Screen



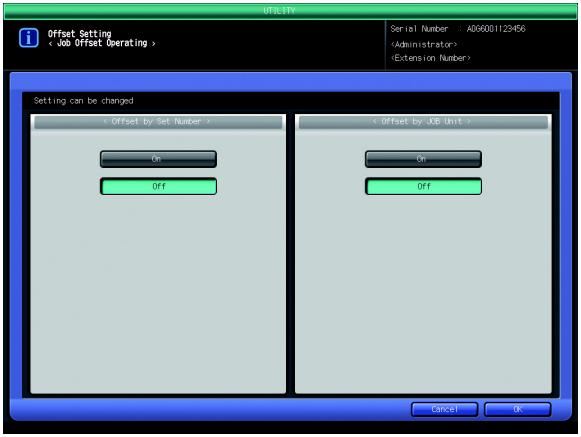
6.6.1 01 Offset Setting - 01 Job Offset Operating

Set the machine to offset the output sheets by set number and/or by JOB unit. When selecting the [Offset by JOB Unit], specify the offset job number. The offset output mode can be specified in [02 Offset Output Mode Setting].

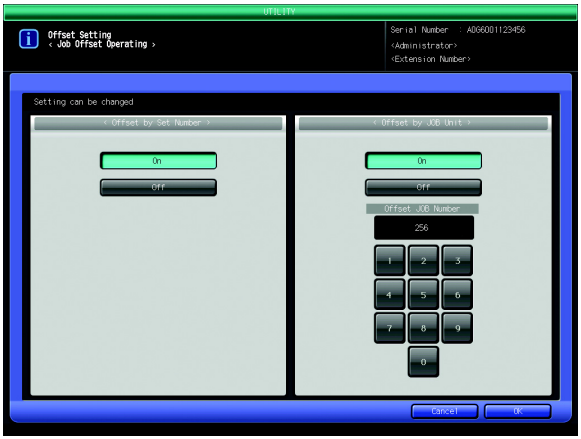
Procedure

1 Touch [05 Copy/Printer Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [01 Offset Setting] and [01 Job Offset Operating] in sequence.

2 Touch each [On] or [Off] of <Offset by Set Number> and <Offset by JOB Unit> to highlight it.



3 If you select [On] for [Offset by JOB Unit], the screen keypad to enter the [Offset JOB Number] is displayed. Enter a value to specify the offset job number. The available range is 0 to 9,999.



4 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Copy/Printer Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

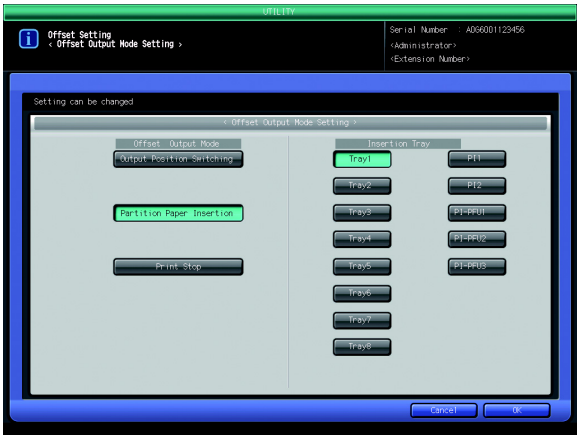
6.6.2 01 Offset Setting - 02 Offset Output Mode Setting

Select the offset output mode. Three modes are provided: select [Output Position Switching] to shift output sheets for each job, [Partition Paper Insertion] to insert a sheet of paper for each job, or [Print Stop] to temporarily stop printing for each job.

Procedure

1 Touch [05 Copy/Printer Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [01 Offset Setting] and [02 Job Offset Operating] in sequence.

2 Specify the following items.



- Touch [Output Position Switching], [Partition Paper Insertion], or [Print Stop].
- When selecting [Partition Paper Insertion], select the desired tray key in the right side area. Partitions are to be fed from the tray selected here.

3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Copy/Printer Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

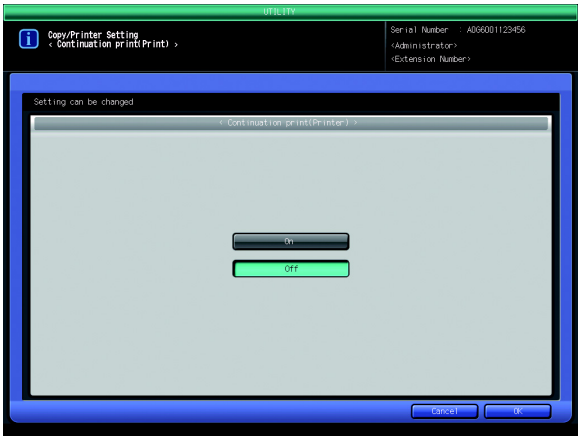
6.6.3 02 Continuation Print (Printer)

Set the machine to output multiple reserved print jobs in succession.

Procedure

1 Touch [05 Copy/Printer Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [02 Continuation Print/Printer].

2 Touch [On] or [Off] to highlight it.



3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Copy/Printer Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

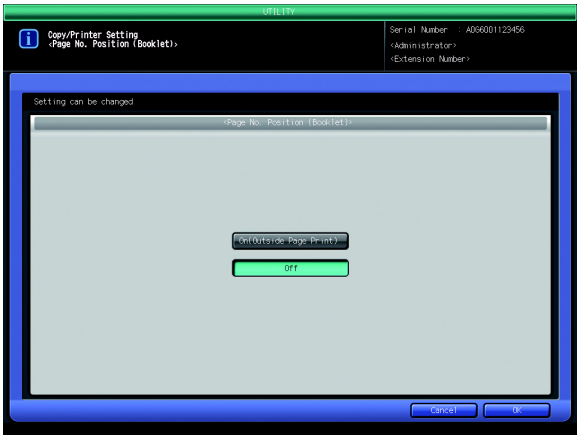
6.6.4 03 Page No. Position (Booklet)

Set the machine to position the page numbers automatically on the outside edges of the copy when using Booklet and Page No. of Stamp in combination.

Procedure

1 Touch [05 Copy/Printer Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [03 Page No. pos. (Booklet)].

2 Touch [On (Outside Page Print)] or [Off] to highlight it.



3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Copy/Printer Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

6.6.5 04 Fixing Pre-rotation Setting

The fixing heat adjustment may be necessary as changing the paper type and weight. In this case, the machine rotates the fixing roller before printing starts, in order to print at the appropriate temperature for a specific paper type and weight.

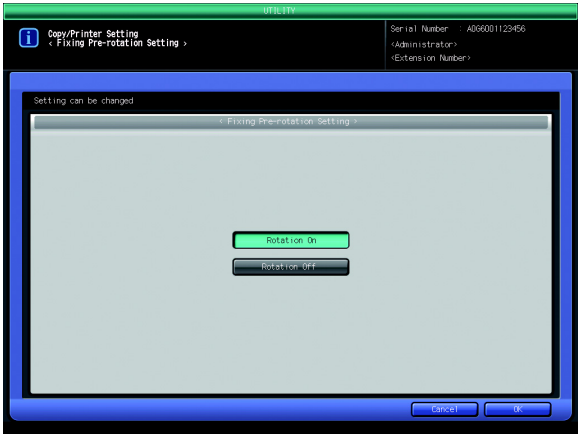
Note

With [Rotation On (Base + 30 sec)], [Rotation On (Base + 10 sec)], or [Rotation On (Base)] selected, the message "Machine is warming up" may be displayed on pressing [Start] after the paper type/weight has been changed.
Please wait until copying becomes available.

Procedure

1 Touch [05 Copy/Printer Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [04 Fixing Pre-rotation Set].

2 Touch the desired setting key to highlight it.



3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Copy/Printer Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

6.6.6 05 Sample Print Setting

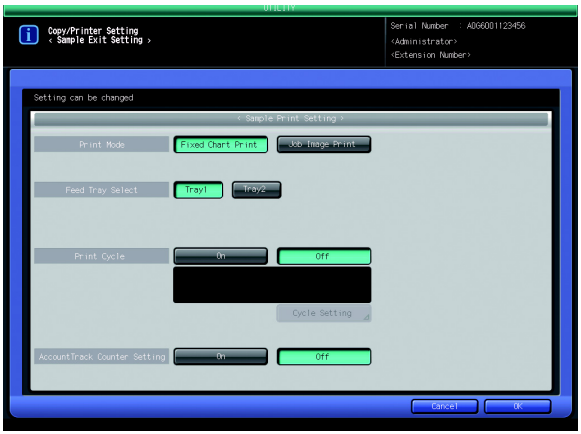
Select the print mode and feed tray, and set the timing of sample printing.

Also select whether or not to include the print count of sample printing in the account track count.

Procedure

1 Touch [05 Copy/Printer Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [05 Sample Print Setting].

2 Touch the keys on the right side of “Print Mode” to select the desired print type.



3 Touch the keys on the right side of “Feed Tray Select” to select the desired feed tray.

4 Touch [On] or [Off] on the right side of “Print Cycle” to select whether or not to continue sample printing in a specified cycle.

- With [On] selected, touch the activated [Cycle Setting] key, then select [Print Per Sheet Cycle] or [Print Per Set Number].
- With [Print Per Sheet Cycle] selected, use the touch panel keypad to enter the desired number of sheets in a cycle of sample printing.
- With [Print Per Set Number] selected, touch [b: Interval Set Number] and use the touch panel keypad to enter the desired set count, then touch [c: Sheet Page] and enter the desired page number to have the sample print inserted.
- Touch [OK] to return the previous screen.

5 Touch [On] or [Off] on the right side of “Account Track Counter Setting” to include/exclude the sample print count.

6 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Copy/Printer Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

6.6.7 06 Proof Print (1st Sheet) Setting

Normally, the machine outputs a whole set of sample print when proof printing. Use this function to enable the machine to output only the first sheet of sample print.

Make the following two settings.

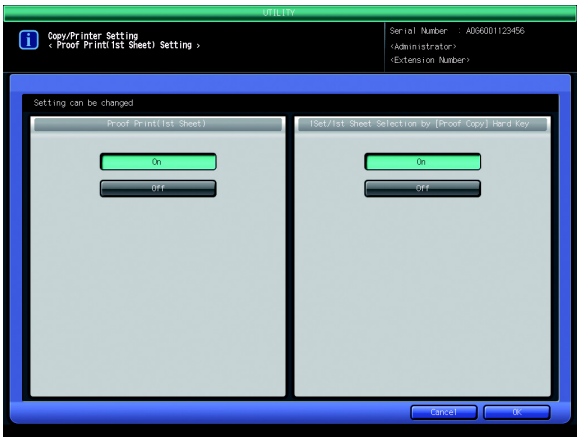
Set the machine to display the [Proof Print (1st Sheet)] key in addition to [Proof Print] on the Check Screen.

Select either the first sheet or a whole set to be output when [Proof Copy] on the control panel is pressed.

Procedure

1 Touch [05 Copy/Printer Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [06 Proof Print (1st Sheet) Set].

2 Touch [On] or [Off] under "Proof Print (1st) Sheet" in the left side area. For setting the machine to display the [Proof Print (1st Sheet)] key on the Check Screen, select [On].



3 Touch [On] or [Off] under "1 Set/1st Sheet Selection by [Proof Copy] Hard Key" in the right side area. Select [Off] to print a whole set on pressing [Proof Copy], or select [On] for only the first sheet.

4 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Copy/Printer Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

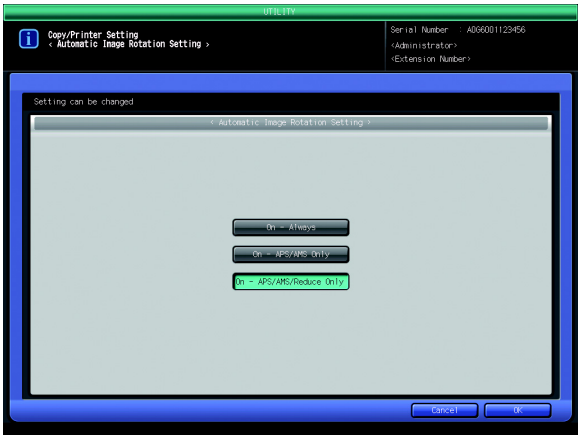
6.6.8 07 Automatic Image Rotation Setting

Set this function to activate always, only when Auto Paper or Auto Zoom is activated, or only when Auto Paper, Auto Zoom or image reduction is activated.

Procedure

1 Touch [05 Copy/Printer Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [07 Automatic Image Rotation].

2 Touch the desired setting key to highlight it.



3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Copy/Printer Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

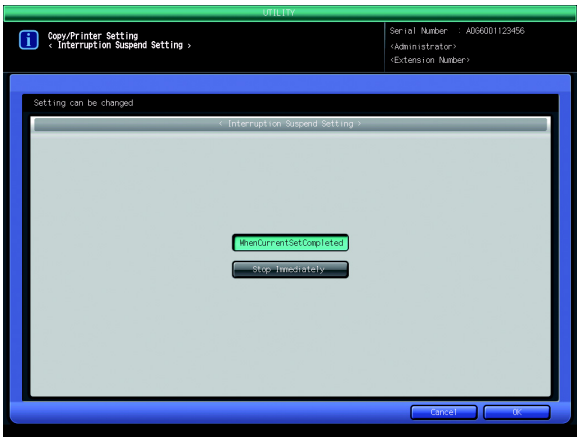
6.6.9 08 Interruption Suspend Setting

Select the timing to stop the job in progress when [Interrupt] is pressed. The timing can be set either to suspend on completing the job in progress or to suspend by interrupting the job in progress.

Procedure

1 Touch [05 Copy/Printer Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [08 Interruption suspend].

2 Touch [When Current Set Completed] or [Stop Immediately] to highlight it.



3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Copy/Printer Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

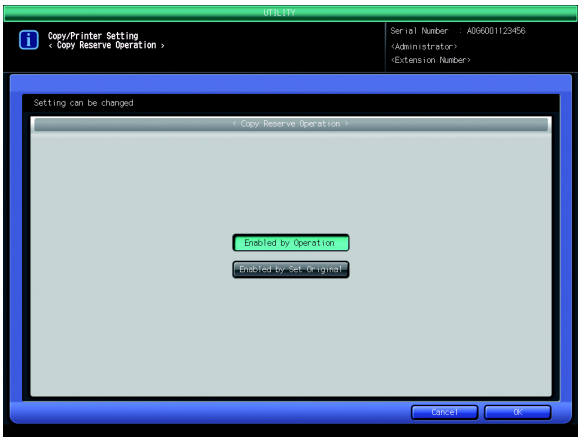
6.6.10 09 Copy Reserve Operation

Set the timing to display the Copy Screen for reserve job setting. The timing can be set to either when touching [COPY] tab from the Machine Status Screen, or when loading the original in the ADF.

Procedure

1 Touch [05 Copy/Printer Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [09 Copy Reserve Operation].

2 Touch [Enabled by Operation] or [Enabled by Set Original] to highlight it.



3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Copy/Printer Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

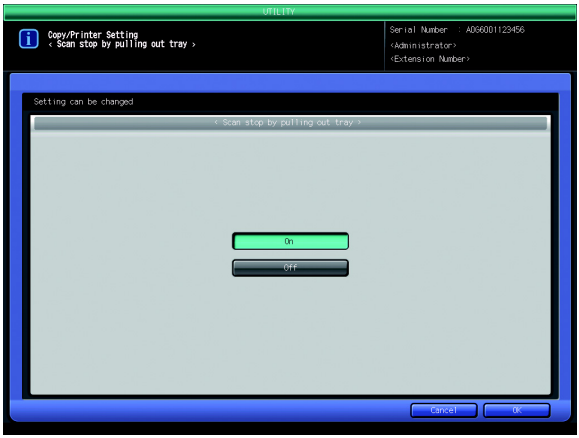
6.6.11 10 Scan Stop by Pulling Out Tray

Select whether or not to stop the machine when a tray is pulled out while scanning the original.

Procedure

1 Touch [05 Copy/Printer Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [10 Scan Stop (pull out tray)].

2 Touch [On] or [Off] to highlight it.



3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Copy/Printer Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

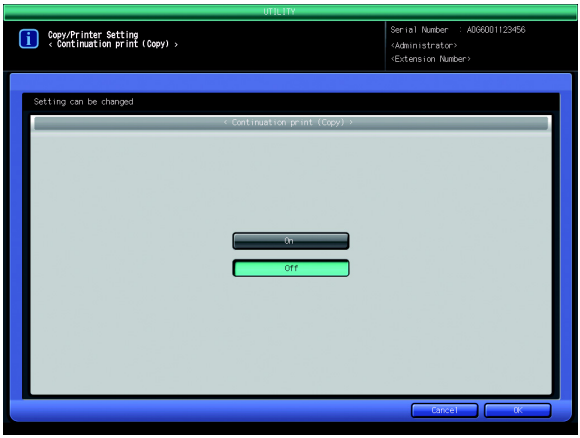
6.6.12 11 Continuation Print (Copy)

Set the machine to output multiple reserve jobs in succession, without any pause between jobs.

Procedure

1 Touch [05 Copy/Printer Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [11 Continuation Print (Copy)].

2 Touch [On] or [Off] to highlight it.



3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Copy/Printer Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

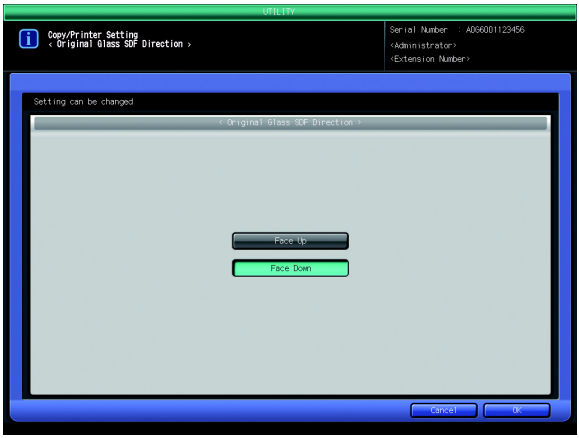
6.6.13 12 Original Glass SDF Method

Select the output face of a copy when scanning the original placed on the original glass.

Procedure

1 Touch [05 Copy/Printer Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [12 Original Glass SDF Method].

2 Touch [Face Up] or [Face Down] to highlight it.



3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Copy/Printer Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

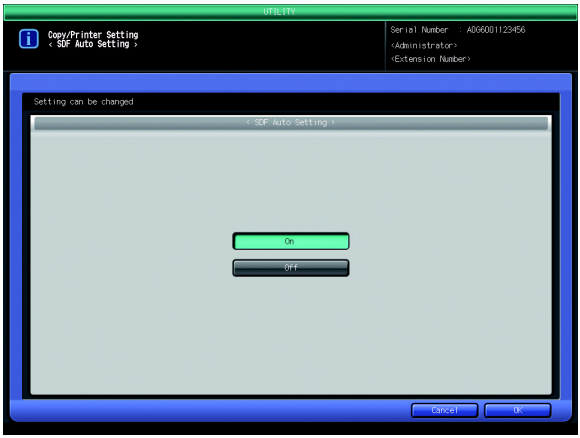
6.6.14 13 SDF Auto Setting

Set the machine to feed a single document automatically as placed in the ADF with the Memory Scan mode selected, or feed it on pressing [Start].

Procedure

1 Touch [05 Copy/Printer Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [13 SDF Auto Setting].

2 Touch [On] or [Off] to highlight it.



3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Copy/Printer Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

6.7 06 System Connection

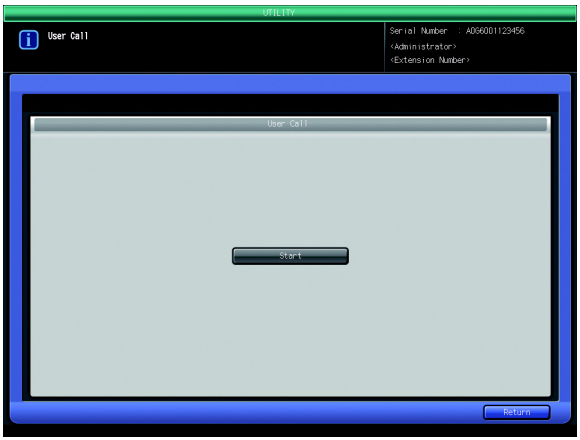
6.7.1 01 User Call

Use this function to call your service representative for maintenance. Your service representative is monitoring the machine status as needed basis. The monitored information will be useful for maintenance.

Procedure

1 Touch [06 System Connection] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [01 User Call].

2 Touch [Start].



3 Touch [Return] to restore the System Connection Screen.

6.8 08 Scan Destination Register

6.8.1 01 Destination Address Edit/Delete

Change or delete the destination of the scanned image. The following four addresses can be registered:

- E-mail (mail address)
- HDD (Box No.)
- FTP (FTP server address)
- SMB (shared folder)

The group of registered E-mail addresses can also be deleted.

Procedure

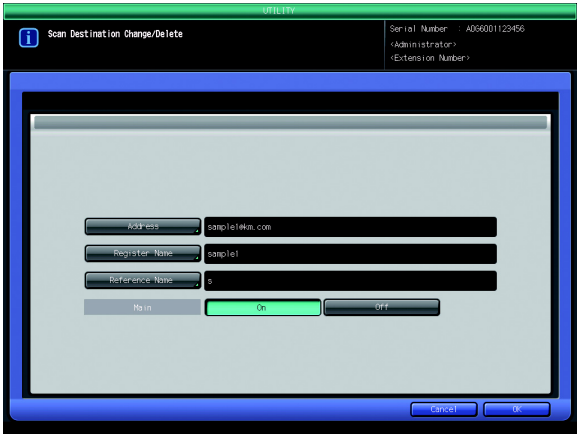
1 Touch [08 Scan Destination Register] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [01 Destination Address Edit/Delete].

2 Select the address type to be changed/deleted.

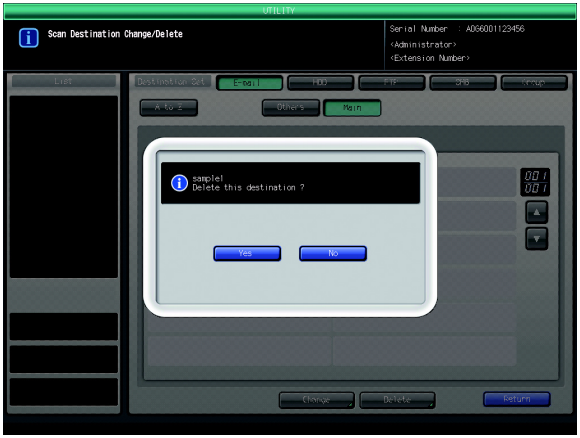
– To change/delete E-mail address:
Touch [E-mail].



Display the register name of the destination address using the search key or [▼]/[▲] keys, then touch the desired register name to highlight it.
To change the address, touch [Change].
Select the changing item from [Address], [Register Name] and [Reference Name], and change it from the input screen. Touch [On] to specify it for daily use.
Touch [OK] to complete the setting.



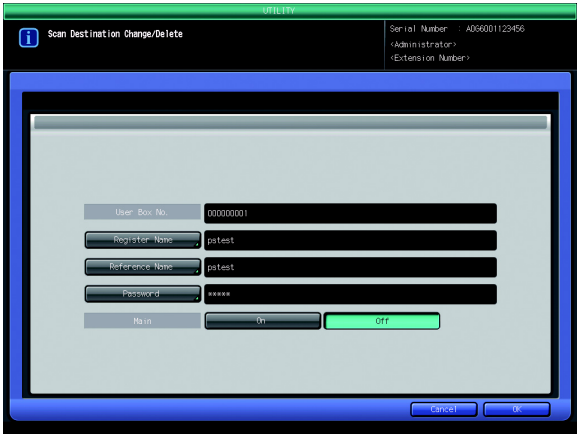
To delete the address, touch [Delete]. Touch [Yes] on the confirmation popup menu.
To suspend deleting, touch [No].



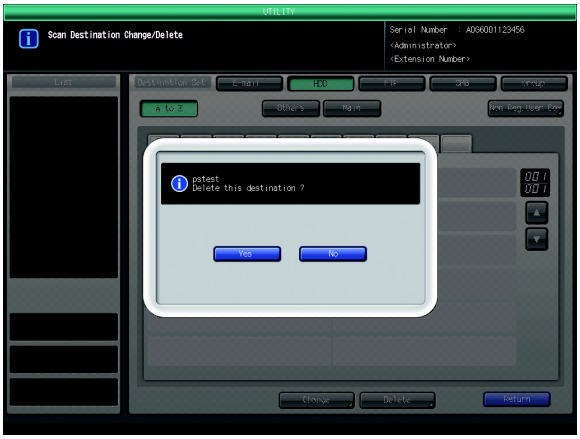
– To change/delete HDD destination address:
Touch [HDD].



Display the register name of the destination address using the search key or [▼]/[▲] keys, then touch the desired register name to highlight it.
To change the address, touch [Change].
Select the changing item from [Register Name], [Reference Name] and [Password], and change it from the input screen. Touch [On] to specify it for daily use.
Touch [OK] to complete the setting.



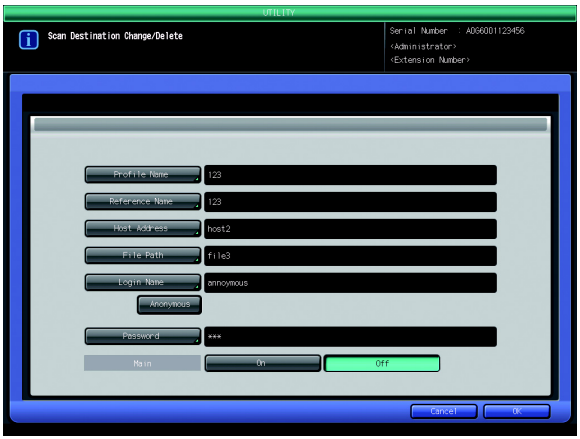
To delete the address, touch [Delete]. Touch [Yes] on the confirmation popup menu.
To suspend deleting, touch [No].
To delete the unregistered box, touch [Non Register Box] and touch [Delete]. Touch [Yes] on the Delete Confirmation popup screen.
To suspend deleting, touch [No].



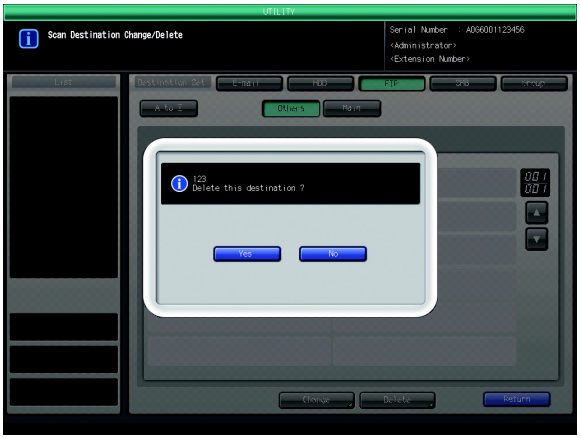
– To change/delete the FTP destination address:
Touch [FTP].



Display the register name of the destination address using the search key or [▼]/[▲] keys, then touch the desired register name to highlight it.
To change the address, touch [Change].
Select the changing item from [Profile Name], [Character for Search], [Password], [Login Name], [Host Address] and [File Path], and change it from the input screen. Touch [On] to specify it for daily use.
Touch [OK] to complete the setting.



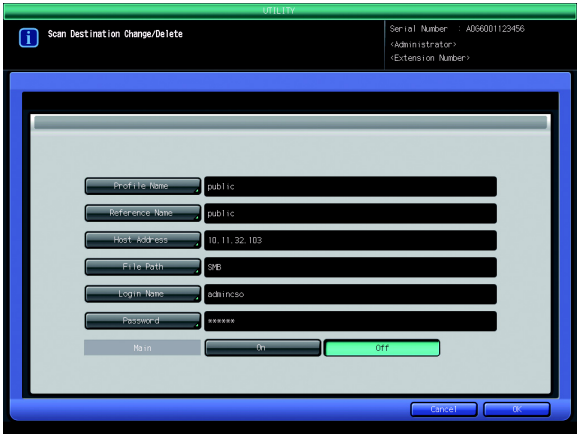
To delete the address, touch [Delete]. Touch [Yes] on the confirmation popup menu.
To suspend deleting, touch [No].



– To change/delete the SMB destination address:
Touch [SMB].

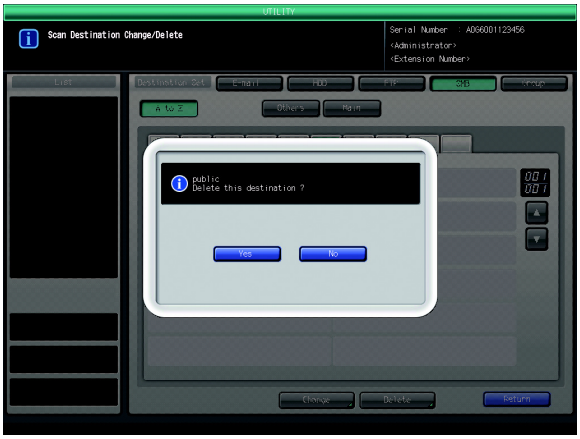


Display the register name of the destination address using the search key or [▼]/[▲] keys, then touch the desired register name to highlight it.
To change the destination address, touch [Change].
Select the changing item from [Profile Name], [Character for Search], [Password], [Login Name], [Host Address] and [File Path], and change it from the input screen. Touch [On] to specify it for daily use.
Touch [OK] to complete the setting.

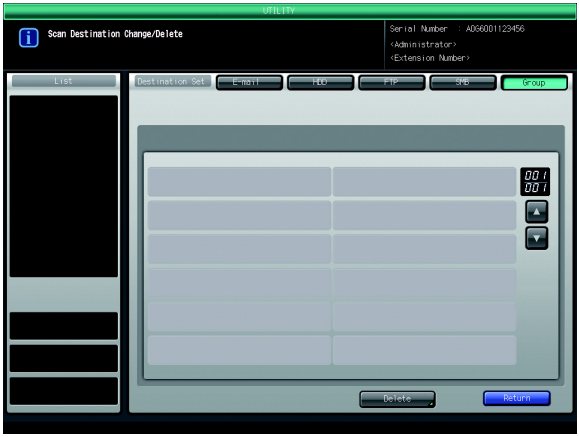


To delete the address, touch [Delete]. Touch [Yes] on the Delete Confirmation popup screen.

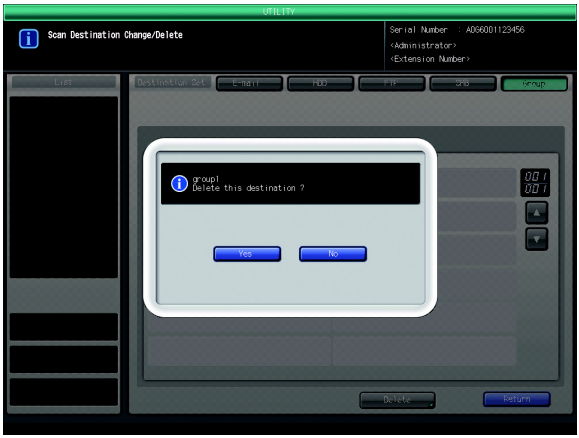
To suspend deleting, touch [No].



– To delete a group:
Touch [Group].



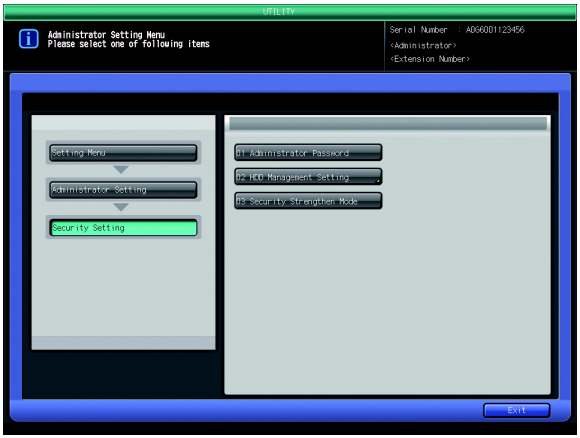
Display the register name of the group using [▼]/[▲] keys, then touch the desired register name to highlight it.
Touch [Delete]. Touch [Yes] on the confirmation popup menu.
To suspend deleting, touch [No].



3 Touch [Return] to restore the Scan Destination Register Screen.

6.9 07 Security Setting

Security Setting Menu Screen



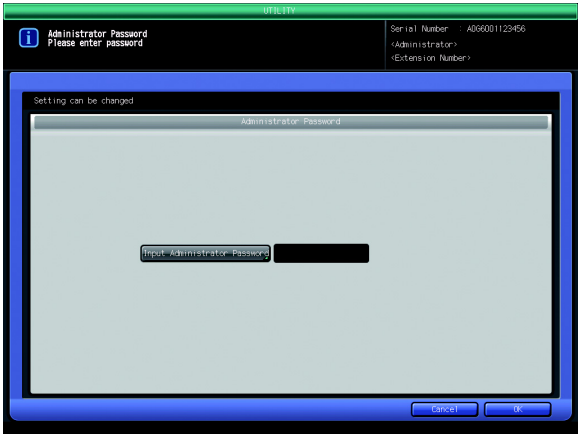
6.9.1 01 Administrator Password

Set the new administrator password.

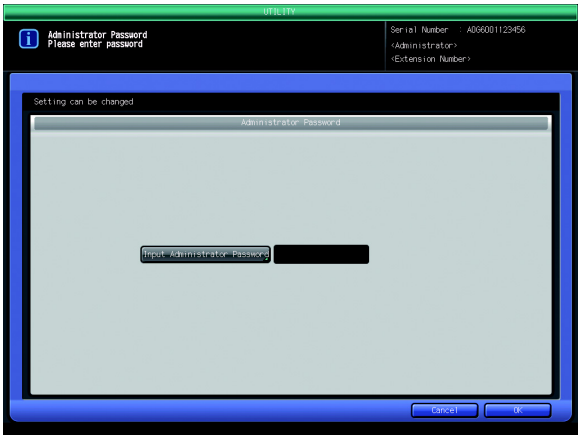
Procedure

1 Touch [07 Security Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [01 Administrator Password].

2 Touch [Input Administrator Password] to display the touch screen keyboard.



3 Enter the new password.



4 Touch [OK].

5 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The Security Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

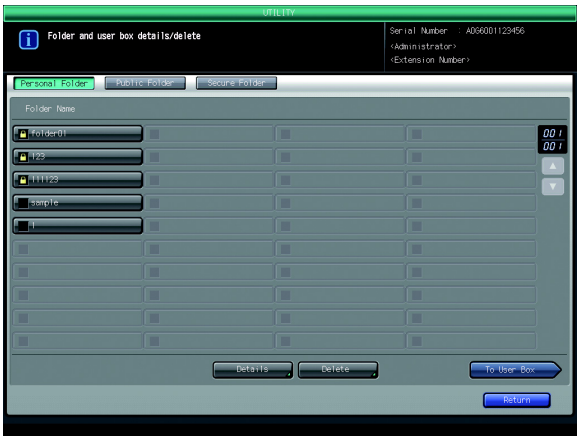
6.9.2 02 HDD Management Setting - 01 Folder/User Box List Delete

A user can create a folder or a box when storing images in a personal, public or secure folder. The administrator can refer to the name, password, number, or creation time of the folder created by the user, and delete the folder or box if necessary.

Procedure

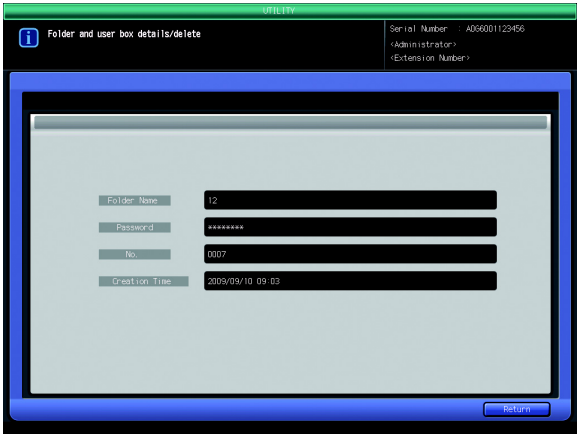
1 Touch [07 Security Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [02 HDD Management Setting] and [01 Folder/User Box List Del.] in sequence.

2 Refer the detailed information of the folder and the box.



– Touch [Personal Folder], [Public Folder], or [Secure Folder] to refer to the details of the desired folder or box.
– Touch the desired folder to highlight it.
When referring to the information of a box, touch the folder key which contains the box to be referred to, then touch [To User Box]
When the folder or box to be referred to is not displayed, touch [▼]/[▲] on the right side to scroll.

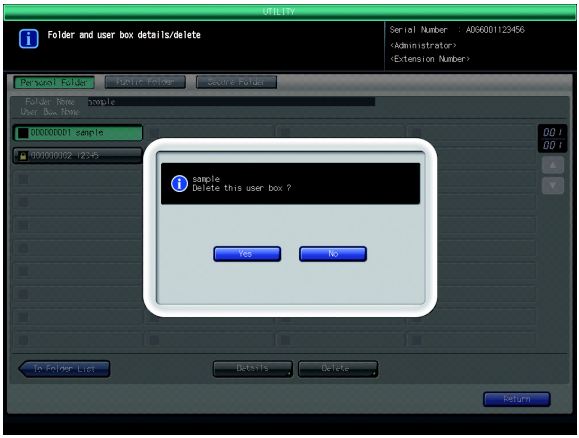
– Touch [Details] to display detailed information.



– Touch [Return] to restore the Folder and User Box Details/Delete Screen.

3 Delete the detailed information of the folder or box.

– Select the folder or box to be deleted, referring to the procedure in step 2.
– Touch [Delete]. The confirmation popup menu appears.



– Touch [Yes] to delete, or touch [No] to suspend deleting.

4 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The HDD Management Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

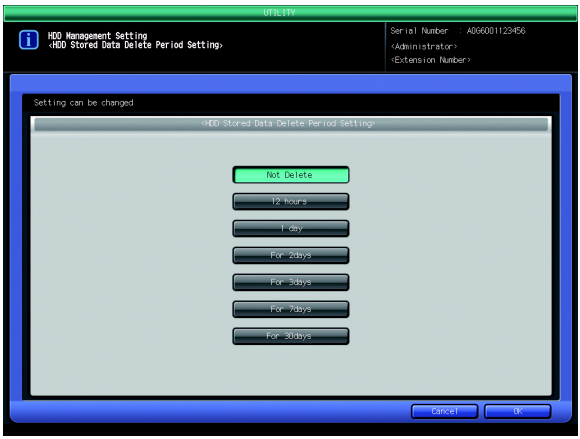
6.9.3 02 HDD Management Setting - 02 HDD Data Auto Delete Period

Specify the period of time (12 hours/ 1 day/ 2 days/ 3 days/ 7 days/ 30 days) to keep data stored on HDD so that the machine automatically deletes the data when specified period has passed. The initial setting is [Not Delete].

Procedure

1 Touch [07 Security Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [02 HDD Management Setting] and [02 HDD Data Auto Del. Period] in sequence.

2 Touch the desired period key to highlight it.
Touch [Not Delete] to highlight it, if this function is not desired.



3 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The HDD Management Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

6.9.4 02 HDD Management Setting - 03 Change HDD Lock Password

Change the HDD lock password.

Note

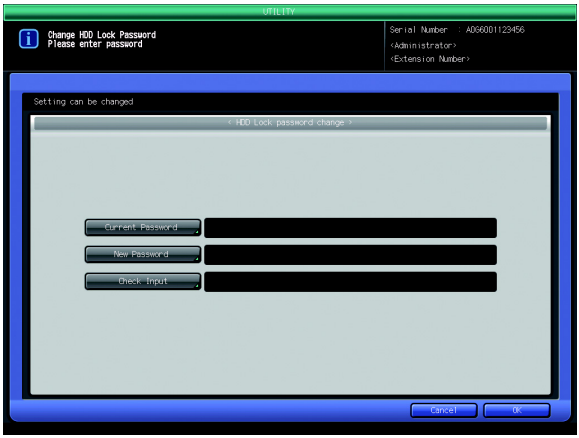
The HDD lock password cannot be changed unless the security strengthen mode is set to ON.

Procedure

1 Touch [07 Security Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [02 HDD Management Setting] and [03 Change HDD Lock Password] in sequence.

2 Specify the current password.

– Touch [Current Password] to display the Password Input Screen.



– Enter current password, then touch [OK]

3 Specify the new password.

– Touch [New Password] to display the Password Input Screen. Enter the new password, then touch [OK].
– Touch [Check Input] to re-enter the same new password. Enter new password once more for confirmation, then touch [OK].

4 Touch [OK] to complete the setting, or touch [Cancel] to resume the previous setting.

The HDD Management Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

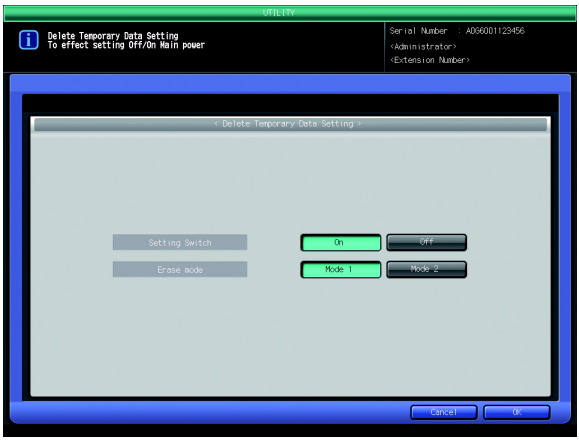
6.9.5 02 HDD Management Setting - 04 Delete Temporary Data

Use this function to select whether or not to erase the temporary data on HDD or DRAM in order to prevent them from being reused. When erasing the data, also select one of the two erase modes provided on the screen.

Procedure

1 Touch [07 Security Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [02 HDD Management Setting] and [04 Delete Temporary Data] in sequence.

2 Touch [Off] or [On] for Setting Switch.



– Two erase modes are provided. With [On] selected for Setting Switch, the selected erase mode (either Mode 1 or Mode 2) will function.

3 Touch [OK], then turn off the main power switch to complete the setting.
To resume the previous setting, touch [Cancel].

6.9.6 02 HDD Management Setting - 05 Delete All Data

Use this function to delete all the data on HDD, selecting one of the eight erase modes provided.

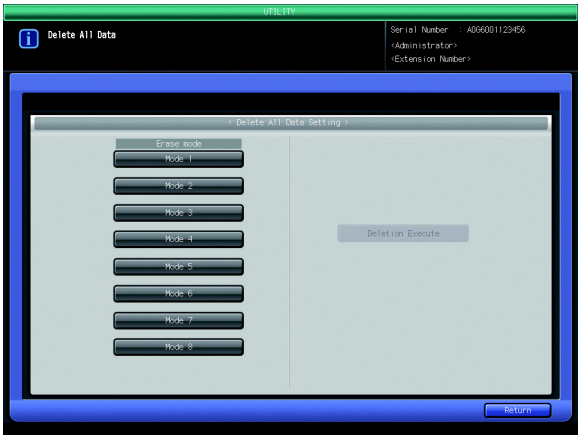
Reminder

When using this function, contact your service representative.

Procedure

1 Touch [07 Security Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [02 HDD Management Setting] and [05 Delete All Data] in sequence.

2 Select the desired erase mode, then touch [Deletion Execute].



3 Touch [Return].

The HDD Management Setting Menu Screen will be restored.

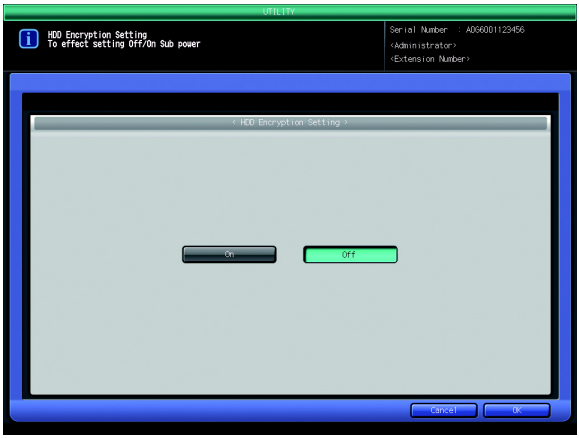
6.9.7 02 HDD Management Setting - 06 HDD Encryption Setting

Specify whether or not to set the HDD encryption.

Procedure

1 Touch [07 Security Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [02 HDD Management Setting] and [06 HDD Encryption Setting] in sequence.

2 Touch [On] or [Off].



3 Touch [OK], then turn off the main power switch to complete the setting.
To resume the previous setting, touch [Cancel].

6.9.8 03 Security Strengthen Mode

Set the security strengthen mode to On or Off.

Note

In order to activate the security strengthen mode, the machine is required to have a CE password and administrator password set by service representative.

When the machine is turning into the security strengthen mode, various security settings are activated in order to increase security when managing the scanned data. Restrictions are applied to user operations, public user access is prohibited, and box operations and print jobs are limited.

There are various settings that must first be specified or are forcibly set in order to activate the security strengthen mode. Before setting this mode on, be sure to check those settings for security functions.

Reminder

If there are settings incompatible with the security strengthen mode, this function cannot be set to "On".

Detail

Certain conditions are required in order to activate the security strengthen mode. For details, contact your service representative.

The settings that must be specified or are forcibly set cannot be changed after the security strengthen mode is set to "On".

Required settings

The following settings must first be specified in order to activate the security strengthen mode.

Administrator setting menu item	Required setting
User Authentication/Account Track	Select "ON".
Open API Setting—SSL Setting	The button must be displayed.
Security Setting—Administrator Password	Specify a password that meets the password rules.
Security Setting—HDD Management Setting—HDD Lock Password	Specify the HDD lock password.

Administrator setting menu item	Required setting
Security Setting/Security Details/Prohibited Functions When Authentication Error/Release Time Settings	Specify 5 minutes or longer.

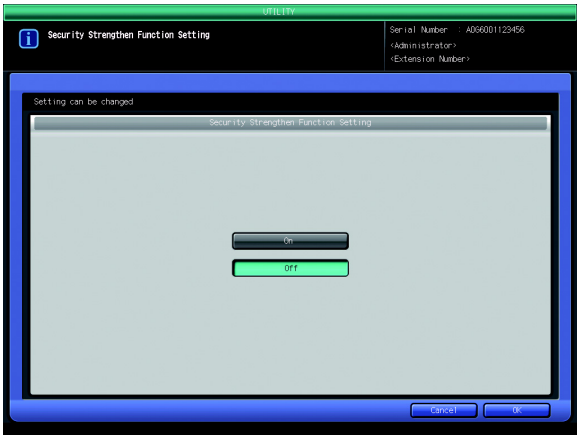
Detail

[SSL] appears when a certificate is registered with PageScope Web Connection.

Procedure

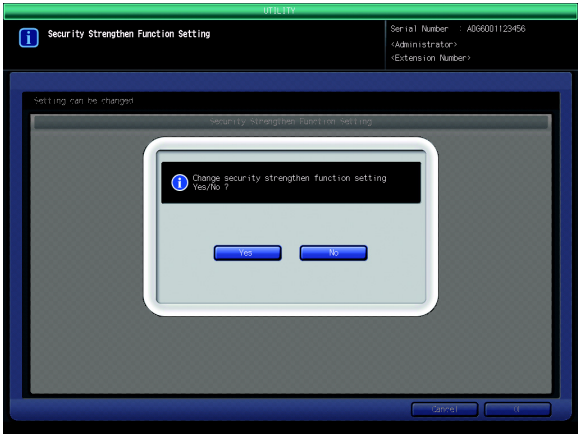
1 Touch [07 Security Setting] on the Administrator Setting Menu Screen, then touch [03 Security Strengthen Mode].

2 Touch [On] to activate, or touch [Off] to deactivate this mode.



3 Touch [OK]. The confirmation popup menu will appear.

4 Touch [Yes] to complete the setting.



The machine power will be turned off, then on.

Touch [No] to cancel the setting. Touch [Cancel] at the lower right side of the screen to return to the Security Setting Menu Screen.

7 Web Utilities Setting

7 Web Utilities Setting

7.1 Web Utilities Outlines

When the machine is connected with a PC over a network, the web browser activated on the PC provides the following functions.

1. Account Track Setting
   Make the account track settings concerning the administrator setting using the web browser on a PC.
2. Remote Panel Setting/Job History Setting
   Make the remote panel settings to control using the web browser on a PC.
3. Scan Transmission Setting
   Register the address for the transmission of the scanned image data concerning the administrator using the web browser.
4. Setting Data Import/Export
   Transmit the setting data from the machine to a PC (export) using the web browser, then return the data to the machine (import).
5. Box Edit
   Change the name of the box or file created in the HDD, or display the thumbnail of the top page of the file.
6. Job History List
   Display the job history list of the machine.

Prerequisites

- Browser: Internet Explorer 6.02 / FireFox1.0 or later
  For recommended browsers, see page 8-2.
- Contact your network manager for details on the network system, the IP address or host name of the machine.
- The account track setting is available only when the machine is under the following conditions.
  All distribute numbers (1,000) are assigned the account authentication party.
  Account authentication is set ON.
  User authentication data is not yet registered.
- The user name “admin” (for accessing to the Administrator Setting Menu) cannot be changed.
  Enter the administrator password previously specified on the machine. 00000000 is initially applied.
  Once entered, the user name and password are not necessary to be re-entered unless the web browser is restarted.

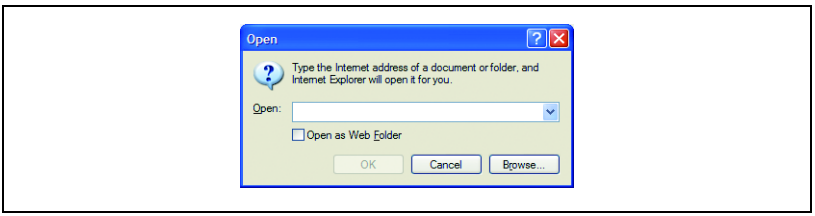
Note

To clear the text boxes, click on [Reset].

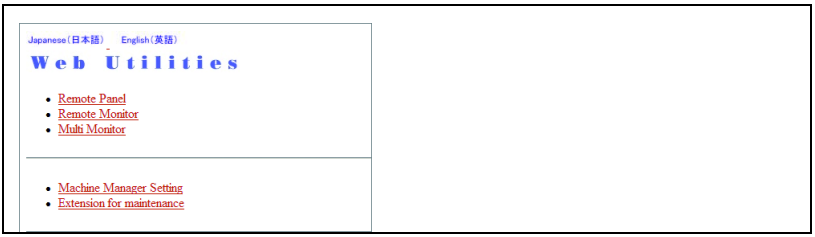
Follow the procedure below to access the Web Utilities of the machine using the web browser.

Procedure

1. Turn on the power to the PC connected with the machine over a network.
2. Activate the web browser, then select [Open] from the File menu.
3. Enter the URL (http:// [IP address or host name of the machine]), then click on [OK].



The Main Page of the Web Utilities will be displayed.



Note

The Web Utilities window is subject to change without notice.

7.2 Setting Account Track Data

Make the account track settings concerning the administrator setting using the web browser on a PC.

Note

To edit the account track data, User Authentication needs to be set to Off, and Account Authentication set to On.

A duplicate password or name will be rejected with an error message. However, duplicating a password is possible using the administrator setting.

The Account Name entry box accepts letters, numbers. Any symbols will be rejected with an error message displayed in the window.

Max. 1,000 account entries can be registered. An error message will be displayed if the above limit is exceeded.

An error message may be displayed when the data entry has not been completed due to the machine operation in progress. Please click on [Apply] while the machine is in an idle state.

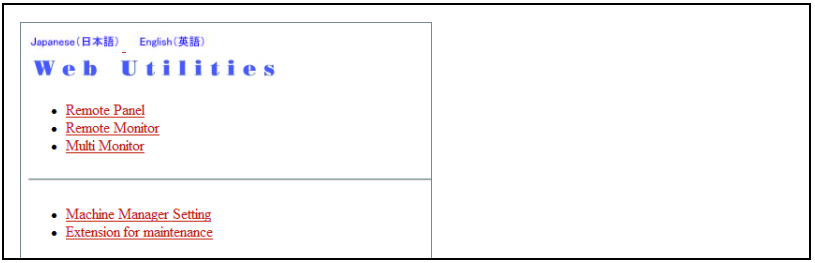
7.2.1 Adding Account Track

Add a new account track data (password, name, and limit value).

Procedure

1 Open the Web Utilities window.

2 Click on [Machine Manager Setting].

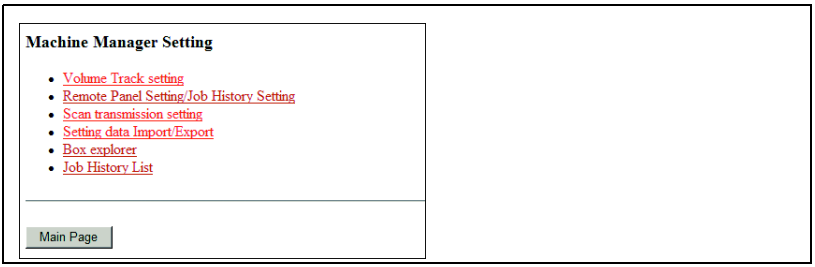


The Enter Network Password dialogue box will be displayed.

3 Enter “admin” in the User Name text box, and an 8-digit administrator in the password text box, then click on [OK].

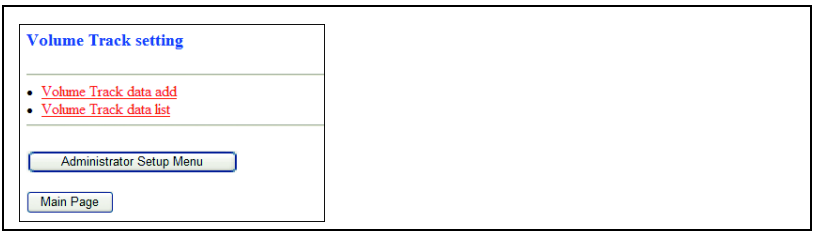
The Machine Manager Setting menu will be displayed.

4 Click on [Volume Track setting].



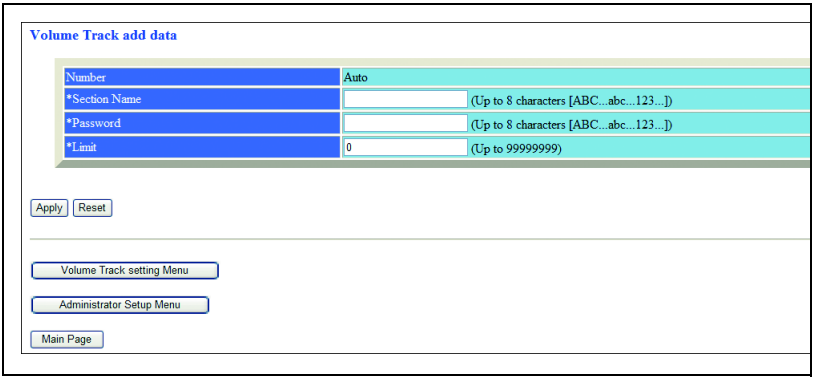
The Volume Track Setting menu will be displayed.

5 Click on [Volume Track data add].



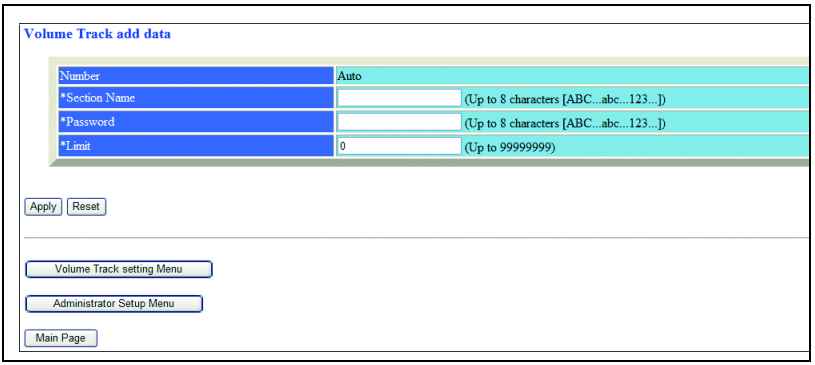
The Volume Track Data Add window will be displayed.

6 Enter a new account track data.
Section Name (Account Name): 8 characters max.
Password: 8 digits max.
Limit: 99,999,999 copies max.



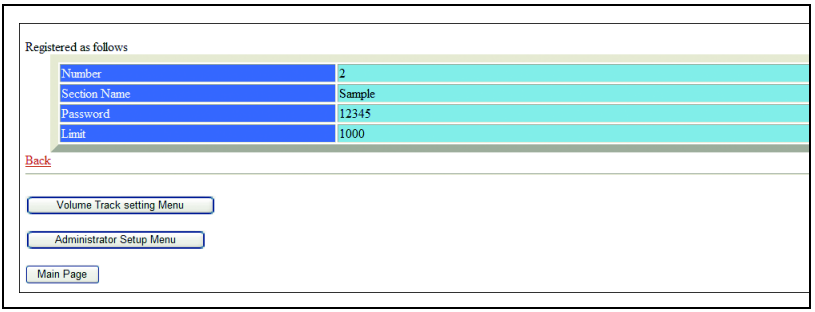
– To clear the text boxes, click on [Reset].

7 Click on [Apply].



The registered content will be displayed in the window.
The new account track data will be transmitted to the machine immediately so that is valid for the user operations.

8 Click on [Back] to return to the Account Track Setting menu or any menu item to jump to the desired window.



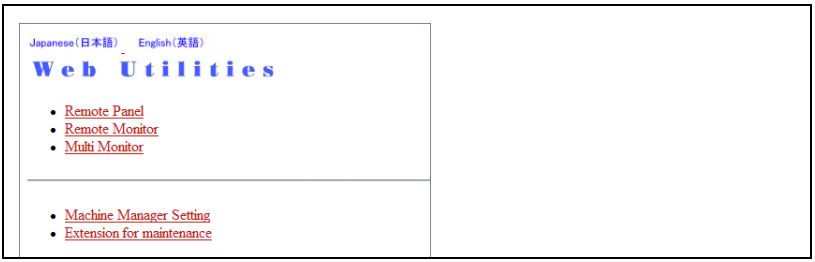
7.2.2 Editing Account Track Data

Change or delete the account track data (password, account name, or limit value, or reset the counters).

Procedure

1 Open the Web Utilities window.

2 Click on [Machine Manager Setting].

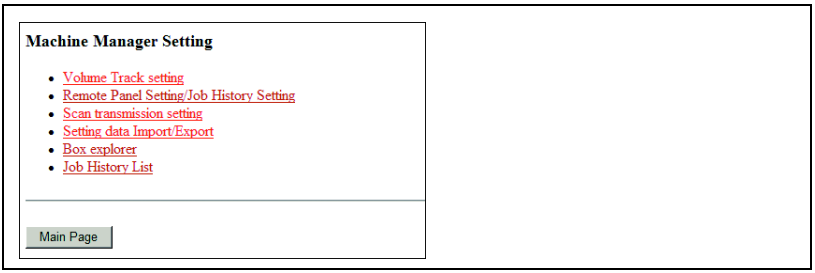


The Enter Network Password dialogue box will be displayed.

3 Enter “admin” in the User Name text box, and an 8-digit administrator password in the password text box, then click on [OK].

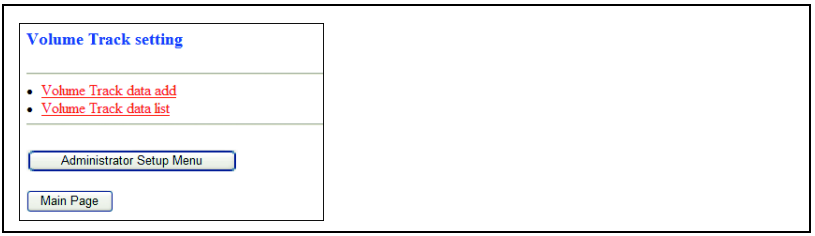
The Machine Manager Setting menu will be displayed.

4 Click on [Volume Track setting].



The Volume Track Setting menu will be displayed.

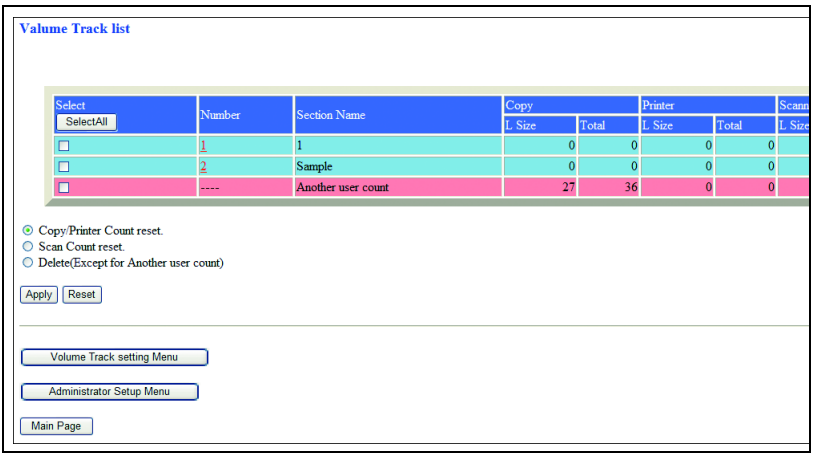
5 Click on [Volume Track data list].



The Volume Track List will be displayed.

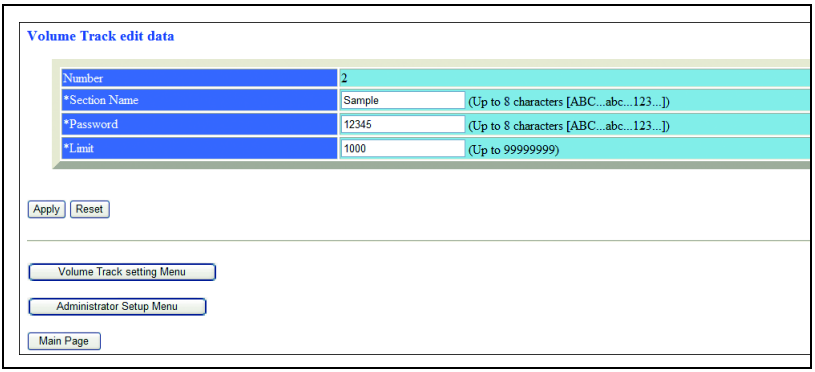
6 Change the Section Name (Account Name), Password, and Limit Value.

– Click on the number of the data to be edited.



The Volume Track Add Data window will be displayed.

– Change the section name (account name), password, or limit value, as desired. For details in entering procedure, refer to page 7-4.



– Click on [Apply].
The edited content will be displayed in the window.
The edited data will be transmitted to the machine immediately so that is valid for the user operations.
– Click on [Back] to return to the Account Track Data List window.

7 Reset Counter.

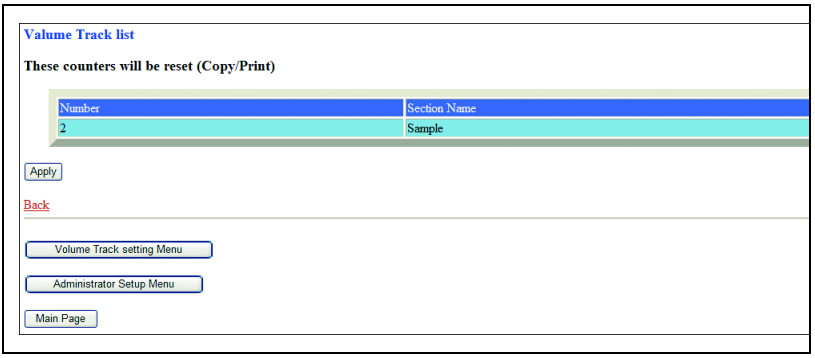
– Click on the check box(es) to select the account track data of the counter to be cleared. If all the counters are to be cleared, click on [SelectAll].
– Click on the radio button (a white circle) heading the “Copy/Printer Count reset” or “Scan Count reset.”

– Click on [Apply].



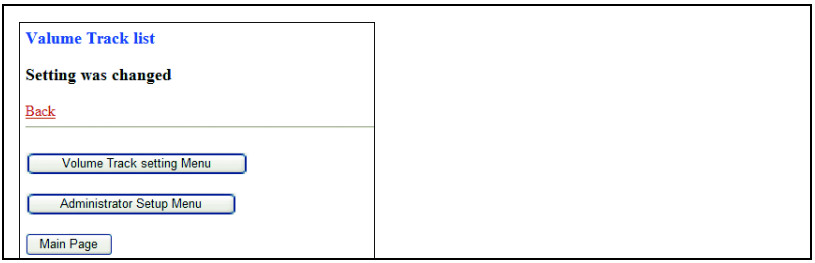
The Counter Reset Confirmation window will be displayed.

– Click on [Apply] to immediately reset the counters to zero.



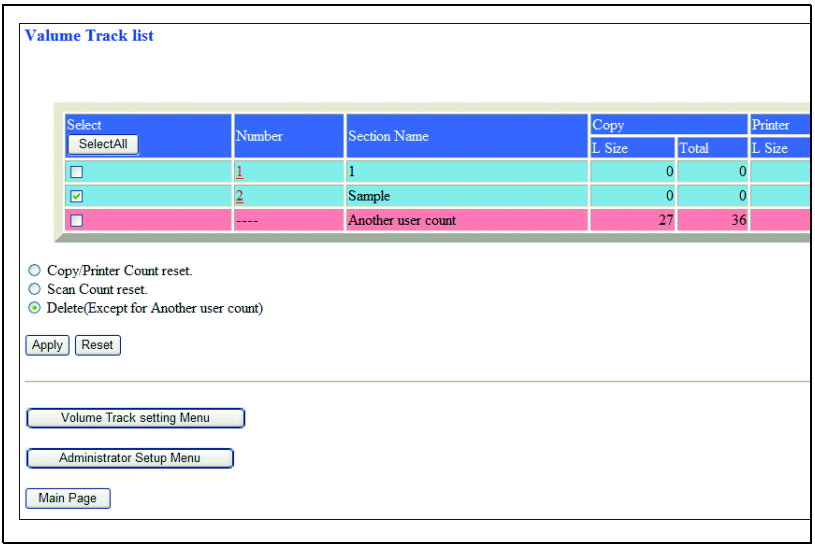
The message “Setting was changed” will be displayed.

– Click on [Back] to return to the Account Track Data List or any menu item to jump to the desired window.



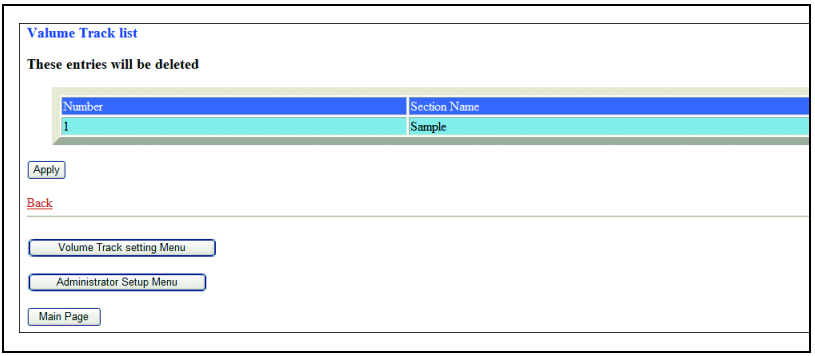
8 Delete Counter.

– Click on the check box(es) to select the account track data to be deleted. If all the data are to be cleared, click on [SelectAll].
– Click on the radio button (a white circle) heading the “Delete (Except for Another user count)”.
– Click on [Apply].



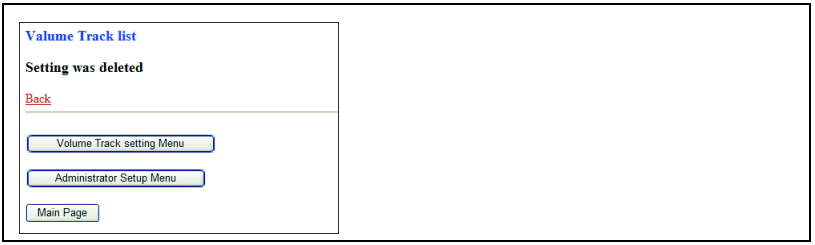
The Delete Confirmation window will be displayed.

– Click on [Apply] to immediately delete the data.



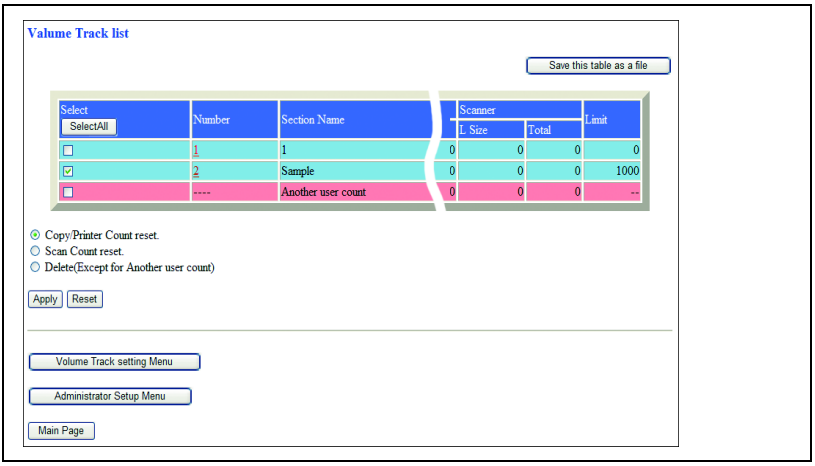
The message “Setting was deleted” will be displayed.

– Click on [Back] to return to the Account Track Data List or any menu item to jump to the desired window.

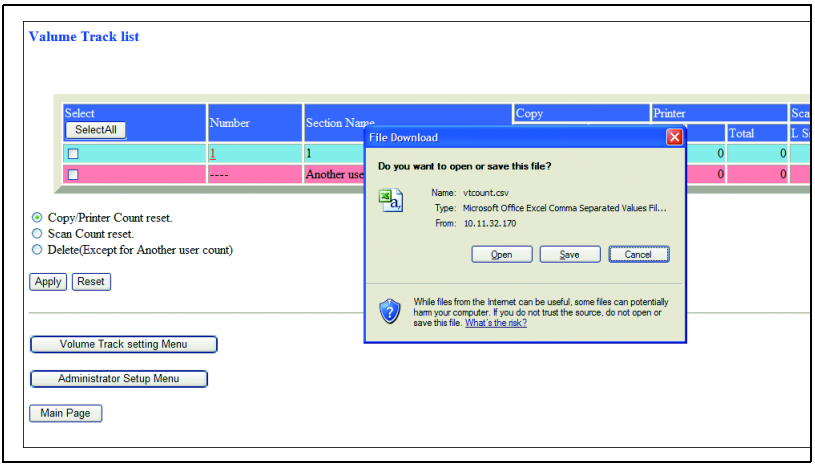


9 Save Counter.

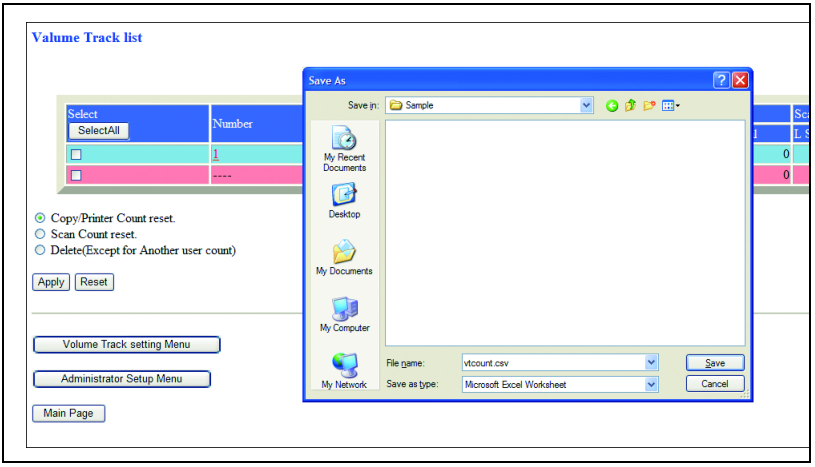
– Click on [Save this table as a file].



– Click on [Save].



In the dialogue box, designate the folder for saving the data, then click on [Save].



Detail

The account track data will be stored in CSV format.

The data cannot be saved while the machine is in operation. In this case, try this procedure again after the machine starts idling. Click on [Back] in the browser window to return to the Account Track Data List for starting over.

Example: Account track data list stored as a file

NUMBER	PASSWORD	NAME	COPYLARGECOUNT	COPYCOUNT	PRINTLARGECOUNT
4	2	cso2	0	0	0
8	3	cso3	0	0	0
9	4	cso4	0	0	0
24	csoED	CSO	0	0	0
1001		UNKNOWN	0	1	0

PRINTCOUNT	SCANLARGECOUNT	SCANCOUNT	LIMIT
0	0	0	50
0	0	0	50
0	0	0	10
0	0	0	11111111
0	0	0	0

The "Another user count" will be stored by the name of "UNKNOWN" in the last line.

7.3 Remote Panel Setting/Job History Setting

Follow the procedure below to control/monitor the current state of the machine using the web browser activated on a PC.

Remote Panel functions:
- Any touch panel screens can be displayed on the web browser.
- Touch panel keys and control panel keys can be operated using a PC mouse.
- Passwords can be entered using a PC keyboard.

Remote Monitor functions:
- The touch panel screens, job condition, and state of the machine can be monitored using the automatic reload function of the web browser.
- The remote panel can be displayed in an exclusive window.

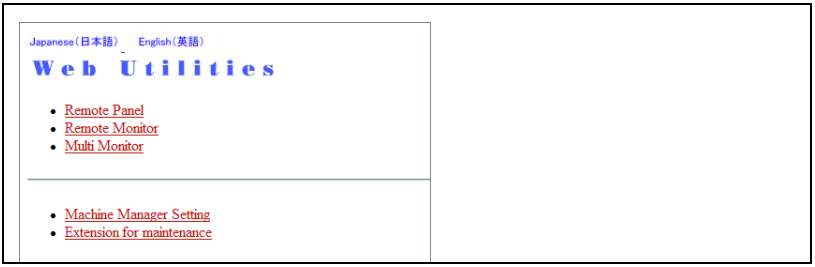
Multi Monitor functions:
- Up to 10 remote monitors can be displayed in a browser to overlook 10 machines at a time.
- The remote panel and remote monitor can be displayed in the same browser.

Prerequisites:
- JavaScript must be active.
- The machine should be connected with a PC over a network with TCP/IP enabled.
- Set the Enhance Security mode OFF on the machine.

Procedure

1 Open the Web Utilities window.

2 Click on [Machine Manager Setting].

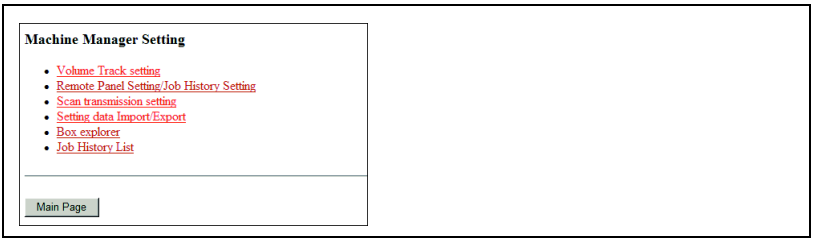


The Enter Network Password dialogue box will be displayed.

3 Enter “admin” in the User Name text box, and an 8-digit administrator password in the password text box, then click on [OK].

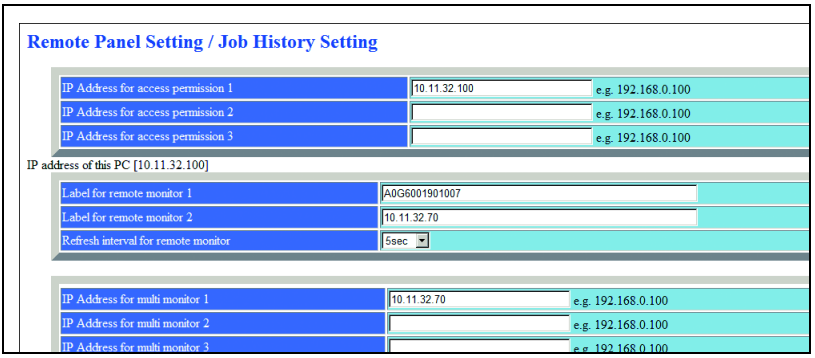
The Machine Manager Setting menu will be displayed.

4 Click on [Remote Panel Setting/Job History Setting].

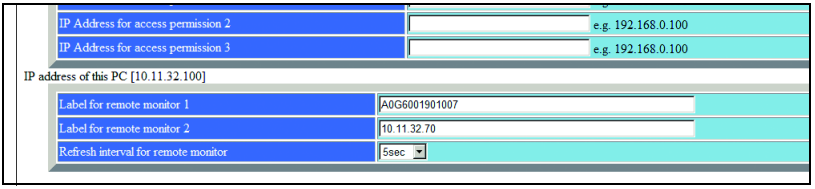


The Remote Panel Setting/Job History Setting menu will be displayed.

5 Make settings for Remote Panel.
Specify the IP address of the PC to be used for Remote Panel.
Up to 3 addresses can be entered.

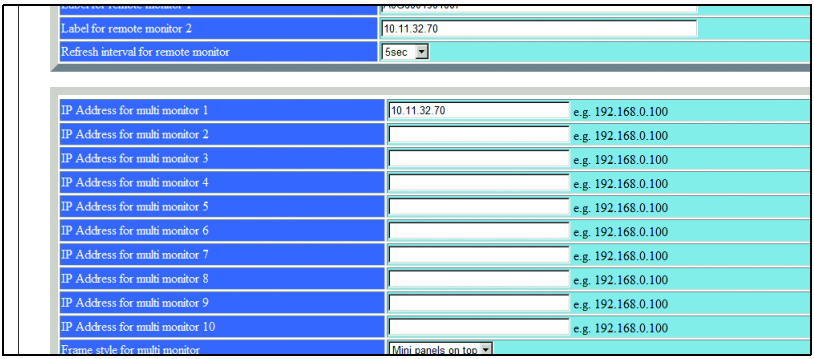


6 Make settings for Remote Monitor.
Enter the user label for the remote monitor, and select the desired refresh interval.



To complete the entry, click on [Registration], then click on [Administrator Setup Menu] to return to the Machine Manager Setting menu.

7 Make settings for Multi Monitor.
IP Address for multi monitor:
Specify the IP address of the machine to be monitored. Up to 10 addresses can be entered.
Frame style for multi monitor:
Select the location of the remote monitors (mini panels) from either the top or left side of the browser.



8 Click on [Registration].
The newly entered data will be registered on the machine immediately.

9 Click on [Administrator Setup Menu] to restore the Machine Manager Setting menu.

7.4 Setting Scan Transmission Function

Follow the procedure below to register, change, or delete the address for the transmission of the scanned image data using the web browser. For details of the Scan Transmission Setting, contact your service representative.

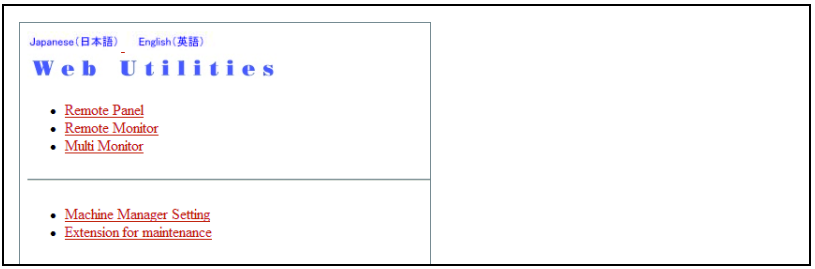
Prerequisites:

- The Scan Transmission Setting is not used in the machine.
- Using Scan Transmission Setting in the administrator setting, you cannot newly register an E-mail/HDD/FTP/SMB address or group the entries.
- The [Scan transmission setting] key appears in the Scan Transmission Setting window only when the optional Image Controller is installed in the machine.
- Click on the DAILY USE check box in the E-mail Registration table, if the data is frequently used.
- The symbols that cannot be displayed in the entry box will be ignored, if entered.
- The HDD Box No. will be registered as a 9-digit number.
  For example, entering [1] will be registered as [000000001].

Procedure

1 Open the Web Utilities window.

2 Click on [Machine Manager Setting].

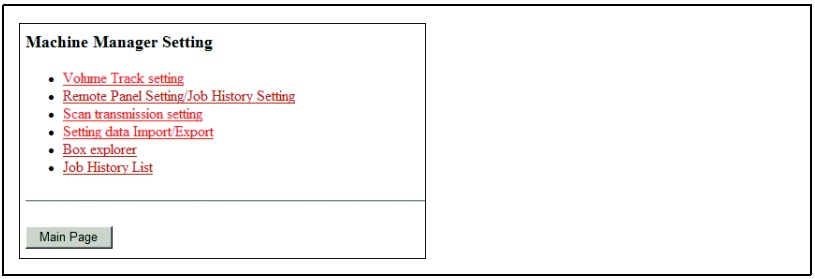


The Enter Network Password dialogue box will be displayed.

3 Enter “admin” in the User Name text box, and an 8-digit administrator password in the password text box, then click on [OK].

The Machine Manager Setting menu will be displayed.

4 Click on [Scan transmission setting].

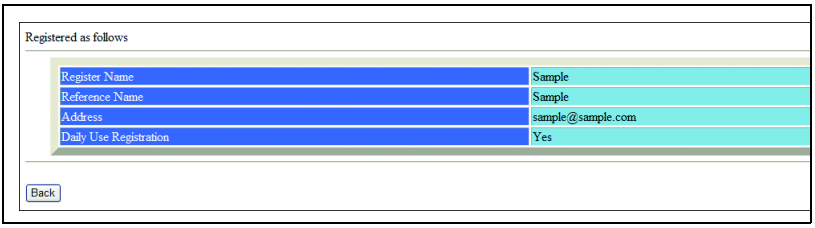


The Scan Transmission Setting window will be displayed.

5 Register the E-mail, HDD, FTP, and SMB, as required.

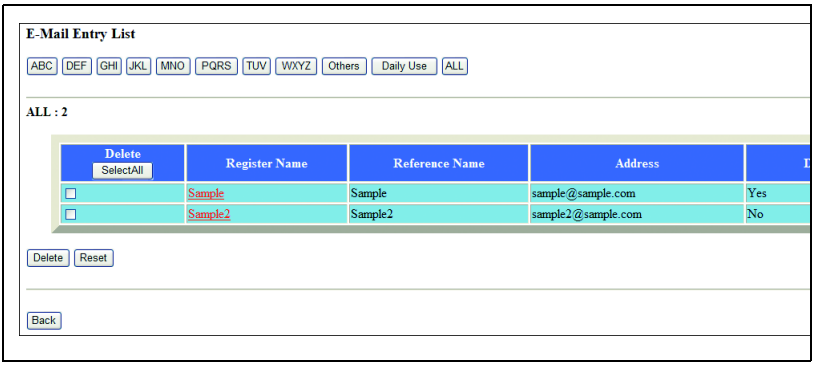


6 Click on [Registration] to complete the entry.
The registered content will be displayed.



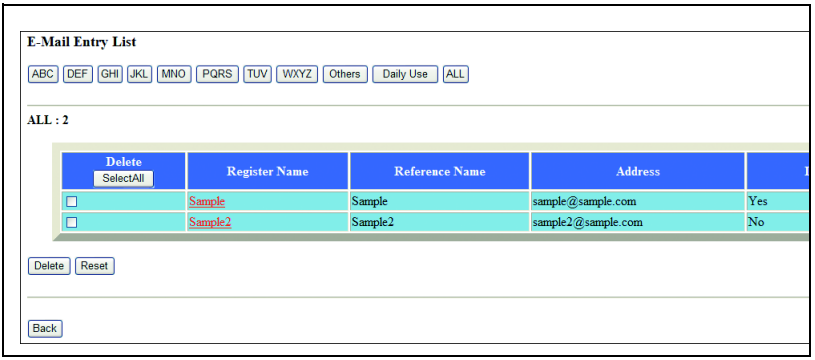
Click on [Back] to return to the Scan Transmission Setting window.

7 Display the Entry List.
Click on [Entry List] of the desired item under the entry box to display the Entry List.

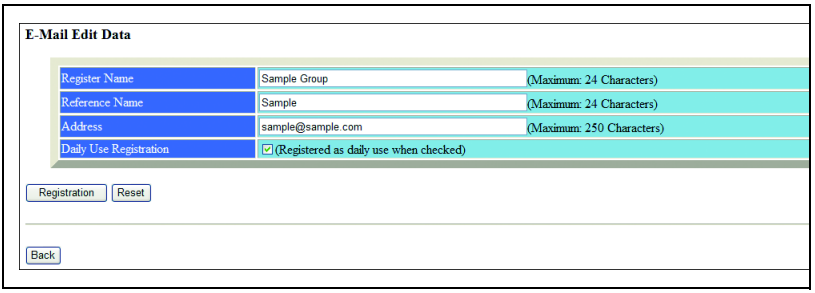


Click on [Back] to return to the Scan Transmission Setting window.

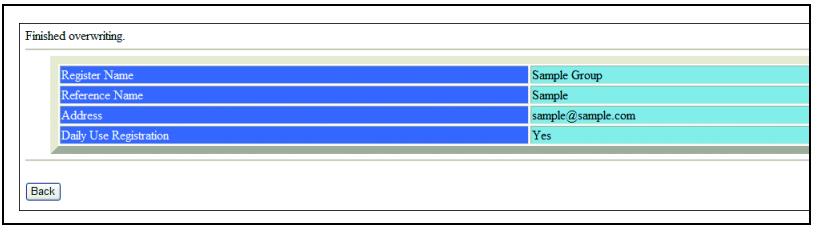
8 Change the registered contents.
Display the Entry List of the desired item as described in step 7.



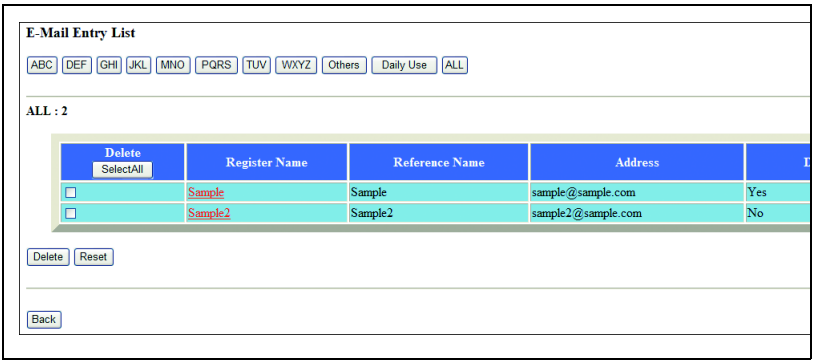
Click on the entry name to be changed.
The window for changing the selected item will be displayed.
Change the contents as desired, then click on [Registration].



The registered content will be displayed.
Click on [Back] to return to the Scan Transmission Setting window.

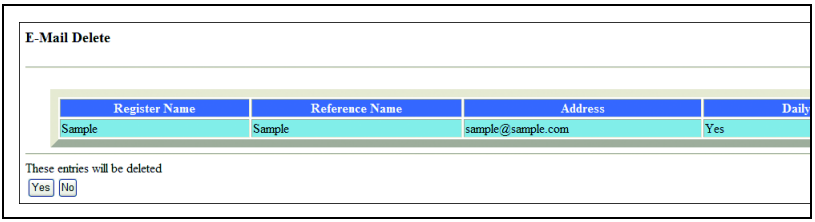


9 Delete the registered contents.
Display the Entry List of the desired item as described in step 7.



Click on the check box in the Delete column of the item to be deleted, then click on [Delete]. If all the data are to be cleared, click on [Select All].

The window for deleting the selected item will be displayed.
Confirm the registered name to be deleted, then click on [Yes].



Click on [Back] to return to the Entry List window.
Click on [Back] to return to the Scan Transmission Setting window.

7.5 Transmitting Machine Setting File

Follow the procedure below to transmit the following setting file from the machine to a PC (export) using the web browser, edit the setting data on the PC, then return the file to the machine (import).

Account track data (max. 1,000 files)
Five Scan Transmission Setting data (max. 500 files in total)

- E-mail data (E-mail address)
- HDD (Box No.)
- FTP (FTP server address)
- SMB (shared folder)
- Paper Setting data

Prerequisites:

- The machine setting file can be stored in a PC so that it may be returned to the machine at any time, and is available for common use if you have two or more machines.
- The file transmitted to a PC, being converted to a file type for batch processing, can be edited efficiently and returned to the machine.
- The file transmitted to a PC normally contains the four data types mentioned above, however, each data type can be made into a file and transmitted separately.
- The exported setting file of this machine can be imported to another model, and vice versa. For details, contact your service representative.



Detail

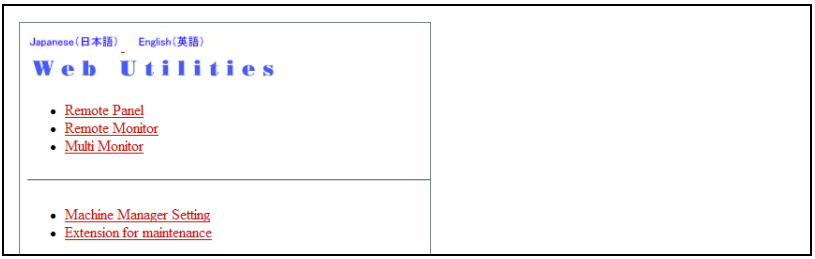
The exported setting file of this machine can be imported to another model, and vice versa. For details, contact your service representative.

The file name is automatically assigned as described below. Select the data to be exported, changing the name if desired.
vt_tab.txt (account track data)
ip_email.txt (E-mail data of Scan Transmission Setting data)
ip_hdd.txt (HDD data of Scan Transmission Setting data)
ip_ftp.txt (FTP data of Scan Transmission Setting data)
ip_smb.txt (SMB data of Scan Transmission Setting data)
paper_setting.txt (Paper Setting data)

Procedure

1 Open the Web Utilities window.

2 Click on [Machine Manager Setting].

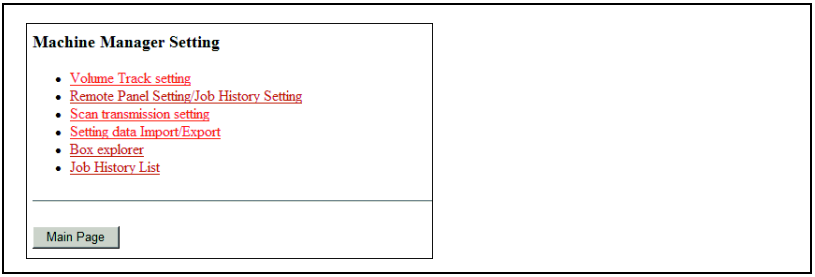


The Enter Network Password dialogue box will be displayed.

3 Enter “admin” in the User Name text box, and an 8-digit administrator password in the password text box, then click on [OK].

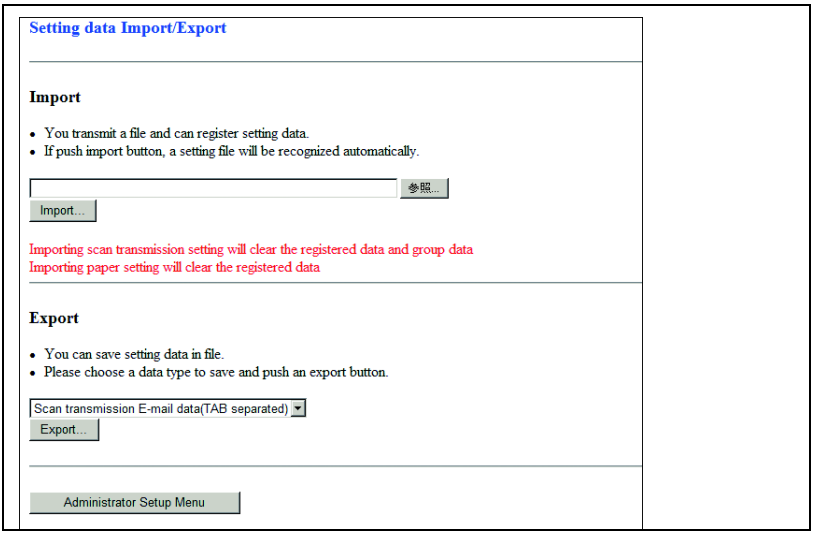
The Machine Manager Setting menu will be displayed.

4 Click on [Setting data Import/Export].

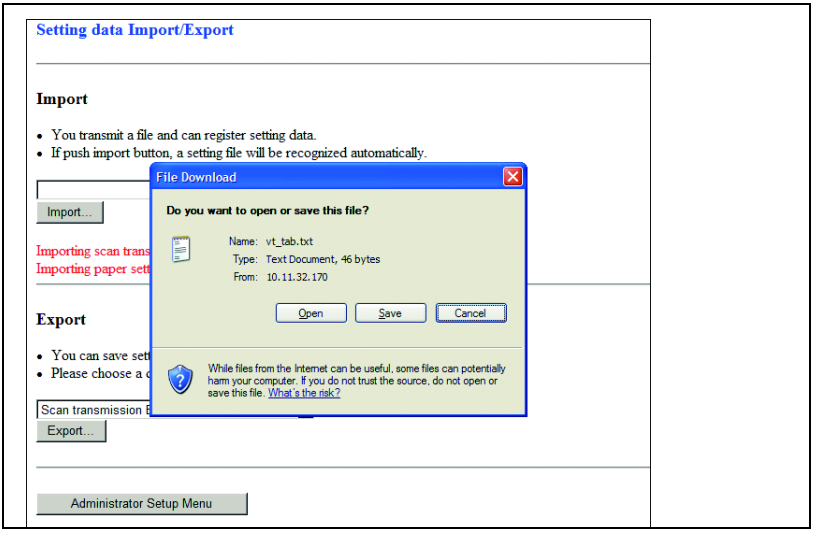


The Setting Data Import/Export window will be displayed.

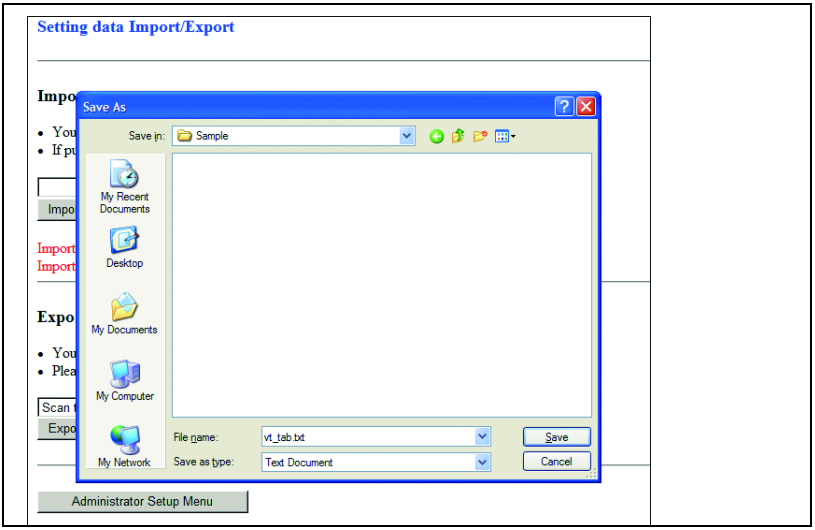
5 Export the machine setting file.
Select the desired file type from the pull-down menu, then click on [Export….]



The File Download dialogue box will be displayed.
Click on [OK].



In the dialogue box, designate the folder for saving the machine setting file, then click on [Save].



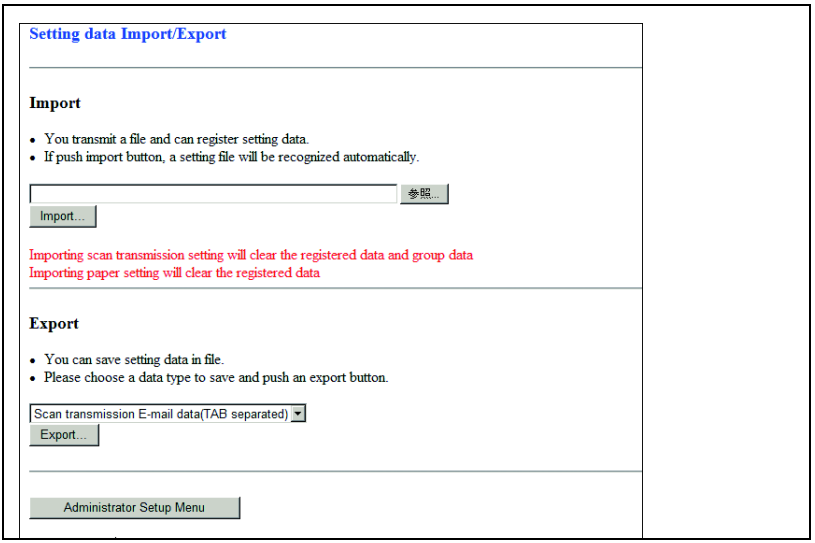
A dialogue box will be displayed when the saving operation is completed.

Click on [Close].

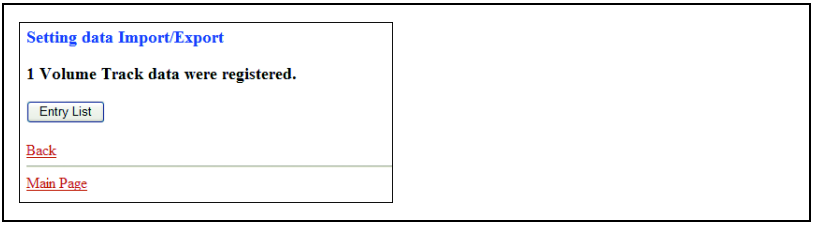
6 Edit the machine setting file.

The machine setting file transmitted to a PC is a TAB separated text file which can be edited using an application software such as Text Editor or Table Editor. A new setting file can also be created according to the specifications for each file type. See page 7-30 for details.

7 Import the machine setting file.
Click on [Browse…] to designate the machine setting file to be imported, then click on [Import].



The result message will be displayed when the registration is completed.



...

Note

The file cannot be accessed when the machine is operating. If an error message is displayed, try again to save the file after the current machine operation is completed.

...

Note

If the registration cannot be completed successfully, error messages will be displayed as follows.

Can't transfer data (The machine is busy)
Try again to import the data after the machine operation in progress is completed.

The data cannot be recognized
Confirm that the data is the machine setting file.

Data size is too large
Confirm that the data is the machine setting file.
Check if the file size exceeds 100,000 bytes.

The data cannot be registered
Check if inappropriate description is made in the machine setting file.
Check if the file entries are already over the limit.

To Edit the Machine Setting File

- Save the file as a text.
- Begin the file with a specified tag. (ex. #EKC_TAB)
- A line should be 300 bytes or less.
- The file size should be 100,000 bytes or less.
- The line that begins with "#" is a comment.

ex. Machine setting file of an account track data

```
#EKC_TAB
 #PASSWORD NAME      LIMIT
 00003636  ---ADMIN  100000
 00000001  -------1  100000
 00008156  -----KEN  000010
 00000123  -----AAA  100000
 12345678  -------A  001000
 00000120  ----AAAA  010000
 00003636  -ADADMIN  100000
```

Specifications for Each Machine Setting File Type

Account track data setting file:
- Begin the file with #EKC_TAB.
- Max. 1,000 files can be edited.
- A line should include PASSWORD, NAME, and LIMIT, separated by a tab.
- Use up to 8 digits numbers (0 - 9) and alphabets only to specify PASSWORD.
- Use numbers and alphabets only to specify NAME.
- Use up to 8 digits numbers (0 - 9) only to specify LIMIT (0 – 99,999,999).

E-mail data setting file:
- Begin the file with #IP_EMAIL.
- A line should include NAME, ADDRESS, REFERENCE, and DAILY, separated by a tab.
- NAME should be 24 bytes or less.
- ADDRESS should be 250 bytes or less.
- REFERENCE should be 250 bytes or less.
- Mark DAILY USE with “1” or DAILY NOT USE with “0” in each column.

HDD data setting file:
- Begin the file name with #IP_HDD.
- A line should include NAME, NUMBER, REFERENCE, or DAILY, separated by a tab.
- NAME should be 24 bytes or less.
- Use up to 9 digits numbers (0 - 9) only to specify a NUMBER.
- REFERENCE should be 24 bytes or less.
- Mark DAILY USE with “1” or DAILY NOT USE with “0” in each column.

FTP data setting file:
- Begin the file name with #IP_FTP.
- A line should include NAME, ADDRESS, PORT, FILEPATH, LOGINNAME, PASSWORD, REFERENCE, or DAILY being separated by a tab.
- NAME should be 24 bytes or less.
- ADDRESS should be 63 bytes or less.
- Use up to 5 digits numbers (0 - 9) only to specify PORT (1 – 65,535).
- FILEPATH should be 96 bytes or less.
- LOGINNAME should be 47 bytes or less.
- PASSWORD should be 24 bytes or less.
- REFERENCE should be 24 bytes or less.
- Mark DAILY USE with “1” or DAILY NOT USE with “0” in each column.

SMB data setting file:
- Begin the file name with #IP_SMB.
- A line should include NAME, ADDRESS, FILEPATH, LOGINNAME, PASSWORD, REFERENCE, or DAILY being separated by a tab.
- NAME should be 24 bytes or less.
- ADDRESS should be 63 bytes or less.
- FILEPATH should be 96 bytes or less.

- LOGINNAME should be 47 bytes or less.
- PASSWORD should be 14 bytes or less.
- REFERENCE should be 24 bytes or less.
- Mark DAILY USE with “1” or DAILY NOT USE with “0” in each column.

7.6 Using Box Explorer

Perform operation for the box data (folder, box, file) created on the HDD using the web browser on a PC, and also store the data in the CD/DVD or USB memory/USB-HDD, or restore them in the machine.

Available functions:

- Operation for HDD of the main body
  Refer to/Rename/Delete/Copy the box data created and stored on HDD of the main body.
  Create thumbnail images to display the box data on HDD of the main body.
- Operation for CD/DVD drive or USB memory/USB-HDD externally connected to the connection port of the main body
  Refer to the box data on CD/DVD or USB memory/USB-HDD.
  Store the box data from HDD of the main body onto CD/DVD or USB memory/USB-HDD for backup.
  Restore the box data from CD/DVD or USB memory/USB-HDD onto HDD of the main body.
- Display of Box Explorer logs
  Clicking on [log...] at the bottom of Box Explorer Screen on web browser displays the latest 10 logs.
  These logs can be displayed in the same position of the screen for any of main body HDD, CD/DVD, and USB memory/USB-HDD. Switching these devices neither changes nor rewrites the logs. The logs will remain after the browser is restarted, however, they will be cleared when the machine is turned off then on.

Limitations:

- The Box Explorer cannot be used from multiple browsers at the same time.
- The box data cannot be referred to or renamed if a password has been created, while copying/storing/restoring the data is available.
- While making an access via Box Explorer, operation from the control panel of main body or printing operation from the external PC is unavailable.
- When any job remains in the main body, making an access via Box Explorer is unavailable.
- Box Explorer is unavailable when selecting a file from the HDD Store Screen or HDD Recall Screen displayed on the touch panel of the main body.
- Box Explorer is unavailable when using Security Strengthen mode and User Authentication/Account Track setting.
- The external CD/DVD drive cannot open when referring/storing/restoring the box data on CD/DVD.
- Though the main body is provided with three ports and can be connected with more than one CD/DVD or USB memory/USB-HDD, this function is available only to the last-connected device.

Reminder

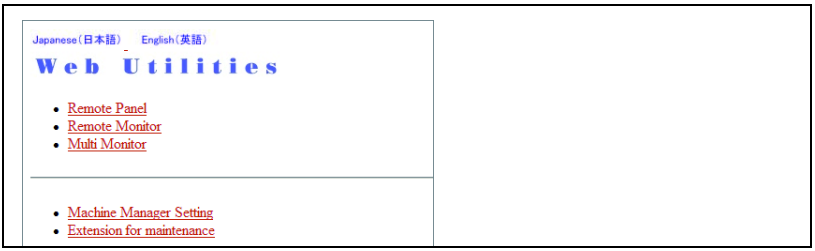
Do not disconnect the CD/DVD drive or USB memory/USB-HDD from the connection port while referring/storing/restoring the box data on CD/DVD or USB memory/USB-HDD.

7.6.1 Displaying the Box Explorer Screen

Procedure

1 Open the Web Utilities window.

2 Click on [Machine Manager Setting].

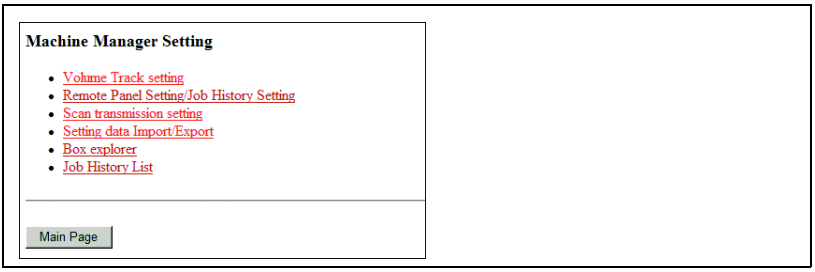


The Enter Network Password dialog box will be displayed.

3 Enter “admin” in the User Name text box, and an 8-digit administrator password in the password text box, then click on [OK].

The Machine Manager Setting menu will be displayed.

4 Click on [Box explorer].



The Box Explorer Screen will be displayed.

Note

The user name is fixed to [admin] and cannot be changed.

Use the administrator password previously specified on the machine. The default setting is 00000000.

Once entered, the user name and password will remain in memory for the duration of your access to the menu. However, if you restart the Web browser, you will have to enter the user name and password again to log in.

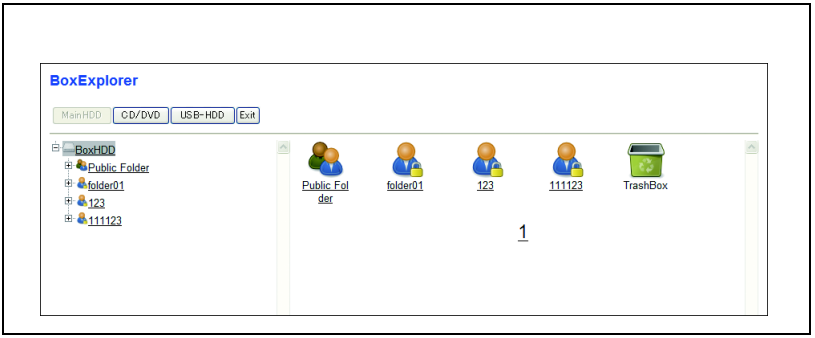
7.6.2 Operation for HDD of the Main Body

Procedure

1 Display the Box Explorer Screen.

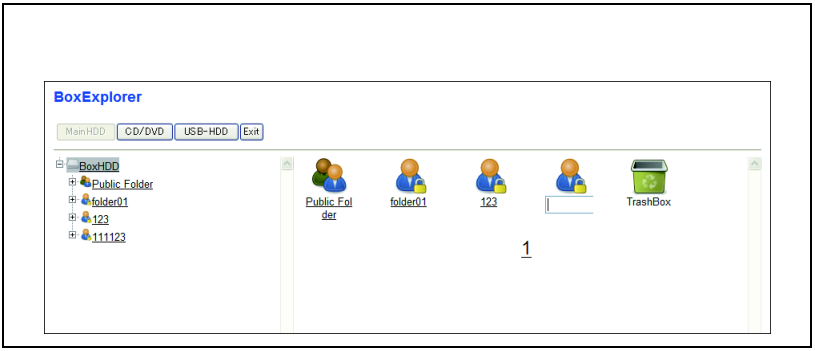
2 Create thumbnail images for the box data on HDD of the main body.

– On the screen for referring to the HDD of the main body, the tree display appears on the left side area of the screen.
Click on the desired file on the tree display to create thumbnail images.



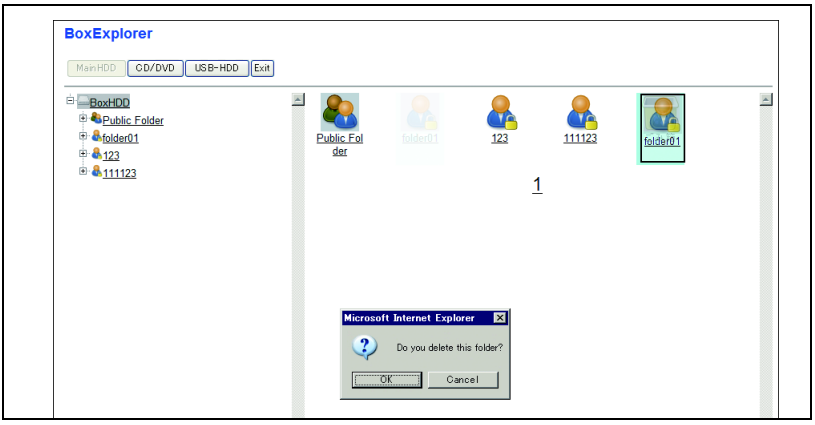
3 Rename the box data on the HDD of the main body.
Clicking on the desired box name (as in step 6), a text box will appear at the top of the Box Name area.

– On the screen for referring to the HDD of the main body, the icon display appears on right left side area of the screen.
Click on the file name of the desired icon to highlight it, enter the new name, then click anywhere to deselect it for completion.



4 Delete the box data from HDD of the main body.

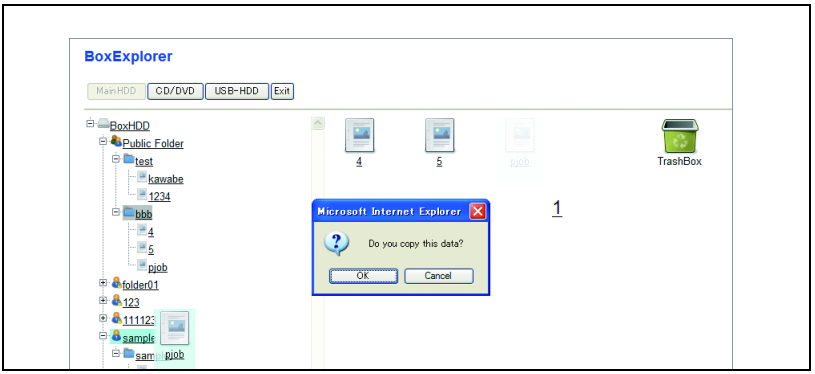
– Drag and drop the icon of the desired data into the trash bin. The dialog box will appear for confirmation. Click on [OK] to delete it.



5 Copy the box data on HDD of the main body.

– Drag and drop the icon of the desired data into the destination in the tree display. The dialog box will appear for confirmation.

– Click on [OK] to copy the data. To cancel the operation, click on [Cancel].



6 Click on [Exit].

Machine Manager Setting menu will be restored.

Note

Clicking on [Return] or [Update] on the browser cannot exit the Box Explorer but display the message "Box Explorer is locked by other user. This page will move to top page after 5 seconds.", and the Box Explorer Screen cannot be restored. In this case, exit the Box Explorer using the touch panel on the machine.

7.6.3 Operation for CD/DVD Drive Externally Connected to the Connection Port of the Main Body

Follow the procedure below to refer to the box data on CD/DVD of the drive connected to the connection port of the main body, to store the box data for backup, and to restore the box data onto HDD of the main body.

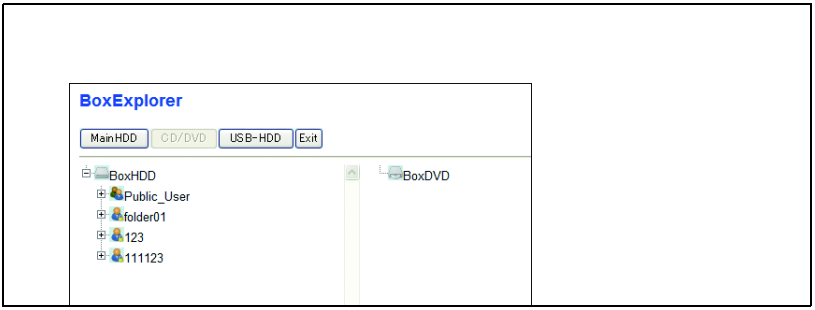
Reminder

Do not disconnect the CD/DVD drive from the connection port while referring/storing/restoring the box data on CD/DVD.

Procedure

1 Display the Box Explorer Screen.

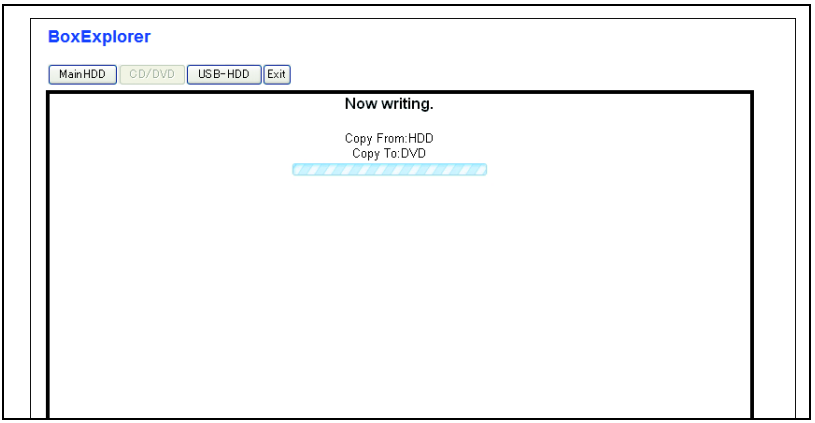
2 Click on [CD/DVD].



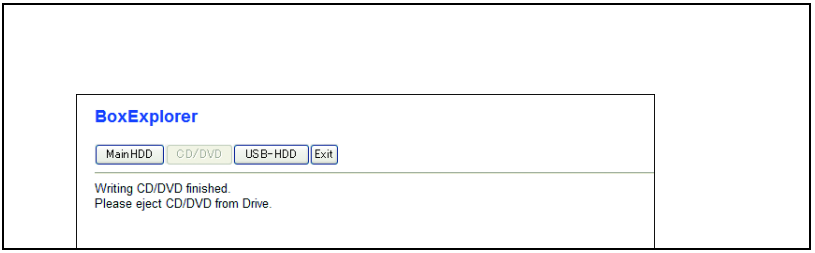
The tree display of CD/DVD will appear on the right side of the screen.

3 Store the box data from HDD of the main body to CD/DVD for backup.

– Drag and drop the desired data from the tree display of the main body HDD to the destination in the tree display of CD/DVD.



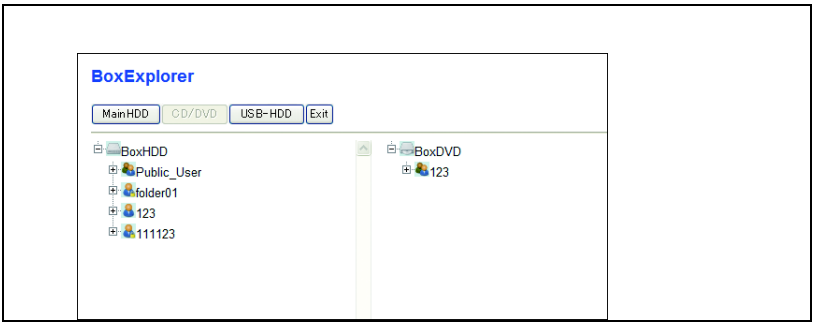
– The dialog box will appear for confirmation. Click on [OK] to store the data. To cancel the operation, click on [Cancel].
If data of the same name exists in the destination, the dialog box will appear to confirm you of overwriting. Clicking on [OK] will overwrite the data and display the screen for the operation in progress. To cancel the operation, click on [Cancel].
– When overwriting operation is completed, the Overwriting Complete Screen will be displayed.



– To continue the backup operation using the same CD/DVD, open and close the drive once, then click on [CD/DVD].

4 Restore the box data from CD/DVD to HDD of the main body.

– Drag and drop the desired data in the tree display of CD/DVD to the destination in tree display of the main body HDD.



– The dialog box will appear for confirmation. Click on [OK] to restore it. To cancel the operation, click on [Cancel].

5 Click on [Exit].

Machine Manager Setting menu will be restored.

Note

Clicking on [Return] or [Update] on the browser cannot exit the Box Explorer but display the message "Box Explorer is locked by other user. This page will move to top page after 5 seconds.", and the Box Explorer Screen cannot be restored. In this case, exit the Box Explorer using the touch panel on the machine.

7.6.4 Operation for USB memory/USB-HDD Externally Connected to the Connection Port of the Main Body

Follow the procedure below to refer to the box data on CD/DVD of the drive connected to the connection port of the main body, to store the box data for backup, and to restore the box data onto HDD of the main body.

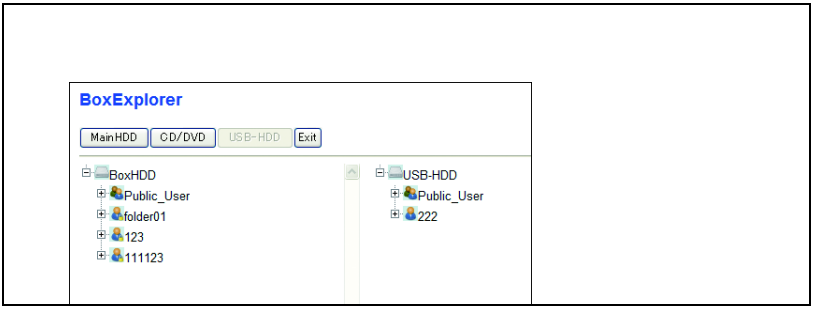
Reminder

Do not disconnect the USB memory/USB-HDD from the connection port while referring/storing/restoring the box data on USB memory/USB-HDD.

Procedure

1 Display the Box Explorer Screen.

2 Click on [USB-HDD].



The tree display of USB-HDD will appear on the right side of the screen.

3 Store the box data from HDD of the main body to USB-HDD for back-up.

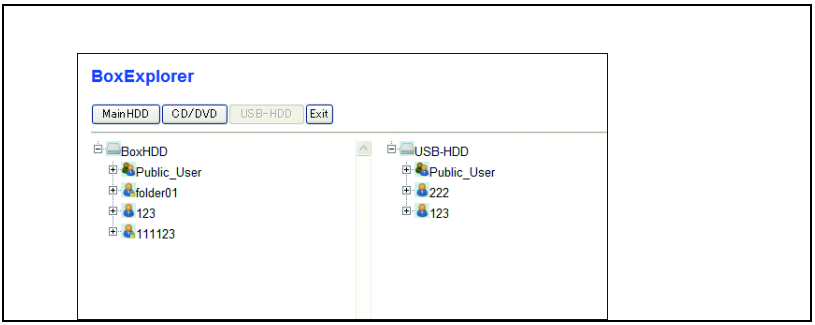
– Drag and drop the desired data from the tree display of the main body HDD to the destination in the tree display of USB-HDD.



– The dialog box will appear for confirmation. Click on [OK] to store the data. To cancel the operation, click on [Cancel].

4 Restore the box data from USB memory/USB-HDD to HDD of the main body.

– Drag and drop the desired data in the tree display of USB-HDD to the destination in tree display of the main body HDD.



– The dialog box will appear for confirmation. Click on [OK] to restore it. To cancel the operation, click on [Cancel].

5 Click on [Exit].

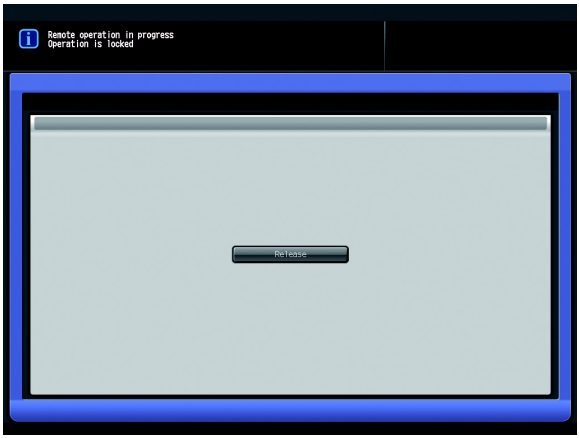
Machine Manager Setting menu will be restored.

Note

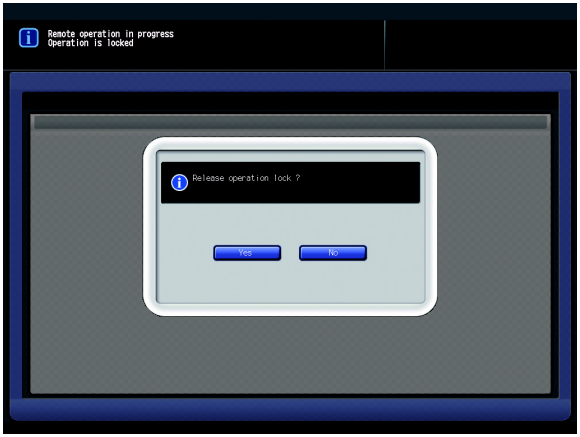
Clicking on [Return] or [Update] on the browser cannot exit the Box Explorer but display the message "Box Explorer is locked by other user. This page will move to top page after 5 seconds.", and the Box Explorer Screen cannot be restored. In this case, exit the Box Explorer using the touch panel on the machine.

7.6.5 Exiting Box Explorer from Control Panel of the Main Body

With the Box Explorer activated, the control panel of the main body is locked and unavailable for any operation. The following screen is displayed on the touch panel.



To unlock for enabling the operation from the control panel, touch [Release Lock], then touch [Yes] on the confirmation screen.



7.7 Displaying Job History

Use the web browser to display the job history of the machine.
The Job List Screen is also available on the touch panel of the machine to check the job history, however, it will be cleared when the machine is turned off. The job history in Web Utilities, stored on HDD, allows you to check the job history even when the machine is turned off.

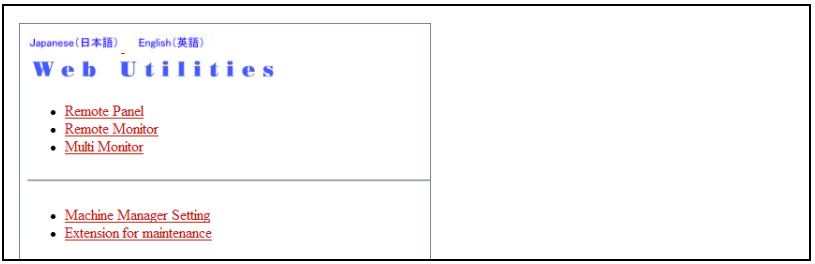
7.7.1 Turning On/Off Job History

The Job History function is initially turned off. Follow the procedure below to turn on/off this function.

Procedure

1 Open the Web Utilities window.

2 Click on [Machine Manager Setting].

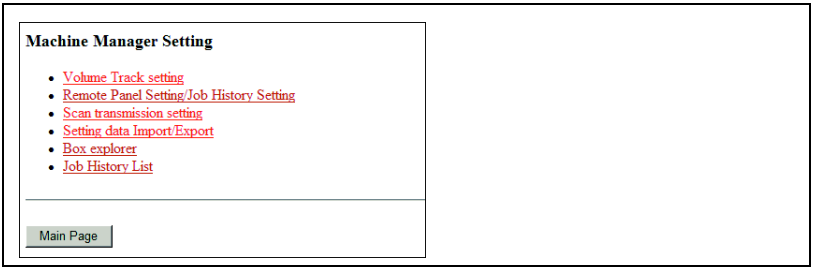


The Enter Network Password dialog box will be displayed.

3 Enter “admin” in the User Name text box, and an 8-digit administrator password in the password text box, then click on [OK].

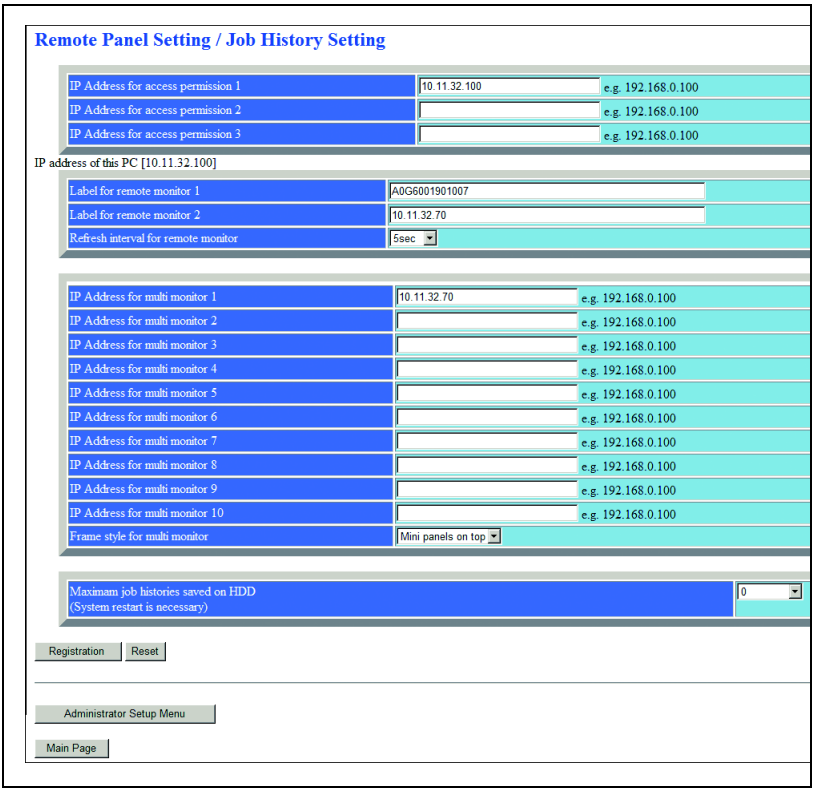
The Machine Manager Setting menu will be displayed.

4 Click on [Remote Panel Setting/Job History Setting].



The Remote Panel Setting/Job History Setting menu will be displayed.

5 Make the setting for Job History.
To turn on the Job History function, select either 100,000/500,000/1,000,000 to specify the maximum number of jobs to be stored on HDD.
To turn off this function, select “0”.



Please be aware that changing the maximum number of jobs may reset the job history data.

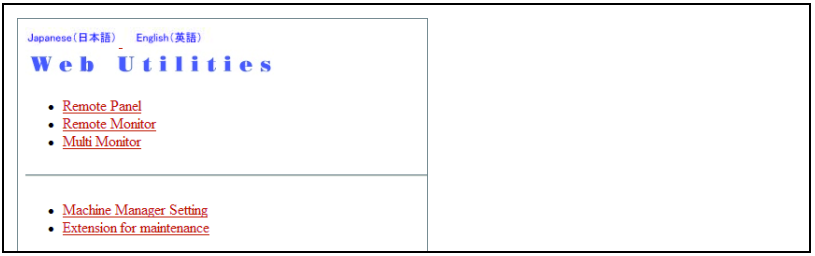
6 Activate the setting.
Click on [Registration], then turn off/on the main power switch.
When turning the main power switch off then on, be sure to wait 10 seconds or longer before turning it on again; otherwise the machine may not be operate properly.

7.7.2 Displaying Job History List

Procedure

1 Open the Web Utilities window.

2 Click on [Machine Manager Setting].

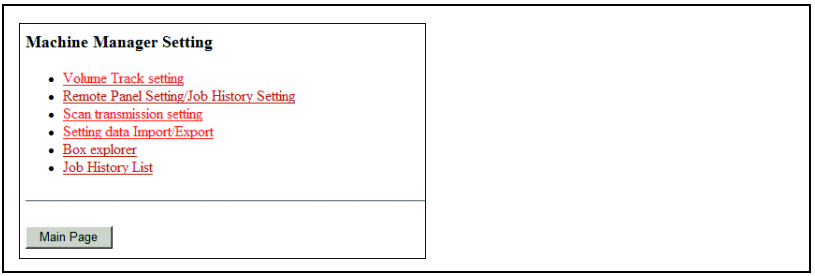


The Enter Network Password dialog box will be displayed.

3 Enter “admin” in the User Name text box, and an 8-digit administrator password in the password text box, then click on [OK].

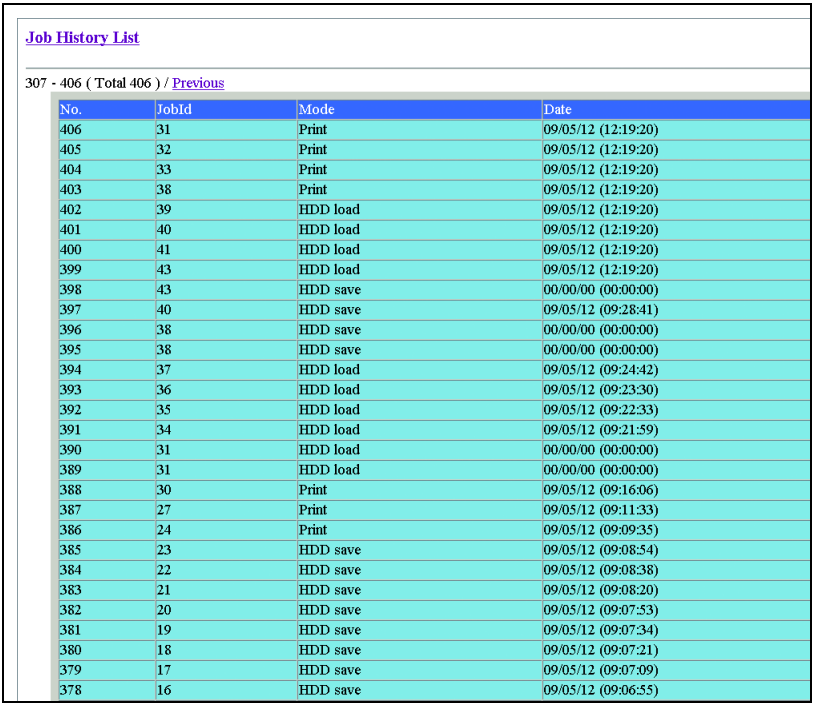
The Machine Manager Setting menu will be displayed.

4 Click on [Job History List].



The Job History List menu will be displayed.

5 Check the job history in the list.
The list provides the history number (No.), job number (JobId), mode, and the date when the job was performed (Date).
Use the following keys to change the display.
[Job History List]: Displays last 100 jobs.
[Previous]: Scrolls to the previous 100 jobs.
[Next]: Scrolls to the next 100 jobs.



Job History List

307 - 406 (Total 406) / Previous

No.	JobId	Mode	Date
406	31	Print	09/05/12 (12:19:20)
405	32	Print	09/05/12 (12:19:20)
404	33	Print	09/05/12 (12:19:20)
403	38	Print	09/05/12 (12:19:20)
402	39	HDD load	09/05/12 (12:19:20)
401	40	HDD load	09/05/12 (12:19:20)
400	41	HDD load	09/05/12 (12:19:20)
399	43	HDD load	09/05/12 (12:19:20)
398	43	HDD save	00/00/00 (00:00:00)
397	40	HDD save	09/05/12 (09:28:41)
396	38	HDD save	00/00/00 (00:00:00)
395	38	HDD save	00/00/00 (00:00:00)
394	37	HDD load	09/05/12 (09:24:42)
393	36	HDD load	09/05/12 (09:23:30)
392	35	HDD load	09/05/12 (09:22:33)
391	34	HDD load	09/05/12 (09:21:59)
390	31	HDD load	00/00/00 (00:00:00)
389	31	HDD load	00/00/00 (00:00:00)
388	30	Print	09/05/12 (09:16:06)
387	27	Print	09/05/12 (09:11:33)
386	24	Print	09/05/12 (09:09:35)
385	23	HDD save	09/05/12 (09:08:54)
384	22	HDD save	09/05/12 (09:08:38)
383	21	HDD save	09/05/12 (09:08:20)
382	20	HDD save	09/05/12 (09:07:53)
381	19	HDD save	09/05/12 (09:07:34)
380	18	HDD save	09/05/12 (09:07:21)
379	17	HDD save	09/05/12 (09:07:09)
378	16	HDD save	09/05/12 (09:06:55)

The items provided in the job history list can be changed. For details, contact your service representative.

8 PageScope Web Connection Setting

8 PageScope Web Connection Setting

8.1 PageScope Web Connection Outlines

PageScope Web Connection is a device control utility program provided by the HTTP server built into the image controller of the KONICA MINOLTA bizhub PRO 1200/1051. This utility can be used with a Web browser to display the status of the bizhub PRO 1200/1051 printer, scanner, and network, and to change the default settings of printer and network settings.

Detail

The PageScope Web Connection cannot be used in the following condition.
The Security Strengthen mode is set on.
The PSWC setting is set to "Disable". For details, see Utility Menu Screen - 06 Administrator Setting - 04 Network Setting - 02 Controller NIC Setting - 03 HTTP Server Setting.

8.1.1 System Requirements

To fully access all the features of PageScope Web Connection, the operating computer must meet the following requirements.

Operating System	Web Browser
Windows 2000, XP, Server 2003	Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 (recommended) Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.x, in which MSXML3 must be installed (*) Mozilla Firefox 1.0 or higher
Windows Vista, Server 2008	Microsoft Internet Explorer 7 or higher (recommended) Mozilla Firefox 1.0 or higher
Windows 7	Microsoft Internet Explorer 8 or higher (recommended) Mozilla Firefox 1.0 or higher
Macintosh Mac OS 9.x, X	Mozilla Firefox 1.0 or higher
Linux	Mozilla Firefox 1.0 or higher

* Download MSXML3.0 from Microsoft Download Center and install it on your system.

Note

Choose Flash or HTML to view the PageScope Web Connection. For viewing the Flash page, you need Adobe Flash Player installed.

8.1.2 Web Browser Settings

1. JavaScript
   JavaScript must be active. For setting JavaScript, see the following procedure.
- Internet Explorer
  Select [Internet Options] under [Tools]. Select the [Security] tab and then click [Custom Level]. Scroll down to the item that reads [Active Scripting]. Select the option marked [Enable].
- FireFox
  Select [Options] under [Tools]. Select [Contents] and then check [Enable JavaScript for].

2. Cookies
   Cookies must be active. For setting cookies, see the following procedure.
- Internet Explorer
  Select [Internet Options] under [Tools]. Select the [Privacy] tab and then move the slider to the [High] privacy setting.
- FireFox
  Select [Options] under [Tools]. Select [Contents] and then check [Enable JavaScript for].

3. Cache
   Confirm the following cache setting using the browser.
- Internet Explorer
  Select [Internet Options] under [Tools]. Select the [General] tab and then click [Settings]. Check [Every visit to the page] under [Check for newer versions of stored pages:].
- FireFox
  Select [Options] under [Tools]. Select [Contents] and then check [Enable JavaScript for].

4. KONICA MINOLTA PageScope Web Connection Logo
   Click the KONICA MINOLTA logo to jump to the Konica Minolta web site.
   http://www.konicaminolta.com
   Click the PageScope Web Connection logo to jump to the About Screen, providing the version information and the copyright description.
   Click the PageScope Web Connection logo on the About Screen to jump to the following Web site.
   http://www.pagescope.com

8.2 Access

PageScope Web Connection can be accessed directly from a Web browser.

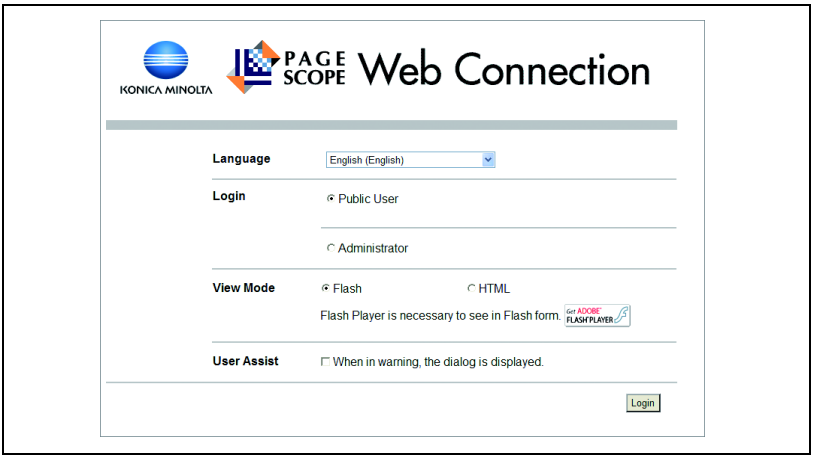
Procedures

1 Start the Web browser.

2 In the Address bar, enter the IP address of the image controller as shown below. Then press the [Enter] key.
http://IP address of the image controller/
(Example) When the IP address of the image controller is 192.168.0.10:
http://192.168.0.10

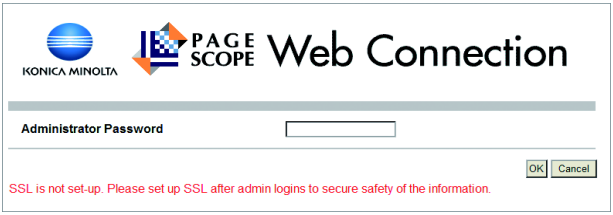
3 The top page of PageScope Web Connection Screen appears.

4 Select “Administrator” from the Login options, then click [Login].



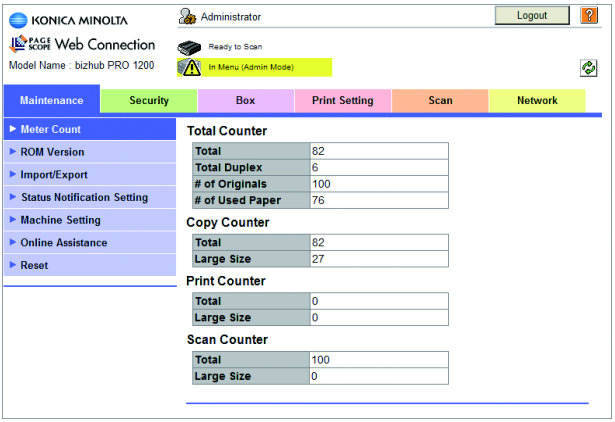
– Language can be selected as desired. Select it from the Language drop-down list.
– View mode can be selected from Flash/HTML. Click the desired mode to select it before logging in.
– In this guide, “English” and “Flash” are selected for instructions.

5 Enter the administrator password.



– To ensure the security of the data in administrator mode, please make the SSL setting. This setting is included in the [Security] tab settings. See page 8-20 for details.
– Use the preset administrator password. The default is “00000000”.

6 Make the desired settings selected from the six tab settings.

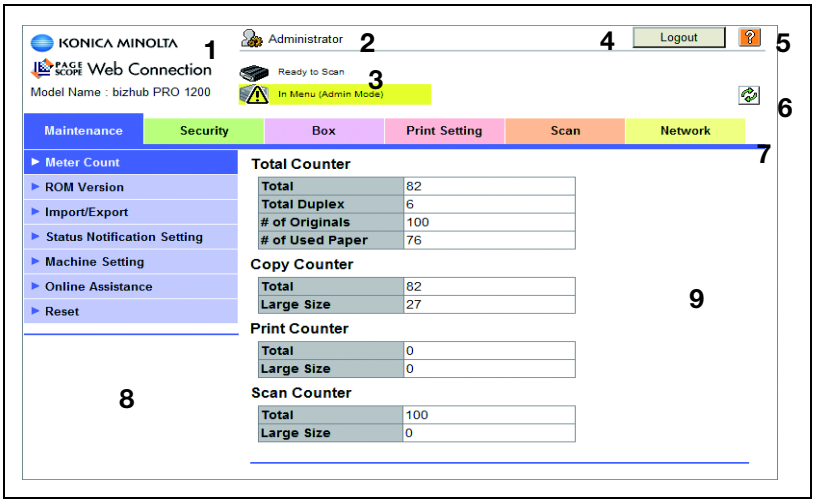


– PageScope Web Connection operation is identical to Internet Web pages. You can click a link on the Web page to jump to the link destination.

7 To log out, click [Logout].

8.3 Configuration of Administrator Mode Screen

The Administrator Mode Screen can only be accessed by entering a specific administrator password.
The configuration of the Administrator Mode Screen is shown below.



1. KONICA MINOLTA PageScope Web Connection logo
   Click the KONICA MINOLTA logo to jump to the Konica Minolta web site.
   http://www.konicaminolta.com
   Click the PageScope Web Connection logo to jump to the About Screen, providing the version information and the copyright description.
   Click the PageScope Web Connection logo on the About Screen to jump to the following Web site.
   http://www.pagescope.com

2. Administrator
   Indicates that the current screen is exclusive and accessed by an administrator.

3. Status display
   Icons and text indicate the current status of the main body's printer and scanner.

4. Logout
   Clicked to log out the administrator mode.

5. Help
   If an on-line manual URL has been set, the on-line manual will appear.
   For details, see page 8-13.

6. Reload
   Clicked to reload the current page.

7. Tabs
   Select the categories of items to be displayed.
- Maintenance
- Security
- Box
- Print Setting
- Scan
- Network

   For the details of each tab, see the following sections.

8. Menus
   Selects the information or setup item to be displayed. The menus that appear vary according to the tab selection.
   For the details of each menu, see the following sections.

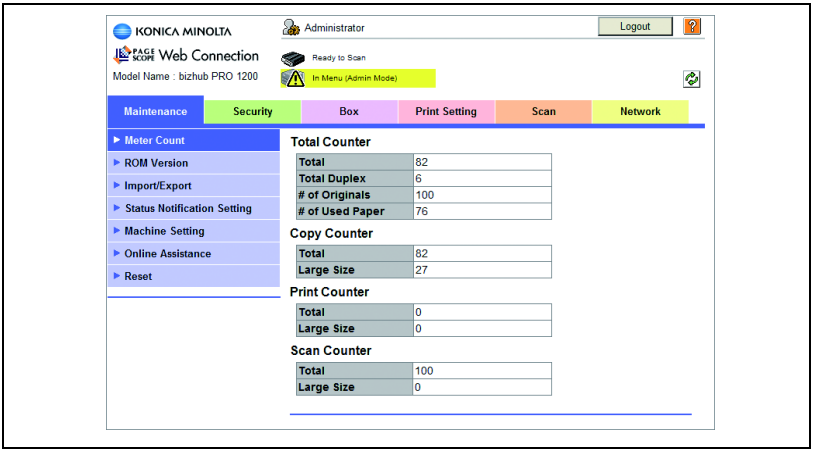
9. Information and setting details
   Displays the details of the selected menu.

8.4 Maintenance Tab

The [Maintenance] tab provides information and settings concerning the maintenance of the machine.

8.4.1 Meter Count

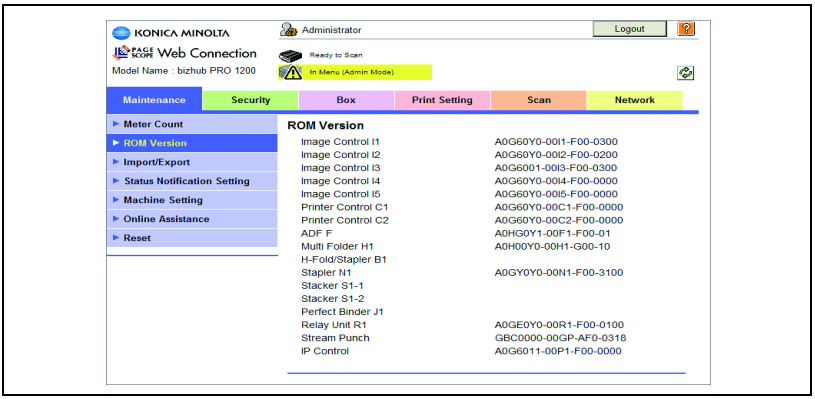
This screen appears when you click [Meter Count] on the [Maintenance] tab.



- Total Counter:
  Displays the total counter, total duplex counter, number of originals, and number of used paper.
- Copy Counter:
  Displays the total copy counter and large size copy counter.
- Print Counter:
  Displays the total print counter and large size print counter.
- Scan Counter:
  Displays the total scan counter and large size scan counter.

8.4.2 ROM Version

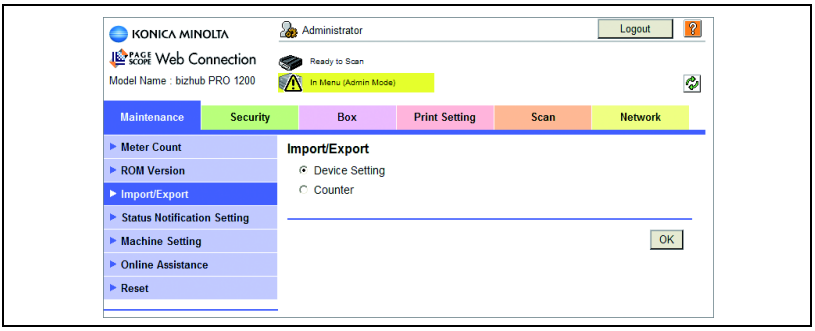
This screen appears when you click [ROM Version] on the [Maintenance] tab.



The screen provides ROM version numbers of image controller, printer controller, ADF, finisher, punch kit, z folding unit, and post inserter options.

8.4.3 Import/Export

This screen appears when you click [Import/Export] on the [Maintenance] tab.



You can use the screen to import a setting file from a PC to the machine, and to export a setting file from the machine to a PC.

Import

1. Select Device Setting or User Information to be imported from a PC, then click [OK].
2. Click [Import].
3. Click [Browse] to search the desired file in a PC and select it.

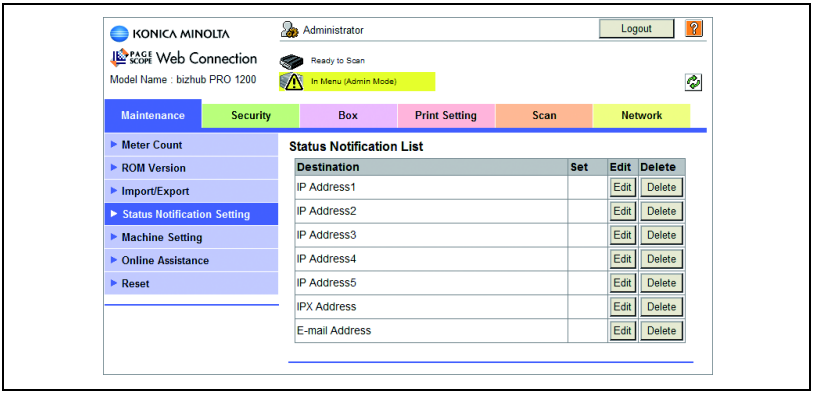
4. Click [OK]. The specified setting file will be imported from PC to the machine.

Export

1. Select the file type from among the three options provided on the screen, then click [OK].
2. Click [Export].
3. Click [OK]. The file downloading screen will be displayed.
4. Click [Download].
5. Click [Save] to select a directory to save the file. The download completion screen will be displayed.
6. Click [Close]. A data file will be exported from the machine.

8.4.4 Status Notification Setting

This screen appears when you click [Status Notification Setting] on the [Maintenance] tab.



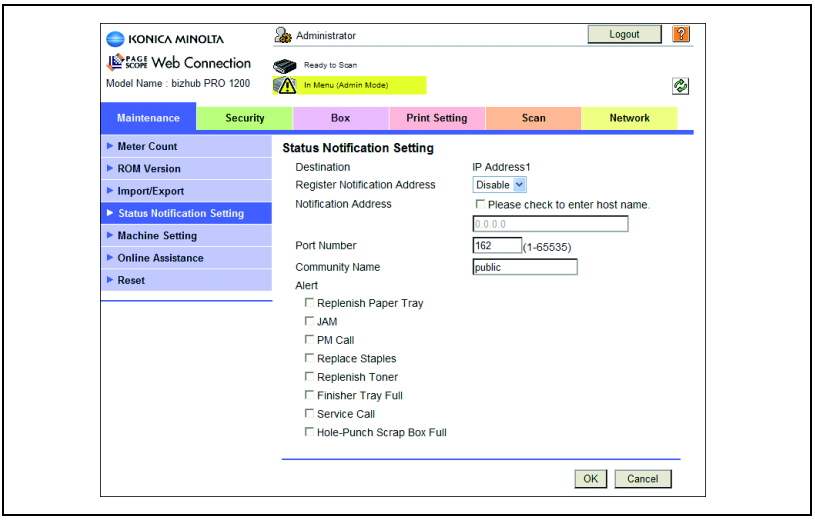
You can use the screen to send a notification to specified destinations when an alert occurs on the machine or options.
The alert checked in the check box will be reported to the specified destination.

Edit

Specify the destination and select the contents of notification.

1. Click [Edit] for the desired destination on the list.

2. Specify the notification address and contents.

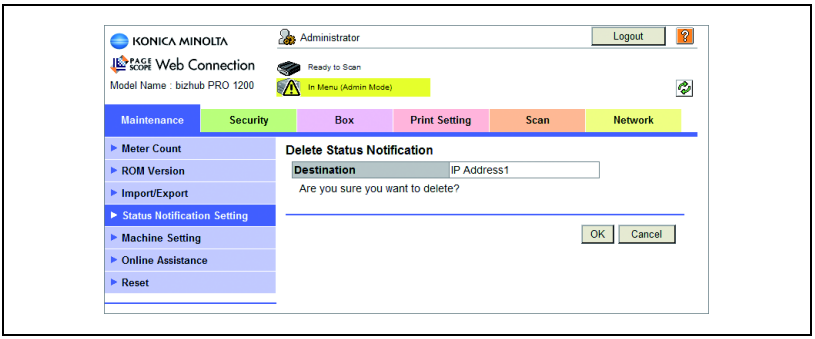


3. Click [OK].

Delete

Delete previously specified destination and contents of notification.

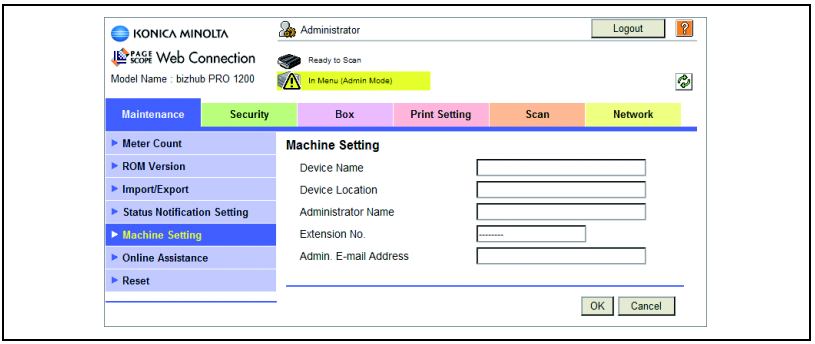
1. Click [Delete] for the desired destination on the list.
2. Click [OK] on the confirmation screen.



3. Click [OK].

8.4.5 Machine Setting

This screen appears when you click [Machine Setting] on the [Maintenance] tab.

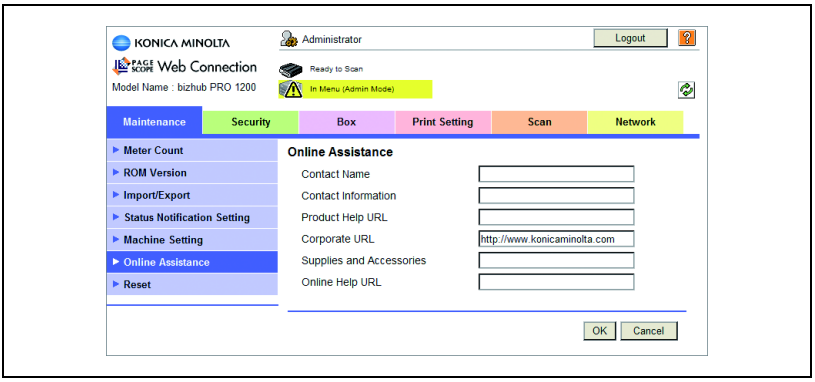


The screen is used to enter the device name, device location, and the administrator information.
Click [Device Information] on the [Information] tab of the User Mode Screen to display this information.

- Device Name:
  Enter the name of the machine. Maximum 255 alphanumeric characters can be entered.
- Device Location:
  Enter the location where the machine is set up. Maximum 255 alphanumeric characters can be entered.
- Administrator Name:
  Enter the name of the administrator. Maximum 20 alphanumeric characters can be entered.
- Extension No.: Enter the extension number of the administrator. Maximum 8 alphanumeric characters can be entered.
- Admin. E-mail Address: Enter the E-mail address of the administrator. Maximum 250 alphanumeric characters can be entered.
- [OK]: Click to complete the setting.
- [Cancel]: Click to clear the information entered.

8.4.6 Online Assistance

This screen appears when you click [Online Assistance] on the [Maintenance] tab.



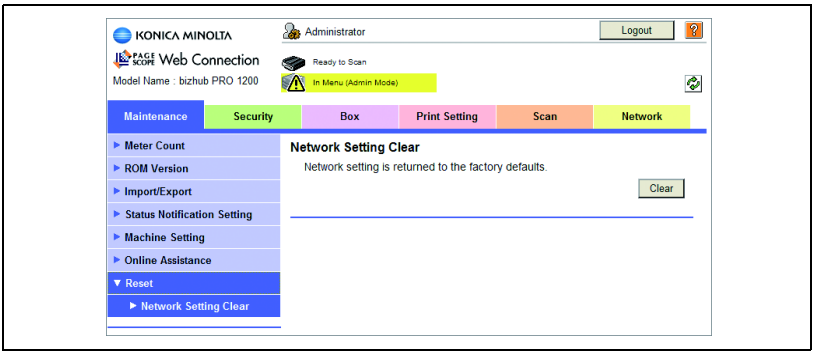
You can use the screen to enter information concerning product support. Click [Online Assistance] on the [Information] tab of the User Mode Screen to display information entered on this screen.

- Contact Name:
  Enter the support contact for the product. Maximum 63 alphanumeric characters can be entered.
- Contact Information
  Enter the phone number or URL of the support contact for the product. Maximum 127 alphanumeric characters can be entered.
- Product Help URL:
  Enter the URL of the product information Web site. Maximum 127 alphanumeric characters can be entered.
- Corporate URL:
  The URL of the manufacturer Web site. (Can be changed.) Maximum 127 alphanumeric characters can be entered.
- Supplies and Accessories:
  Enter the contact for ordering consumables. Maximum 127 alphanumeric characters can be entered.

- Online Help URL:
  Enter the on-line manual URL. Maximum 127 alphanumeric characters can be entered.
  There are two choices:
  Accessing the manual on the Internet posted on the Konica Minolta website:
  http://www.pagescope.com/download/webconnection/onlinehelp/PRO1200/help.html
  Accessing the manual over the LAN:
  http://(IP address for the PC)/pswc_help/wc_help.html
  The administrator must have the on-line manual to make it available over the LAN server.
  Use a PC on which Microsoft IIS or another Web server is running. The Web server must be set to have the folder "/pswc_help/" accessible. Make sure to copy to the Web server the entire pswc_help folder which is installed using the installer CD.
- [OK]: Click to complete the setting.
- [Cancel]: Click to clear the information entered.

8.4.7 Reset - Network Setting Clear

This screen appears when you click [Reset] on the [Maintenance] tab.



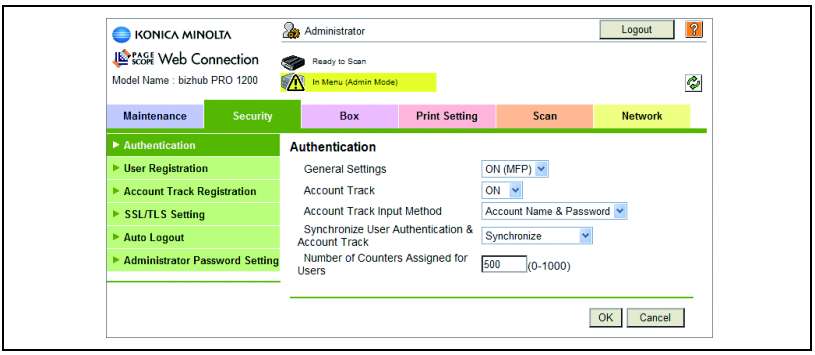
You can use this function to restore the factory default for the network settings.
Click [Clear], then click [OK].
Turn the main power switch off then on.
Clicking [Cancel] will not restore the factory default, even with [Clear] clicked.

8.5 Security Tab

The [Security] tab provides information and settings concerning the security of the machine.

8.5.1 Authentication

This screen appears when you click [Authentication] on the [Security] tab.

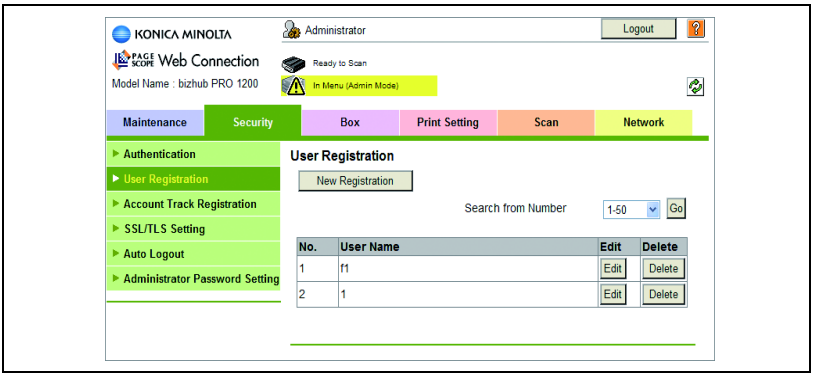


Use this screen to make settings concerning the user authentication/ account track.

- General Settings:
  Select whether or not to activate the user authentication on the machine. Selecting [ON (MFP)], the user authentication procedure will be required to use this machine.
- Account Track:
  Select whether or not to activate the account track function on the machine. Selecting [ON], the section authentication procedure will be required to use this machine.
- Account Track Input Method:
  Set the machine to require a section name and password, or a password only, when account track function is activated.
- Synchronize User Authentication & Account Track:
  Select whether or not to synchronize the user authentication and account track function.
- Number of Counters Assigned for Users:
  Specify the number of user authentication. The total number of authentication to be distributed is 1,000 for both user and account. The remaining number from which the number of user authentication is subtracted from 1,000 will be the accounts.
- [OK]: Click to complete the setting.
- [Cancel]: Click to clear the information entered.

8.5.2 User Registration

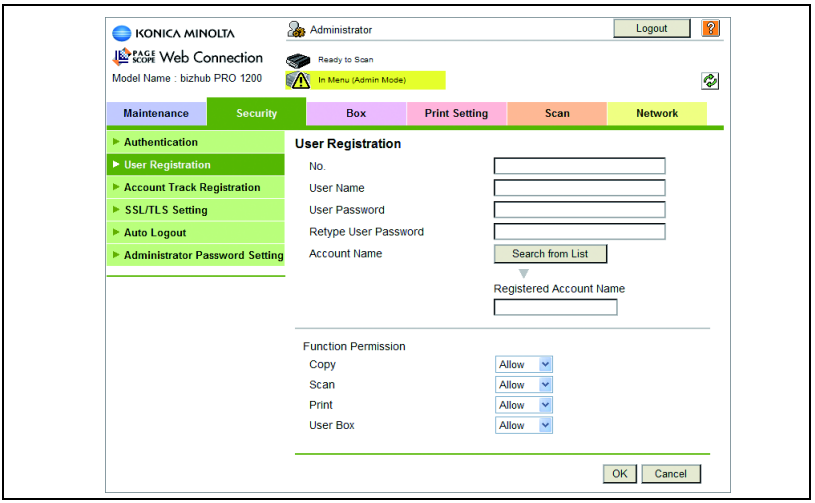
This screen appears when you click [User Registration] on the [Security] tab. Without [ON (MFP)] selected in General Settings of [Authentication], this screen will not appear.



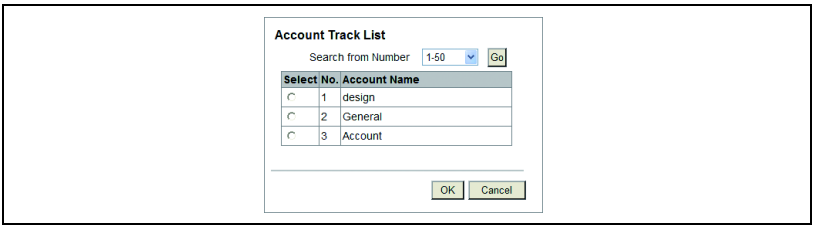
Use this screen to register a user for user authentication, or delete the registered user.

User Registration

1. Click [New Registration] to register a new user, or click [Edit] in the same row as the desired user name to edit the data already registered. Selecting a range of numbers from Search from Number drop-down list, and clicking [Go] will display the registration list of the selected range.
2. Enter a registration number. Available range is 0 to 1000. This step is unavailable when editing a former entry.



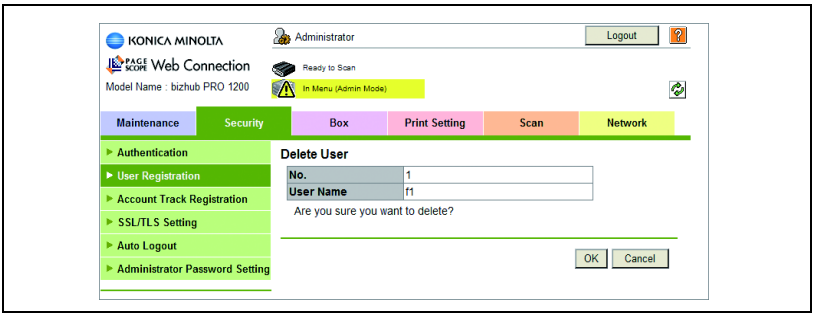
3. Enter the user name. Maximum 64 alphanumeric characters can be entered.
4. Enter the user password. Maximum 64 alphanumeric characters can be entered. Again, enter the user password in Retype User Password text box.
5. Select an account name for the user. Click [Search from List].
6. Click the radio button of the desired account name from the list, then click [OK].



7. Select the functions allowed for the registered user.
8. Click [OK]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the setting and delete the entered information.
9. Click [OK] on the setting complete screen.

Deleting user

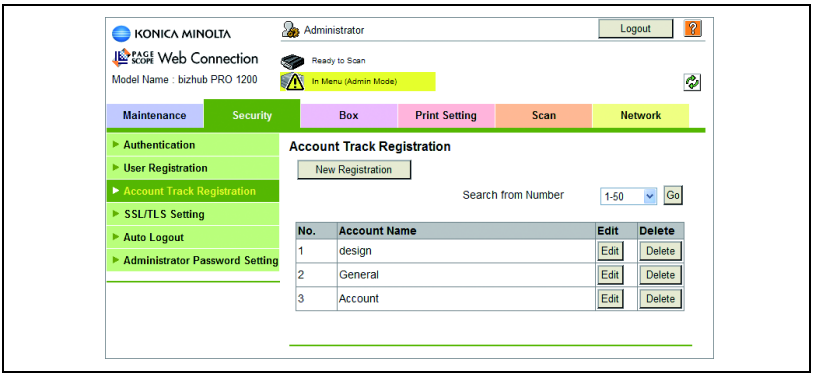
1. Click [Delete] for the desired user on the list.
2. Click [OK] on the confirmation screen.



3. Click [OK].
4. Click [OK] on the setting complete screen.

8.5.3 Account Track Registration

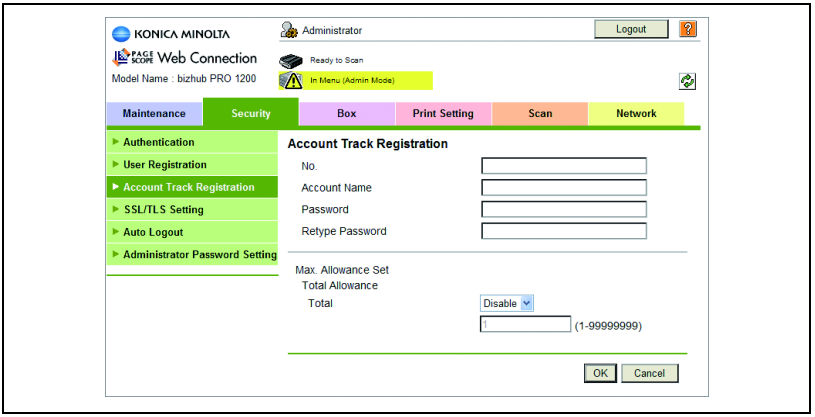
This screen appears when you click [Account Track Registration] on the [Security] tab. Without [ON] selected in Account Track setting of [Authentication], this screen will not appear.



Use this screen to register an account for account track, or delete the registered account.

Account Track Registration

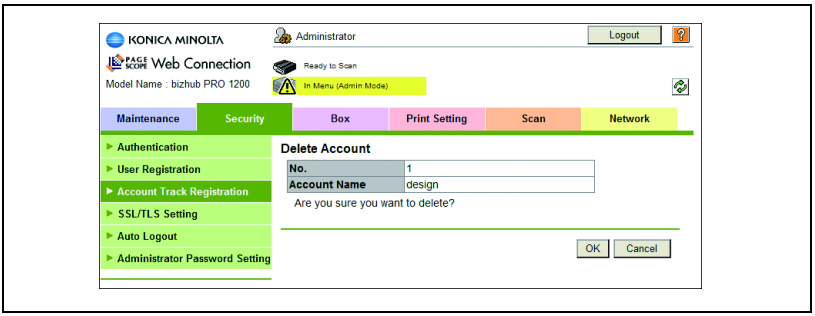
1. Click [New Registration] to register a new account, or click [Edit] in the same row as the desired account name to edit the data already registered.
   Selecting a range of numbers from Search from Number drop-down list, and clicking [Go] will display the registration list of the selected range.
2. Enter a registration number. Available range is 0 to 1000. This step is unavailable when editing a former entry.



3. Enter the account name. Maximum 8 alphanumeric characters can be entered.
   This step is unavailable when setting the machine to require a password only in Account Track Input Method setting of [Authentication].
4. Enter the password. Maximum 8 alphanumeric characters can be entered. Again, enter the password in Retype Password text box.
5. When limiting the total allowance for the account, select [Enable] from the drop-down list, then enter the total count within the range of 1 to 99999999.
6. Click [OK]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the setting and delete the entered information.
7. Click [OK] on the setting complete screen.

Deleting account

1. Click [Delete] for the desired account on the list.
2. Click [OK] on the confirmation screen.

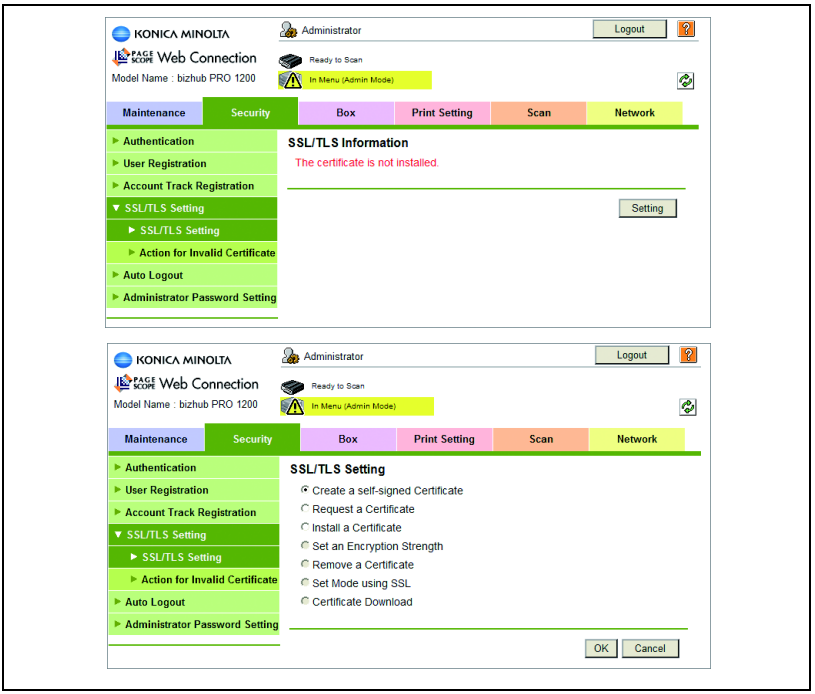


3. Click [OK].
4. Click [OK] on the setting complete screen.

8.5.4 SSL/TLS Setting - SSL/TLS Setting

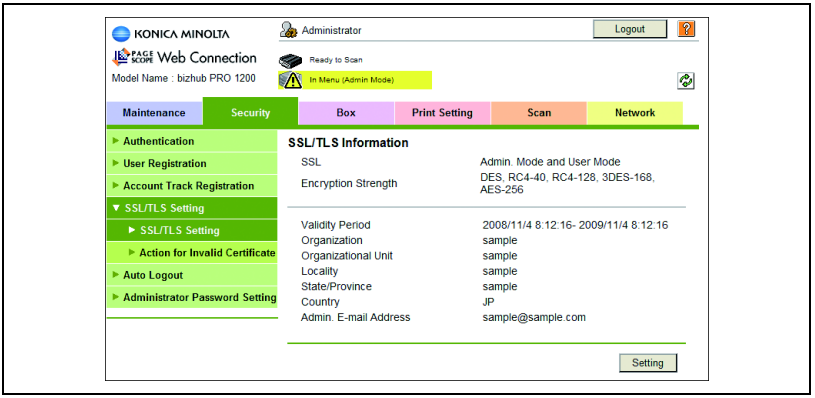
This screen appears when you click [SSL/TLS Setting] on the [Security] tab.

When the SSL certificate is not installed:



When the SSL certificate is installed:

The SSL/TLS information will be displayed.

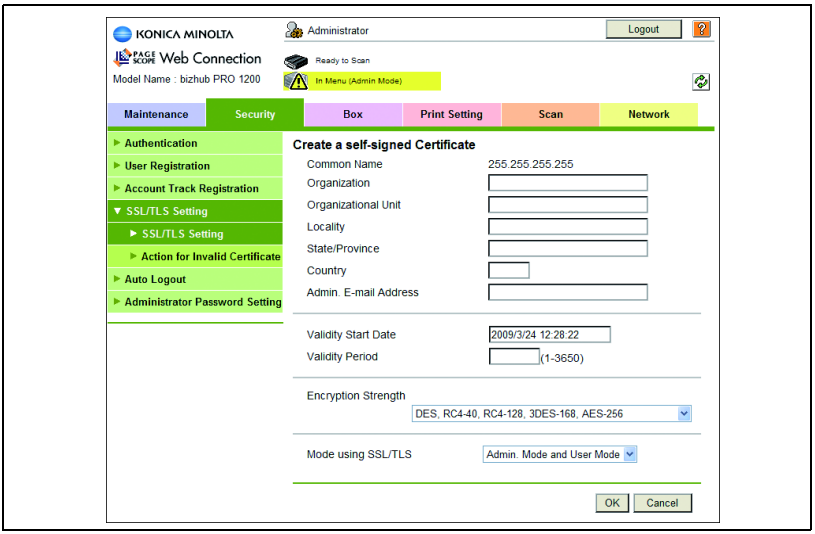


Click [Setting] to set the SSL/TLS. Follow the procedure below.

Creating a self-signed certificate

Create the SSL certificate manually for SSL setting.

1. Click the radio button of “Create a self-signed Certificate”, and click [OK].
2. Enter the organization. Maximum 63 alphanumeric characters can be entered.

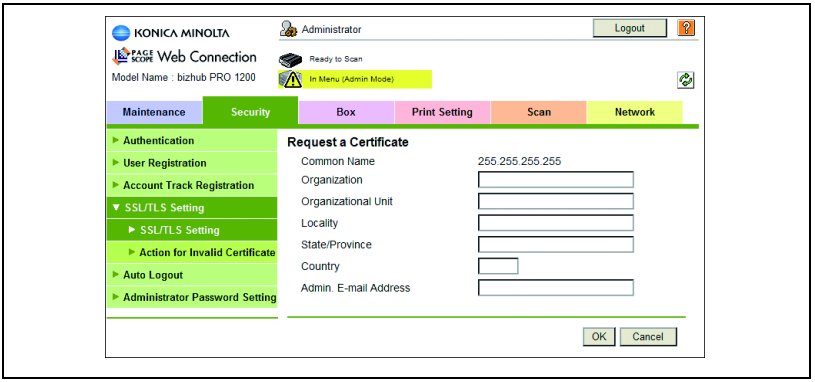


3. Enter the organizational unit. Maximum 63 alphanumeric characters can be entered.
4. Enter the locality. Maximum 127 alphanumeric characters can be entered.
5. Enter the State/Province. Maximum 127 alphanumeric characters can be entered.
6. Enter the country code. Maximum 2 alphanumeric characters can be entered.
7. Enter the E-mail address or the administrator. Maximum 127 alphanumeric characters can be entered.
8. The validity start date cannot be changed.
9. Enter the validity period within the range of 1 to 3650.
10. Select the desired encryption strength from the drop-down list.
11. Select the mode using SSL/TLS from the drop-down list.
12. Click [OK]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the setting and delete the entered information.
13. Click [OK] on the setting complete screen. The SSL/TLS Information Screen will be displayed.

Making a request for certificate

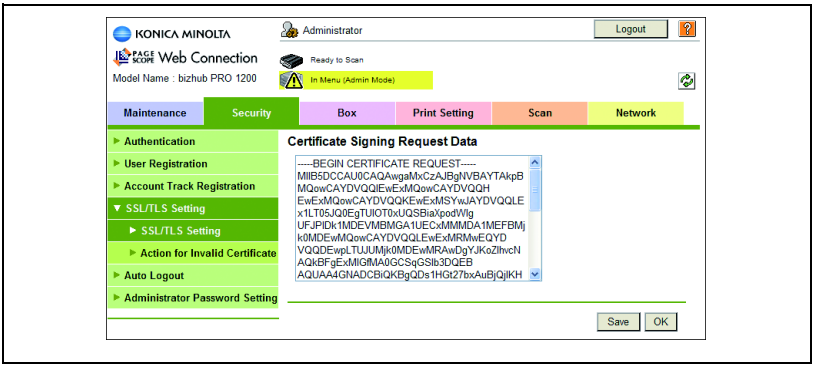
Create the data making a request to Certificate Authority for a certificate.

1. Click the radio button of “Request a Certificate”, and click [OK].
2. Enter the organization. Maximum 63 alphanumeric characters can be entered.



3. Enter the organizational unit. Maximum 63 alphanumeric characters can be entered.
4. Enter the locality. Maximum 127 alphanumeric characters can be entered.
5. Enter the State/Province. Maximum 127 alphanumeric characters can be entered.
6. Enter the country code. Maximum 2 alphanumeric characters can be entered.
7. Enter the E-mail address of the administrator. Maximum 127 alphanumeric characters can be entered.
8. Click [OK]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the setting and delete the entered information.
9. Click [OK] on the setting complete screen. The Certificate Signing Request Data Screen will be displayed.

10. Click [Save] on the Certificate Signing Request Data Screen to save the certificate data in PEM format text on PC.

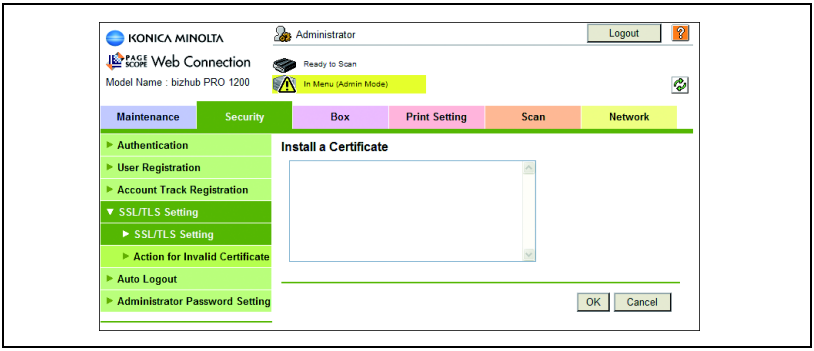


11. Click [OK]. The SSL/TLS Information Screen will be displayed.

Installing a certificate

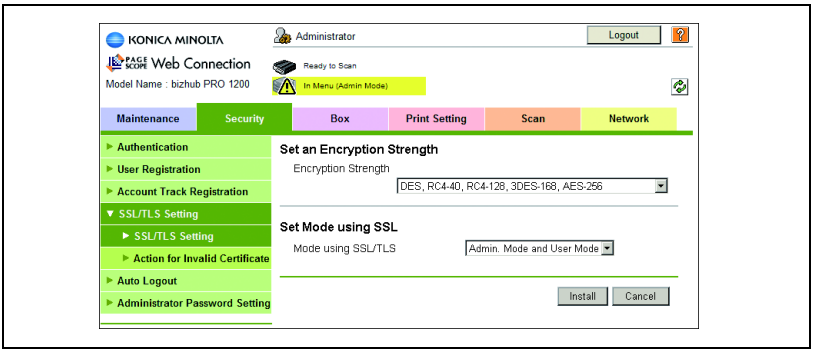
Install a certificate issued by an independent CA.

1. Click the radio button of “Install a Certificate”, and click [OK].
2. Paste the CSR (Certificate Signing Request) in PEM text format delivered from an independent CA into the “Install a Certificate” window. Click [OK] on the Install Certificate Screen.



The Encryption Strength/ Mode Using SSL Screen will be displayed.

3. Select the desired encryption strength from the drop-down list.

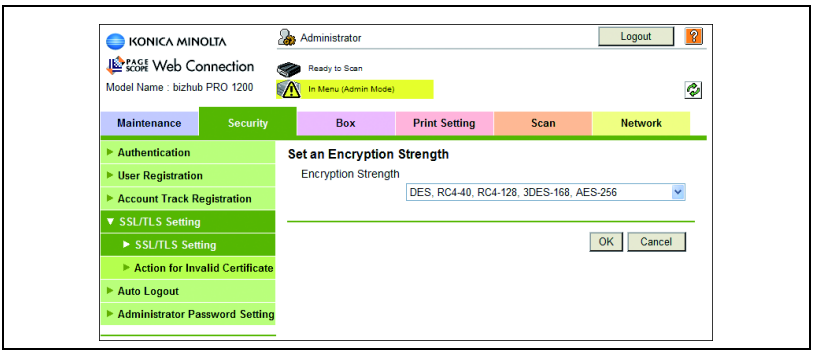


4. Select the mode using SSL/TLS from the drop-down list.
5. Click [Install]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the setting and delete the entered information.
6. Click [OK] on the setting complete screen. The SSL/TLS Information Screen will be displayed.

Setting an encryption strength

Set an encryption strength of the installed SSL certificate.

1. Click the radio button of “Set an Encryption Strength”, and click [OK].
2. Select the desired encryption strength from the drop-down list.

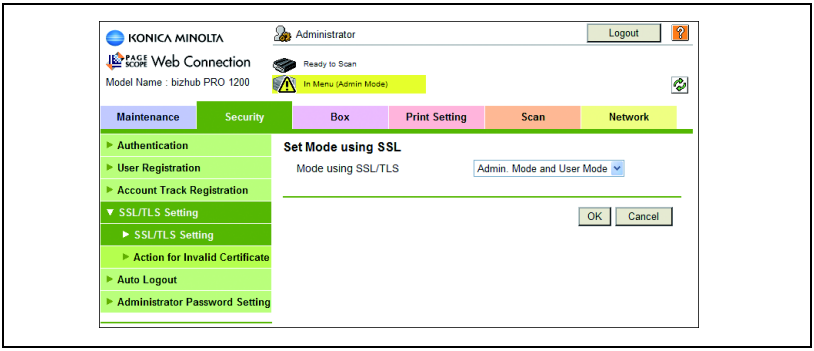


3. Click [OK]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the setting and delete the entered information.
4. Click [OK] on the setting complete screen. The SSL/TLS Information Screen will be displayed.

Setting the mode using SSL

Set the mode using SSL for the installed SSL certificate.

1. Click the radio button of “Set Mode using SSL”, and click [OK].
2. Select the desired mode using SSL/TLS from the drop-down list.

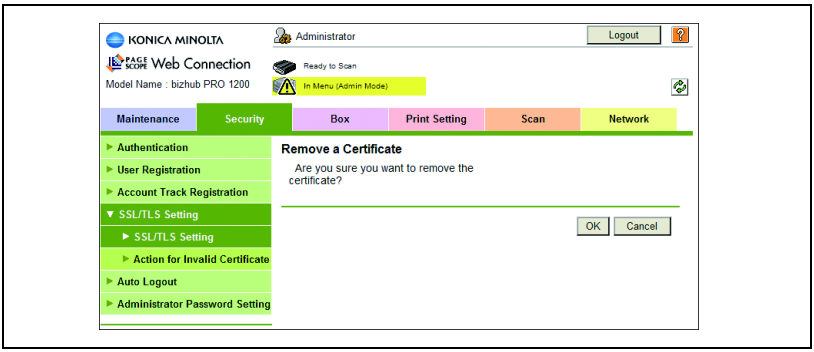


3. Click [OK]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the setting and delete the entered information.
4. Click [OK] on the setting complete screen. The SSL/TLS Information Screen will be displayed.

Removing a certificate

Remove the installed SSL certificate.

1. Click the radio button of “Remove a Certificate”, and click [OK].
2. Click [OK]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the setting.



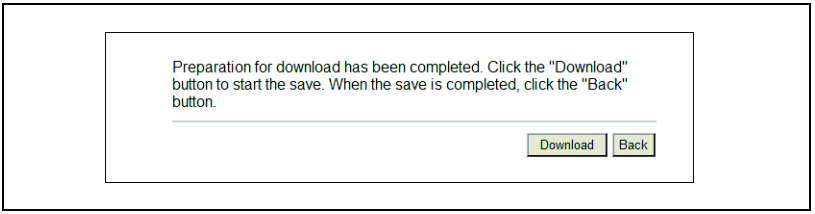
The screen to turn off/on the power will be displayed.

3. Turn the machine power off then on, then click [OK]. The SSL/TLS Information Screen will be restored.

Downloading a certificate

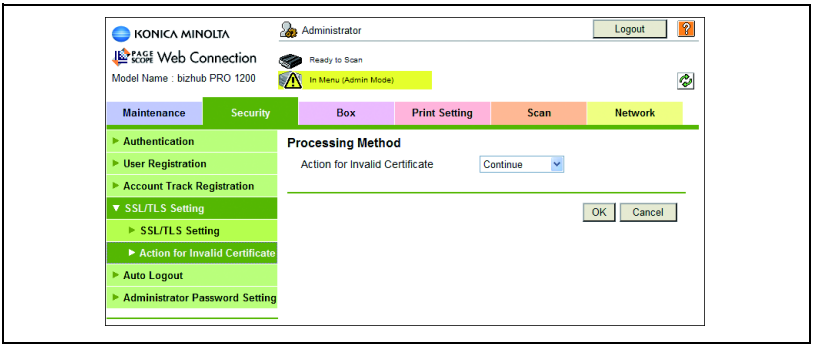
Download the installed SSL certificate.

1. Click the radio button of “Certificate Download”, and click [OK].
   A screen will prompt you when the machine is ready for downloading.
2. Click [Download]. Click [Back] when downloading is not desired.



8.5.5 SSL/TLS Setting - Action for Invalid Certificate

This screen appears when you click [Action for Invalid Certificate] on the [Security] tab.

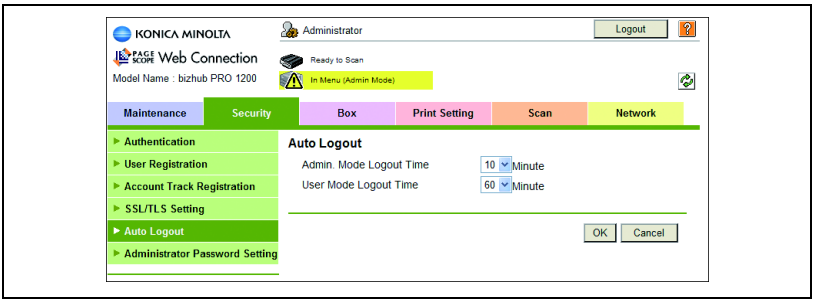


Use this screen to select the machine response to the job of which certificate is invalid.

1. Select [Continue] or [Delete Job] from the drop-down list.
2. Click [OK]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the setting.
3. Click [OK] on the setting complete screen. The SSL/TLS Information Screen will be displayed.

8.5.6 Auto Logout

This screen appears when you click [Auto Logout] on the [Security] tab.

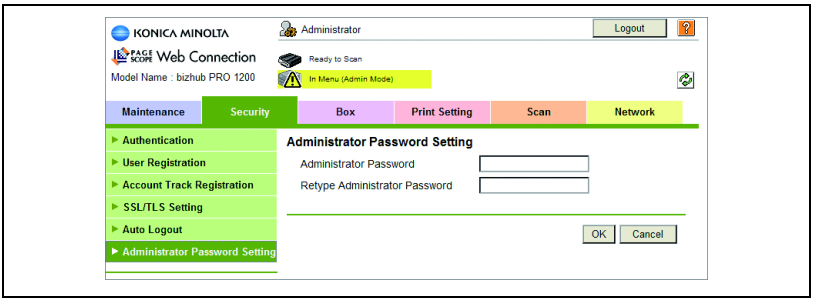


Use this screen to specify the time to elapse before the machine logs out automatically from each of user mode and administrator mode.

1. Select the desired log out time from the drop-down list on the right side of Admin. Mode Logout Time.
2. Select the desired log out time from the drop-down list on the right side of User Mode Logout Time.
3. Click [OK]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the setting.
4. Click [OK] on the setting complete screen.

8.5.7 Administrator Password Setting

This screen appears when you click [Administrator Password Setting] on the [Security] tab.



Use this screen to establish an administrator password.

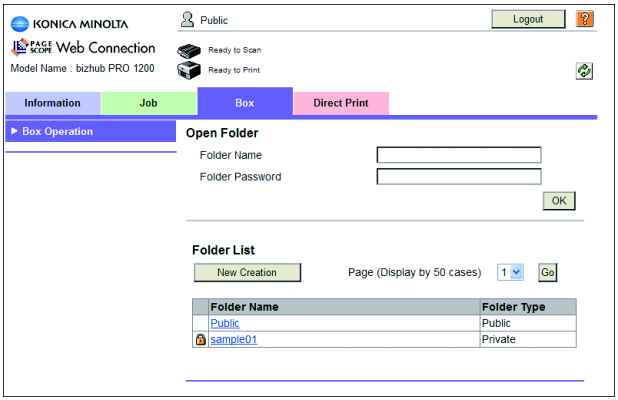
1. Enter a new administrator password into the Administrator Password text box. The password should be 8 alphanumeric characters.
   The text box always appear blank, even if a password has already been established.
2. Again, enter the new password in Retype Administrator Password text box.
3. Click [OK]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the setting and delete the entered information.
4. Click [OK] on the setting complete screen.

8.6 Box Tab

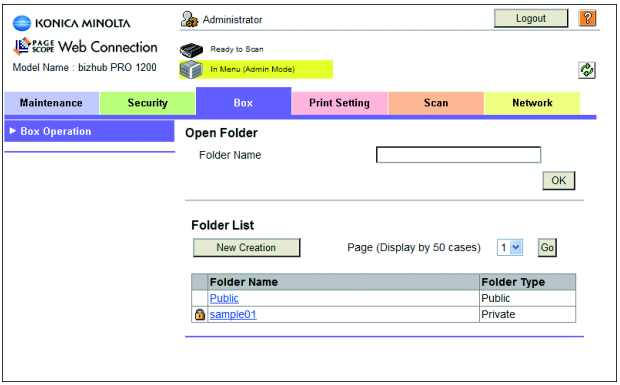
The [Box] tab provides settings concerning the box operation stored on the HDD.

The contents of the [Box] tab on the Administrator Mode Screen is equivalent to those on the User Mode Screen.
For details of the operation, please refer to the User's Guide - Printer.

User Mode Screen



Administrator Mode Screen

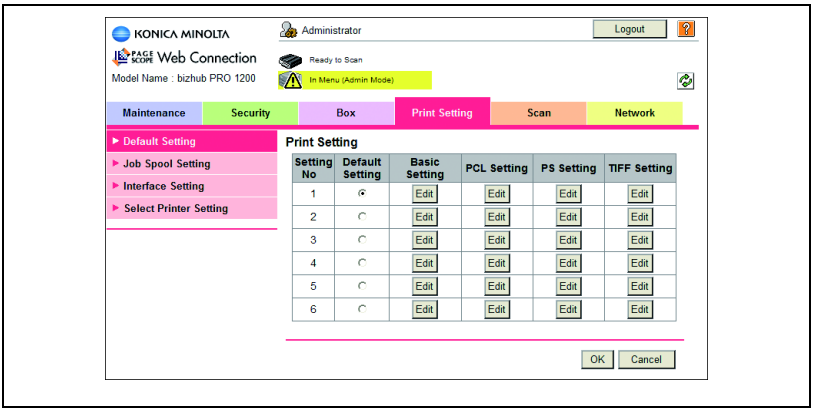


8.7 Print Setting Tab

The [Print Setting] tab provides settings concerning the printer of the image controller.

8.7.1 Default Setting

This screen appears when you click [Default Setting] on the [Print Setting] tab.

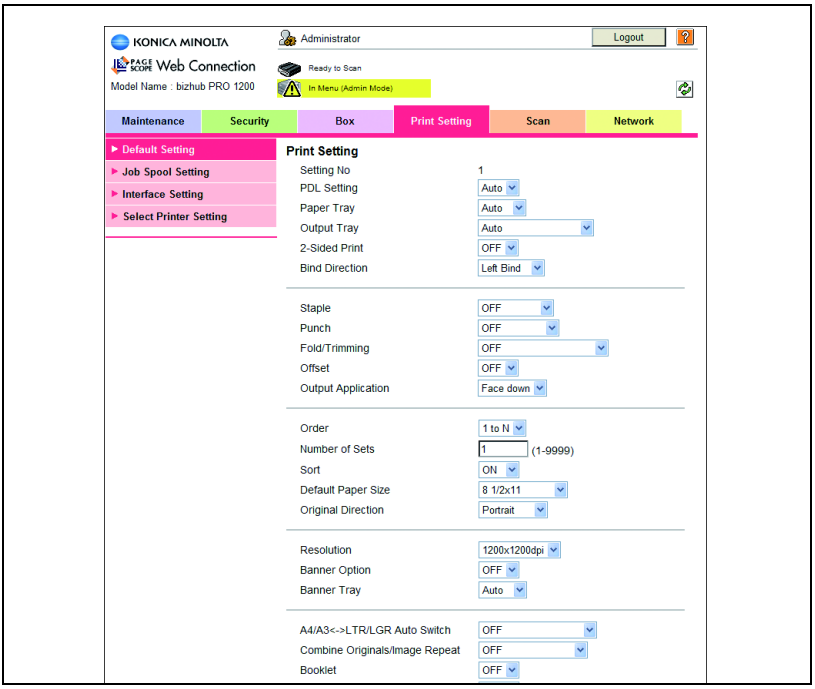


The following four settings are supposed to be a set. Up to six sets can be specified, and select one from these six sets for each port in Select Printer Setting. If any port other than specified in Select Printer Setting is used without an instruction from the driver when printing, the setting specified as default by radio button will be reflected on the printing.

- Basic Setting: Make basic settings for printing. The setting contents are the same as those described in Section 4: Controller Setting - 02 Printer Setting - 01 Basic Settings.
- PCL Setting: Make settings for PCL printing. The setting contents are the same as those described in Section 4: Controller Setting - 02 Printer Setting - 02 PCL Setting.
- PS Setting: Make settings for PostScript printing. The setting contents are the same as those described in Section 4: Controller Setting - 02 Printer Setting - 03 PS Setting.
- TIFF Setting: Make settings for TIFF printing. The setting contents are the same as those described in Section 4: Controller Setting - 02 Printer Setting - 04 TIFF Setting.

Basic Setting

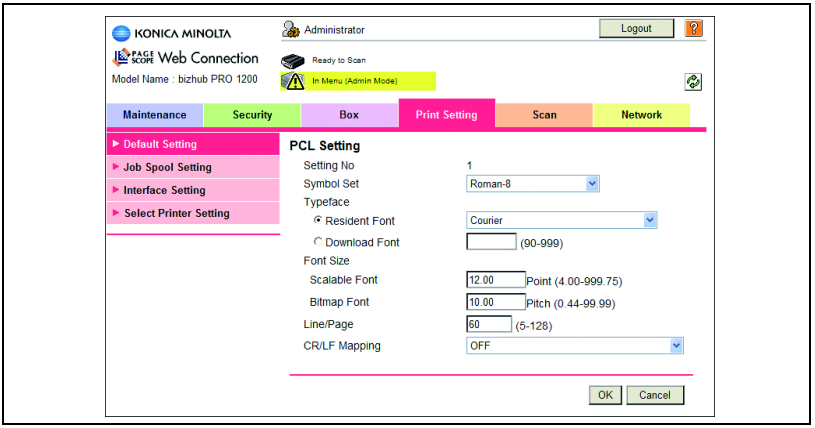
1. Click [Edit] in Basic Setting column.
2. Select the desired option from the drop-down list provided for each setting item. If any entry is required, click the text box to type in.



3. Click [OK]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the setting and delete the entered information.
4. Click [OK] on the setting complete screen.

PCL Setting

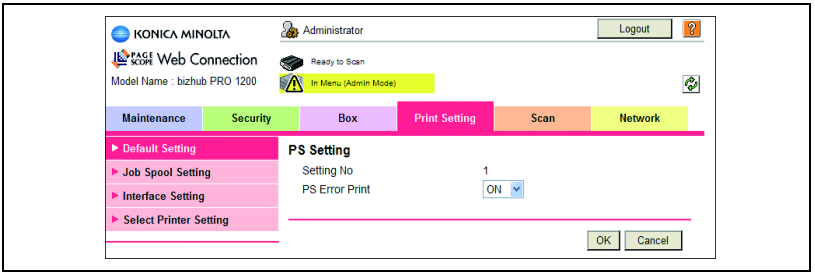
1. Click [Edit] in PCL Setting column.
2. Select the desired option from the drop-down list provided for each setting item. If any entry is required, click the text box to type in.



3. Click [OK]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the setting and delete the entered information.
4. Click [OK] on the setting complete screen.

PS Setting

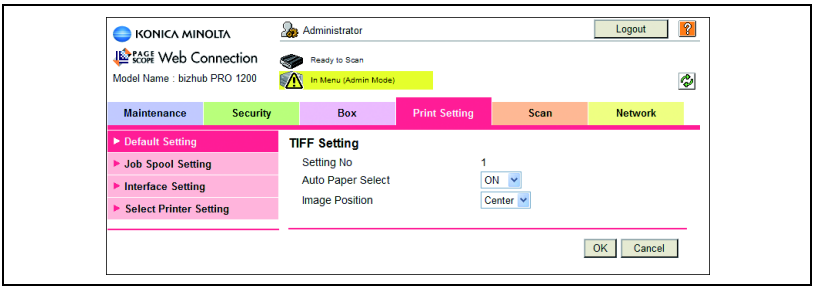
1. Click [Edit] in PS Setting column.
2. Select [ON] or [OFF] from the drop-down list of PS Error Print.



3. Click [OK]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the setting.
4. Click [OK] on the setting complete screen.

TIFF Setting

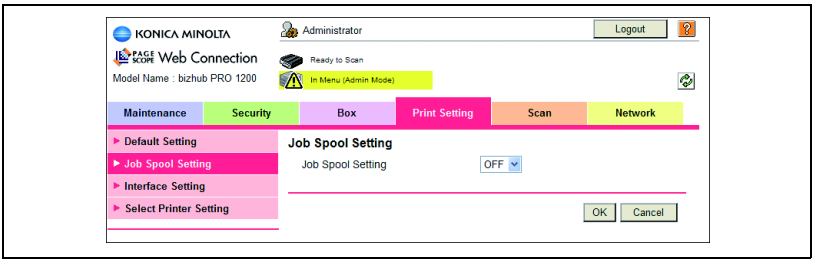
1. Click [Edit] in TIFF Setting column.
2. Select the desired option from the drop-down list provided for each setting item.



3. Click [OK]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the setting.
4. Click [OK] on the setting complete screen.

8.7.2 Job Spool Setting

This screen appears when you click [Job Spool Setting] on the [Print Setting] tab. The setting contents are the same as those described in Section 4: Controller Setting - 04 Spool Print Jobs in HDD before RIP.

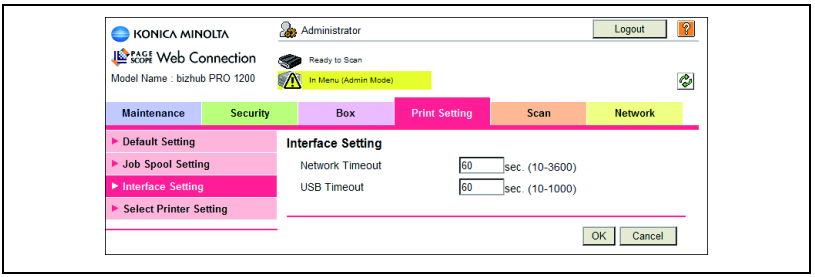


Set the spool function for printing jobs.

1. Select [Auto], [ON], or [OFF] from the drop-down list of Spool Setting.
2. Click [OK]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the setting.
3. Click [OK] on the setting complete screen.

8.7.3 Interface Setting

This screen appears when you click [Interface Setting] on the [Print Setting] tab. The setting contents are the same as those described in Section 4: Controller Setting - 05 I/F Timeout.

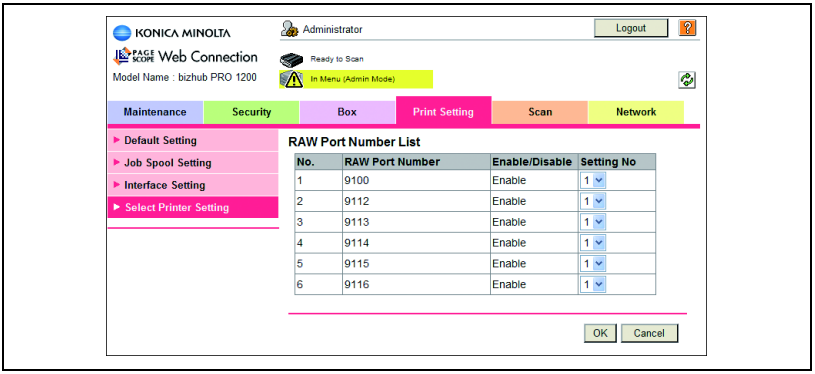


Use this screen to specify the time for network timeout and USB timeout.

1. Enter the desired time in Network Timeout text box. Available range is 10–3600 seconds.
2. Enter the desired time in USB Timeout text box. Available range is 10–1000 seconds.
3. Click [OK]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the setting.
4. Click [OK] on the setting complete screen.

8.7.4 Select Printer Setting

This screen appears when you click [Select Printer Setting] on the [Print Setting] tab. The setting contents are the same as those described in Section 4: Controller Setting - 03 Select Printer Setting.



Use this screen to assign the printer settings specified in Default Setting to each of six RAW port numbers.

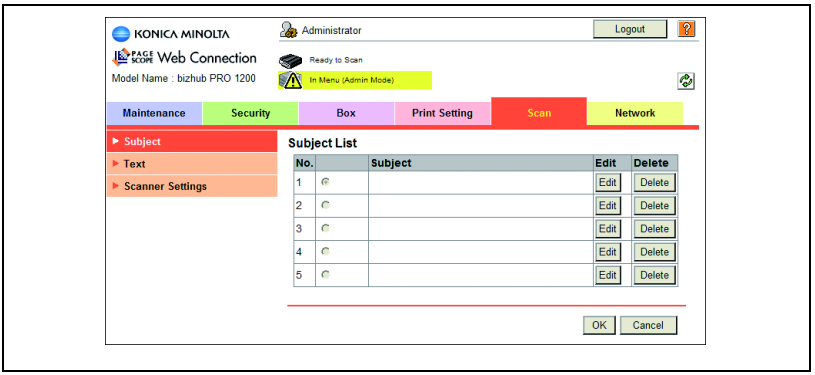
1. Select the desired default setting number from the drop-down list of Setting No.
2. Click [OK]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the setting.
3. Click [OK] on the setting complete screen.

8.8 Scan Tab

The [Scan] tab provides settings for scanning function of the machine.

8.8.1 Subject

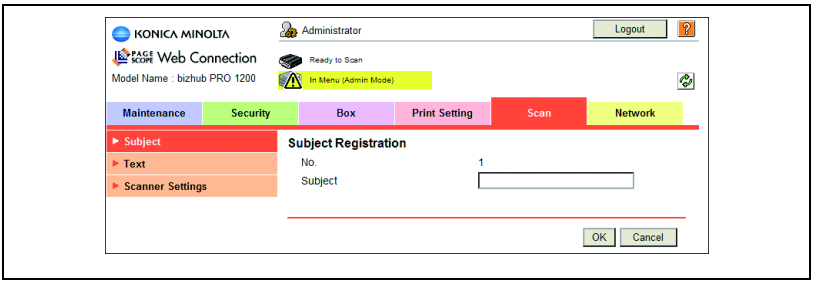
This screen appears when you click [Subject] on the [Scan] tab. The setting contents are the same as those described in Section 6 - 04 Network Setting - 02 Controller NIC Setting - 09 E-mail Setting - Register E-mail Subject.



Use this screen to edit or delete the subject of e-mail.

Edit

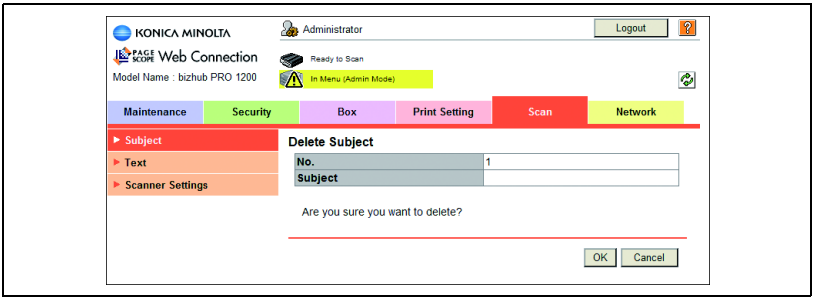
1. Click the radio button of the subject to be edit.
2. Click [Edit] in the same row as the selected subject.
3. Enter the new subject in the Subject text box. Maximum 64 alphanumeric characters can be entered.



4. Click [OK]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the setting and delete the entered information.
5. Click [OK] on the setting complete screen.

Delete

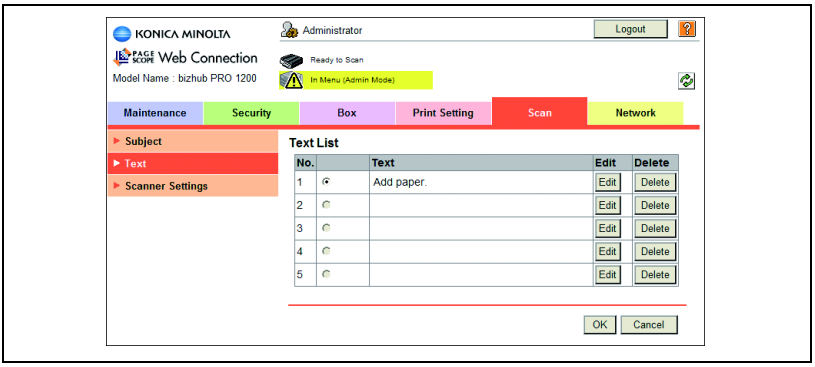
1. Click the radio button of the subject to be deleted.
2. Click [Delete] in the same row as the selected subject.
3. Click [OK]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the setting.



4. Click [OK] on the setting complete screen.

8.8.2 Text

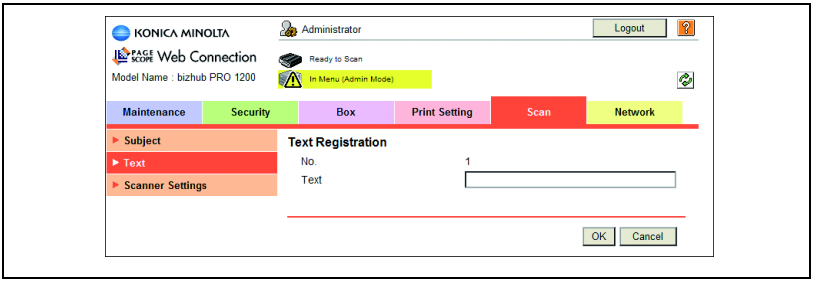
This screen appears when you click [Text] on the [Scan] tab. The setting contents are the same as those described in Section 6 - 04 Network Setting - 02 Controller NIC Setting - 09 E-mail Setting - Register E-mail Sentence.



Use this screen to edit or delete the body text of e-mail.

Edit

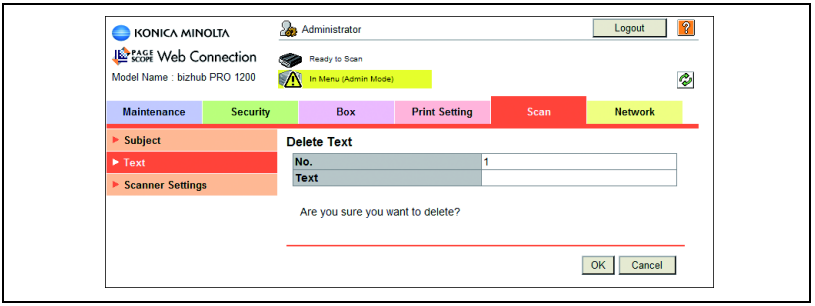
1. Click the radio button of the text to be edit.
2. Click [Edit] in the same row as the selected text.
3. Enter the new text in the text box. Maximum 256 alphanumeric characters can be entered.



4. Click [OK]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the setting and delete the entered information.
5. Click [OK] on the setting complete screen.

Delete

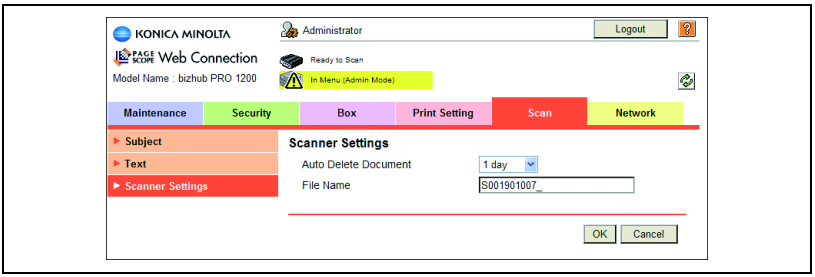
1. Click the radio button of the text to be deleted.
2. Click [Delete] in the same row as the selected text.
3. Click [OK]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the setting.



4. Click [OK] on the setting complete screen.

8.8.3 Scanner Setting

This screen appears when you click [Scanner Setting] on the [Scan] tab. The setting contents are the same as those described in Section 4: Controller Setting - 07 Scan Setting.



Use this screen to specify a period of time to elapse before scanned data are automatically deleted, and also the file name.

Edit

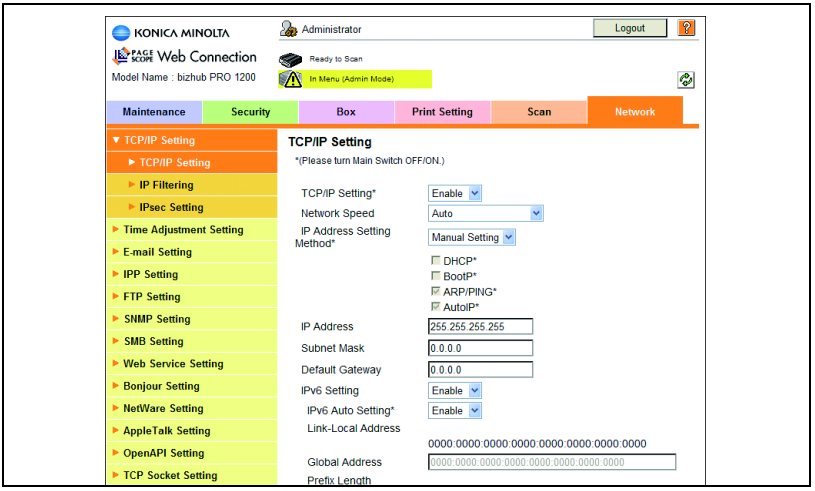
1. Select the desired period of time to elapse before data scanned into the box are automatically deleted, from the drop-down list of Auto Delete Document.
2. Enter the file name in the File Name text box. Maximum 11 alphanumeric characters can be entered. (Unacceptable characters: "/*|:<>?.,)
   The date, time, extension, and division number will be added to the actual file name.
3. Click [OK]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the setting and delete the entered information.
4. Click [OK] on the setting complete screen.

8.9 Network Tab

The [Network] tab provides settings concerning the image controller NIC.

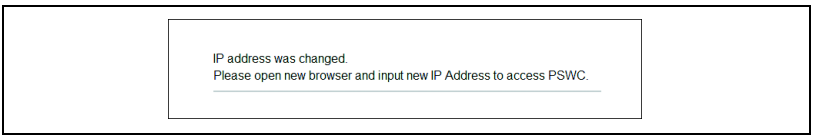
8.9.1 TCP/IP Setting - TCP/IP Setting

This screen appears when you click [TCP/IP Setting] on the [Network] tab.



Use this screen to make TCP/IP settings of the image controller NIC.

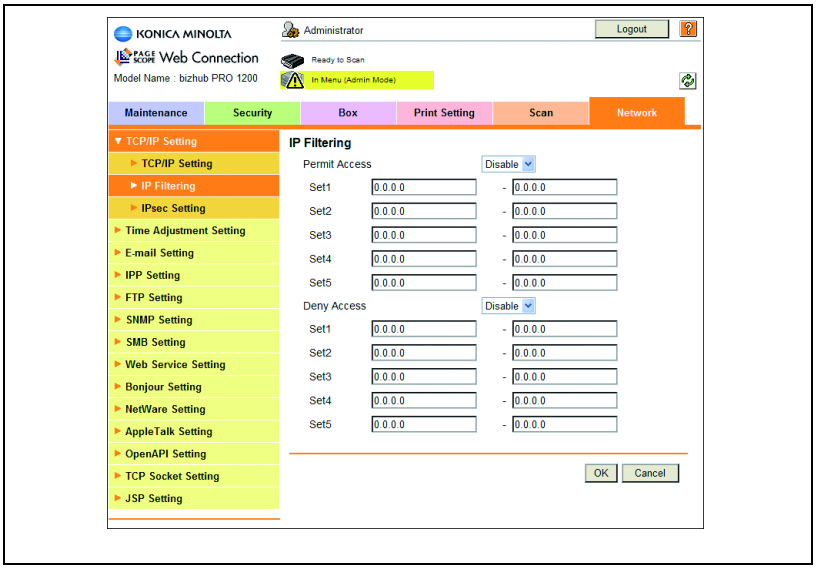
1. Select the desired option from the drop-down list provided for each setting item. If any entry is required, click the text box to type in.
   For details of each setting item, see Network Setting at page 6-85 and page 6-96.
2. Click [OK]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the setting and delete the entered information.
3. If any setting with an asterisk (*) has been changed, turn the machine power off then on.
4. When the IP address and IP Address Setting Method have been changed, the following message will be displayed.



5. Access the new IP address.

8.9.2 TCP/IP Setting - IP Filtering

This screen appears when you click [IP Filtering] on the [Network] tab.

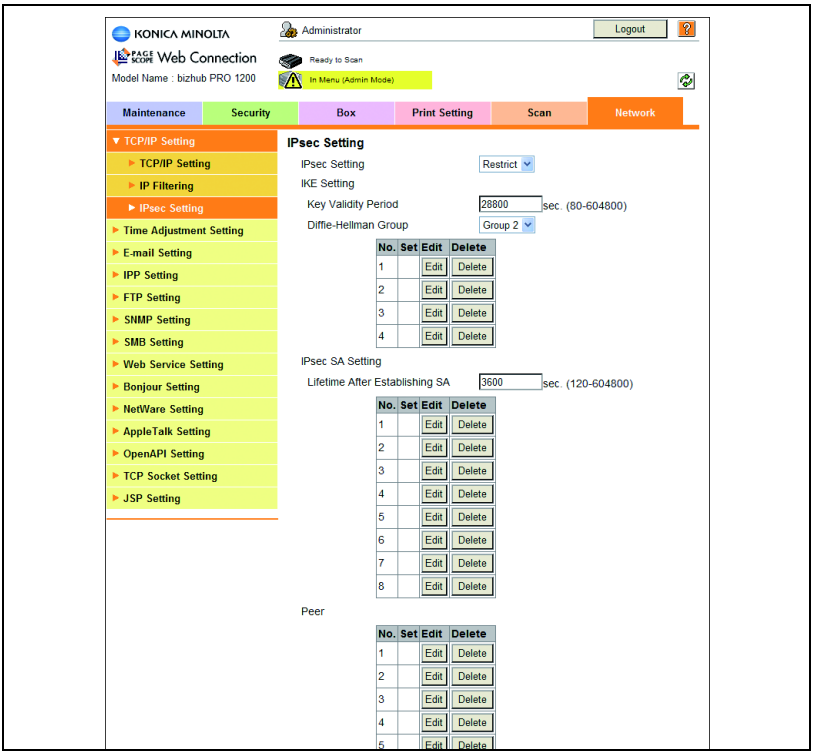


Use this screen to specify settings for the IP filtering. When the same range is specified for the accept setting and the refuse setting, the refuse setting has priority over the accept setting.

1. Select [Enable] from the drop-down list of Permit Access when giving an access permission.
2. Enter the desired range of the address to be permitted into the Permit Address text boxes. Up to 5 ranges can be specified.
   Only one IP address, not a range, can also be specified in three ways. Select one of the following, if desired.
   e.g. Giving permission to 192.168.11.22 only:
   192.168.11.22 - 0.0.0.0.
   0.0.0.0 - 192.168.11.22
   192.168.11.22 - 192.168.11.22
3. To deny an access, select [Enable] from the drop-down list of Deny Access.
4. Enter the desired range of the address to be denied into the Deny Address text boxes. Up to 5 ranges can be specified.
   In the same ways as permission, only one IP address can be denied.
5. Click [OK]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the setting and delete the entered information.
6. Click [OK] on the setting complete screen.

8.9.3 TCP/IP Setting - IPsec Setting

This screen appears when you click [IPsec Setting] on the [Network] tab.



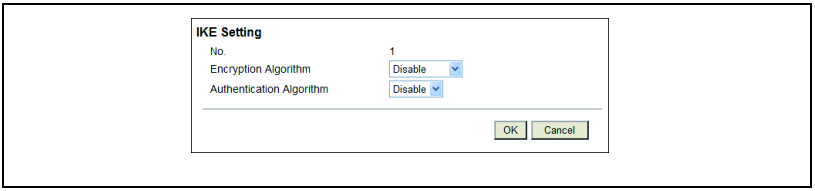
Use this screen to specify IPsec settings for TCP/IP.

IPsec Setting

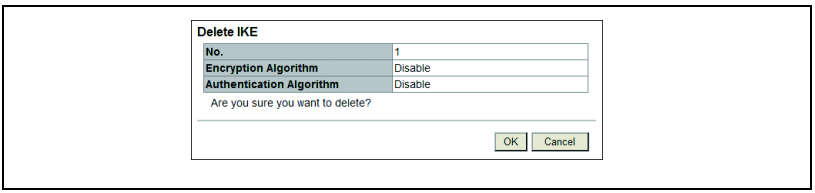
1. Select [Allow] or [Restrict] from the drop-down list.

IKE Setting

1. Enter the desired period of time into the Key Validity Period text box. Available range is 80–604800 seconds.
2. Select [Group 1] or [Group 2] from the drop-down list of Diffie-Hellman Group.
3. To enable the encryption algorithm and authentication algorithm, click [Edit]. If the setting has already been made, an asterisk (*) appears in the Set field for each.
4. Select the desired option from the drop-down list for each. For details of these setting items, see page 6-87 of Network Setting.

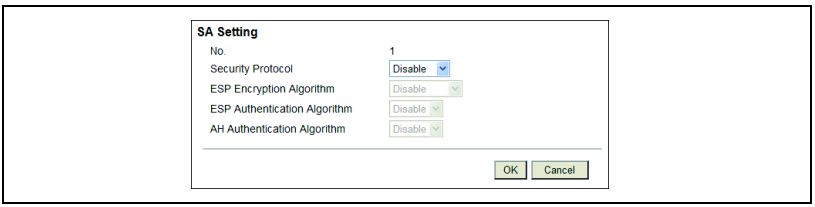


5. Click [OK]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the setting.
6. To delete the setting, click [Delete] of the desired item.
7. Click [OK]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the deletion.



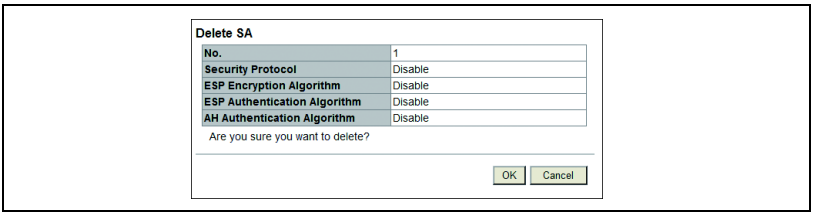
SA Setting

1. Enter the desired period of time into the text box of Lifetime After Establishing SA. Available range is 120–604800 seconds.
2. To enable the security protocol, ESP encryption algorithm, ESP authentication algorithm, and AH authentication algorithm, click [Edit]. If the setting has already been made, an asterisk (*) appears in the Set field for each.
3. Select the desired option from the drop-down list for each. For details of these setting items, see page 6-87 of Network Setting.
   Some setting item cannot be enabled depending on the combination of selection.



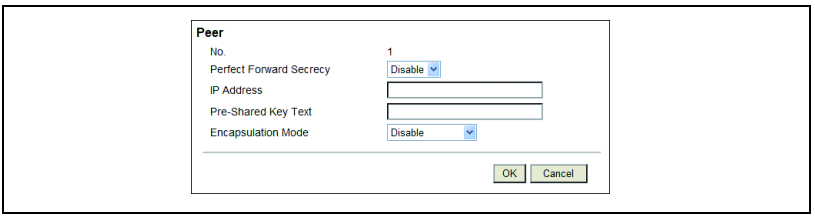
4. Click [OK]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the setting.
5. To delete the setting, click [Delete] of the desired item.

6. Click [OK]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the deletion.

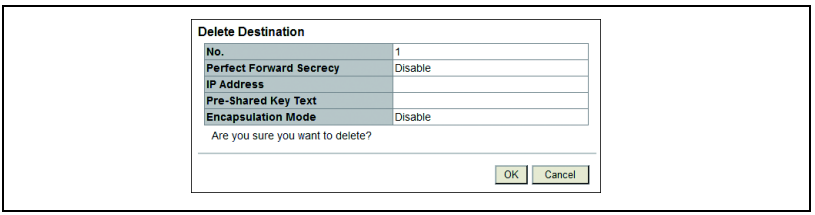


Destination Setting

1. To make settings for the perfect forward secrecy, IP address, pre-shared key text, and encapsulation mode, click [Edit]. If the setting has already been made, an asterisk (*) appears in the Set field for each.
2. Select the desired option from the drop-down list, or click the text box to make an entry for each. For details of these setting items, see page 6-87 of Network Setting.

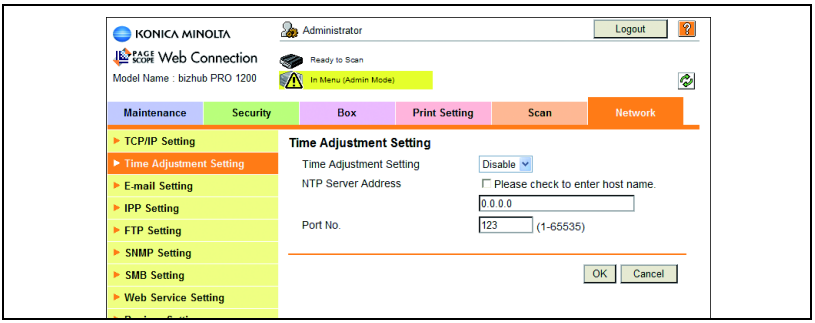


3. Click [OK]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the setting and delete the entered information.
4. To delete the setting, click [Cancel] of the desired item.
5. Click [OK]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the deletion.



8.9.4 Time Adjustment Setting

This screen appears when you click [Time Adjustment Setting] on the [Network] tab.

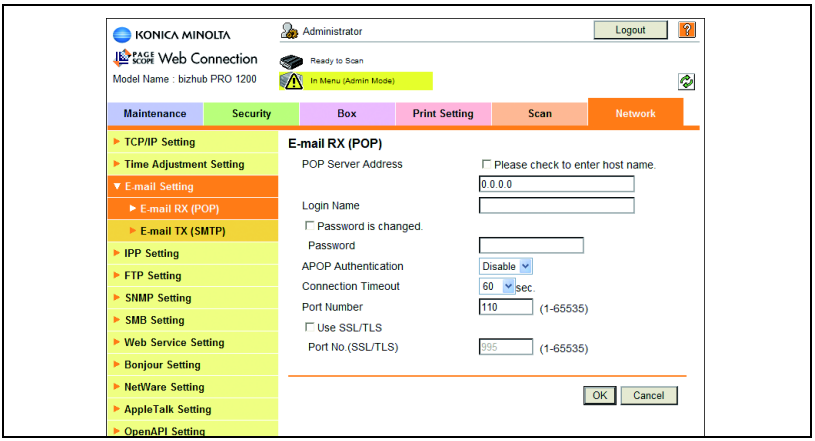


Use this screen to make settings for NTP server.

1. Select the desired option from the drop-down list. For items that require an entry, click the text box to type in.
   For details of each setting item, see Network Setting at page 6-96.
2. Click [OK]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the setting and delete the entered information.
3. Click [OK] on the setting complete screen.

8.9.5 E-mail RX (POP)

This screen appears when you click [E-mail RX (POP)] on the [Network] tab.

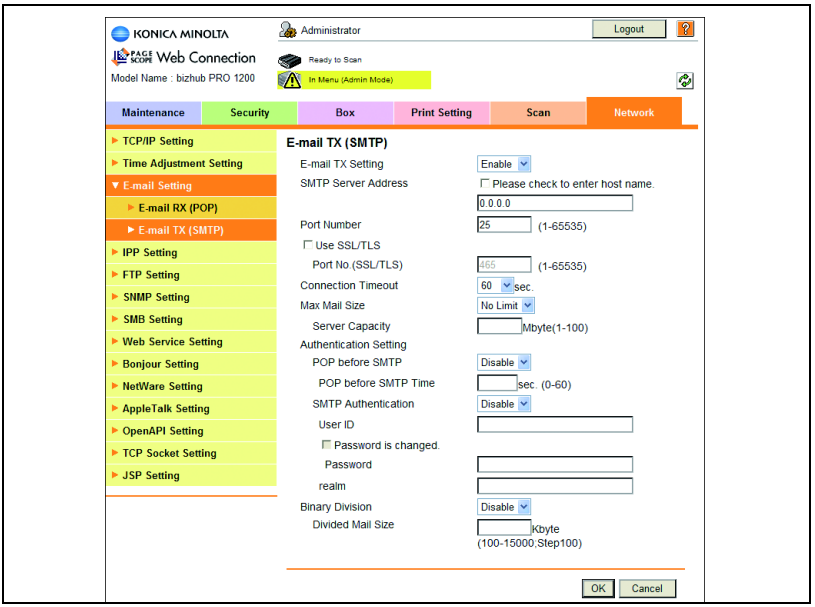


Use this screen to make settings concerning e-mail reception by POP.

1. Select the desired option from the drop-down list, or click the text box to make an entry for each. For details of these setting items, see page 6-93 of Network Setting.
2. Click [OK]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the setting and delete the entered information.
3. Click [OK] on the setting complete screen.

8.9.6 E-mail TX (SMTP)

This screen appears when you click [E-mail TX (SMTP)] on the [Network] tab.

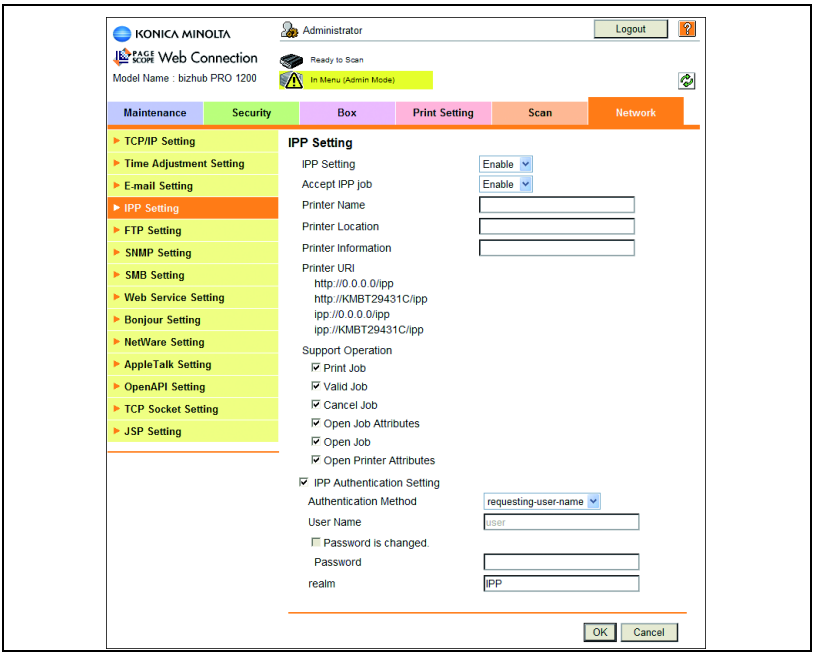


Use this screen to make settings concerning e-mail transmission by SMTP.

1. Select the desired option from the drop-down list, or click the text box to make an entry for each. For details of these setting items, see page 6-92 of Network Setting.
2. Click [OK]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the setting and delete the entered information.
3. Click [OK] on the setting complete screen.

8.9.7 IPP Setting

This screen appears when you click [IPP Setting] on the [Network] tab.



Use this screen to make settings concerning IPP.

1. Select the desired option from the drop-down list, or click the text box to make an entry for each. For details of these setting items, see page 6-89 of Network Setting.
2. Click [OK]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the setting and delete the entered information.
3. Click [OK] on the setting complete screen.

8.9.8 FTP Setting - FTP Send Setting

This screen appears when you click [FTP Send Setting] on the [Network] tab.

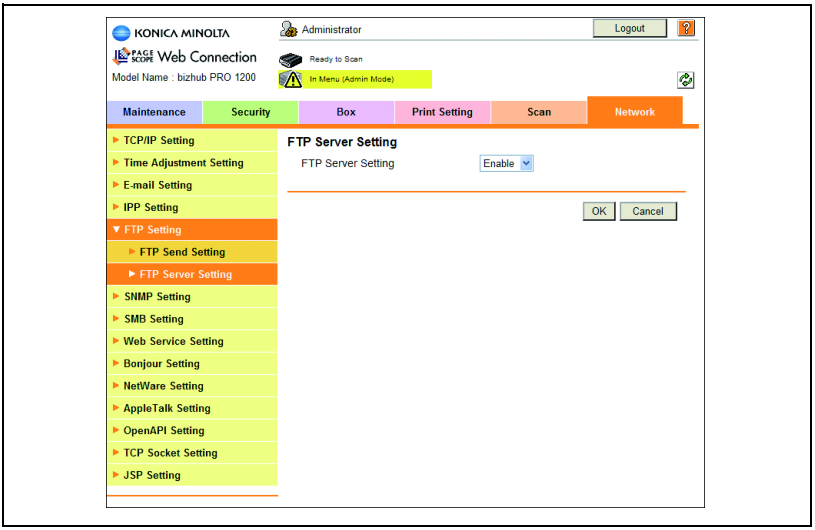


Use this screen to make settings concerning FTP transmission.

1. Select the desired option from the drop-down list, or click the text box to make an entry for each. For details of these setting items, see page 6-89 of Network Setting.
2. Click [OK]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the setting and delete the entered information.
3. Click [OK] on the setting complete screen.

8.9.9 FTP Setting - FTP Server Setting

This screen appears when you click [FTP Server Setting] on the [Network] tab.

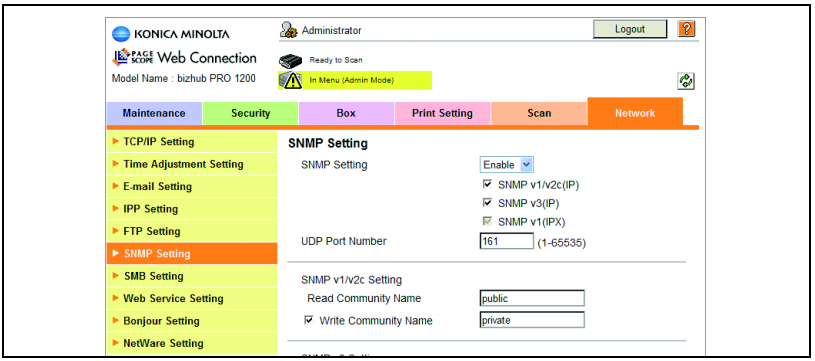


Use this screen whether or not to enable the FTP server setting.

1. Select [Enable] or [Disable] from the drop-down list of FTP Server Setting.
2. Click [OK]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the setting.
3. Click [OK] on the setting complete screen.

8.9.10 SNMP Setting

This screen appears when you click [SNMP Setting] on the [Network] tab.

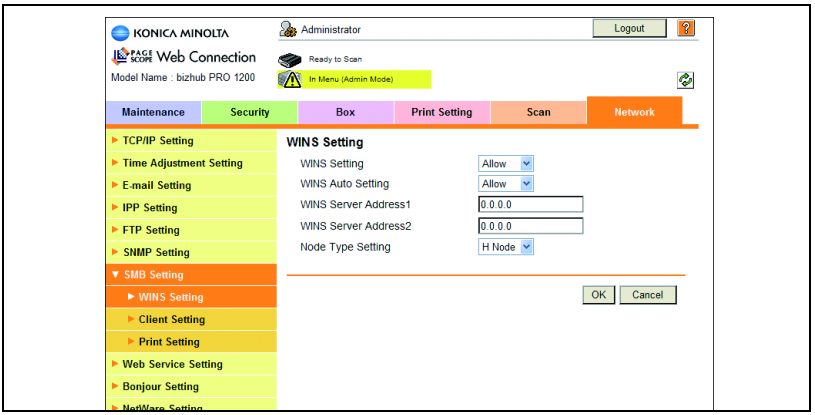


Use this screen to make settings concerning SNMP.

1. Select the desired option from the drop-down list, or click the text box to make an entry for each. For details of these setting items, see page 6-89 of Network Setting.
2. Click [OK]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the setting and delete the entered information.
3. Click [OK] on the setting complete screen.

8.9.11 SMB Setting - WINS Setting

This screen appears when you click [WINS Setting] on the [Network] tab.

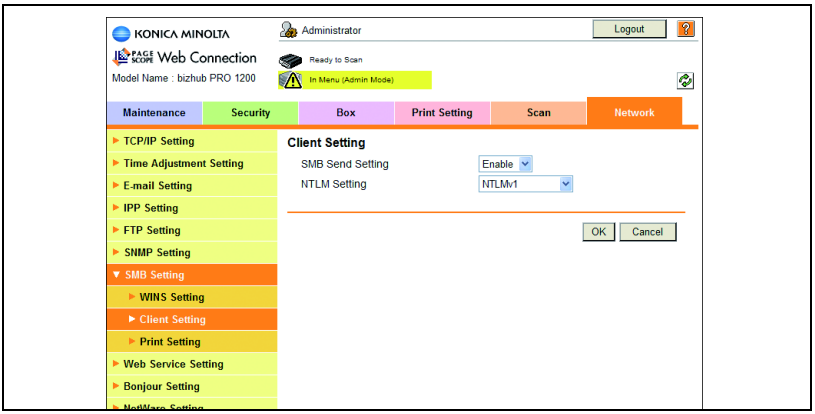


Use this screen to make settings concerning WINS.

1. Select the desired option from the drop-down list, or click the text box to make an entry for each. For details of these setting items, see page 6-91 of Network Setting.
2. Click [OK]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the setting and delete the entered information.
3. Click [OK] on the setting complete screen.

8.9.12 SMB Setting - Client Setting

This screen appears when you click [Client Setting] on the [Network] tab.

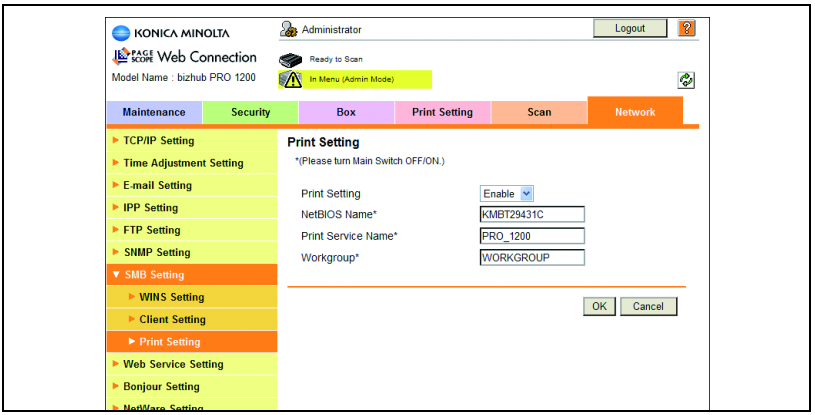


Use this screen to make settings concerning the SMB client function.

1. Select [Enable] or [Disable] from the drop-down list of SMB Send Setting.
2. Select the desired option from the drop-down list of NTLM Setting.
3. Click [OK]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the setting.
4. Click [OK] on the setting complete screen.

8.9.13 SMB Setting - Print Setting

This screen appears when you click [Print Setting] on the [Network] tab.

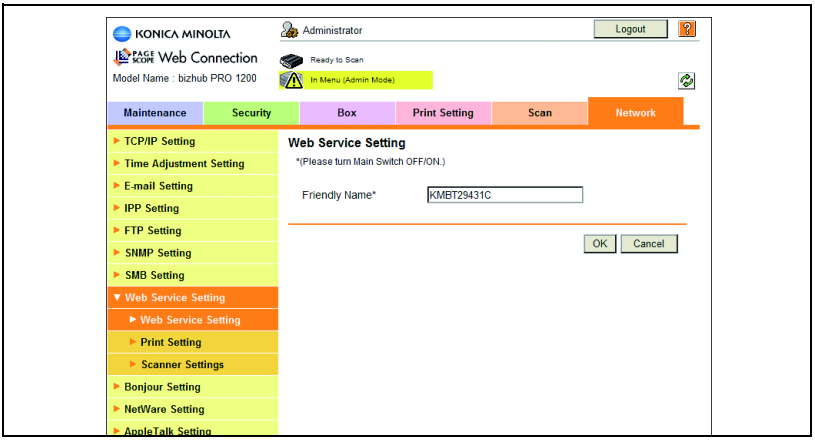


Use this screen to make settings concerning the SMB print function.

1. Select [Enable] or [Disable] from the drop-down list, or click the text box to make an entry for each. For details of these setting items, see page 6-91 of Network Setting.
2. Click [OK]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the setting and delete the entered information.
3. Click [OK] on the setting complete screen.
4. If any setting change has been made, turn off then on the main power switch of the machine.

8.9.14 Web Service Setting - Web Service Setting

This screen appears when you click [Web Service Setting] on the [Network] tab.

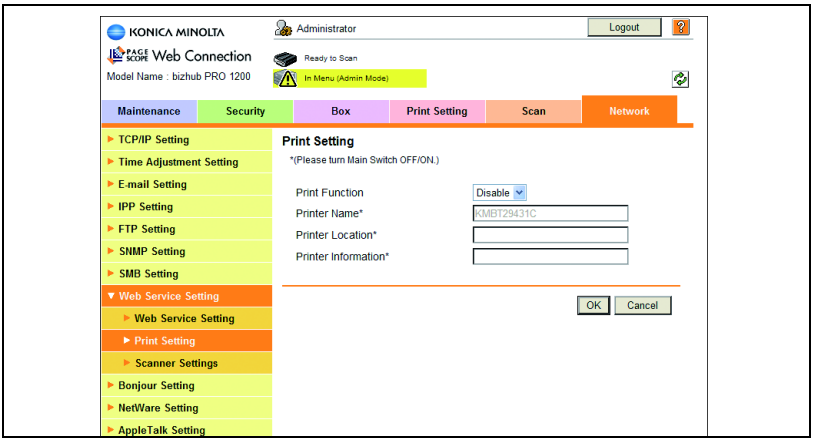


Use this screen to make settings concerning the common settings of Web service.

1. Enter the desired name into the Friendly Name text box. Maximum 62 alphanumeric characters can be entered.
2. Select [Enable] or [Disable] from the drop-down list of SSL Setting. (This setting item will not appear on the screen without SSL certificate installed.)
3. Click [OK]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the setting and delete the entered information.
4. Click [OK] on the setting complete screen.
5. If any setting with an asterisk (*) has been changed, turn off then on the main power switch of the machine.

8.9.15 Web Service Setting - Print Setting

This screen appears when you click [Print Setting] on the [Network] tab.

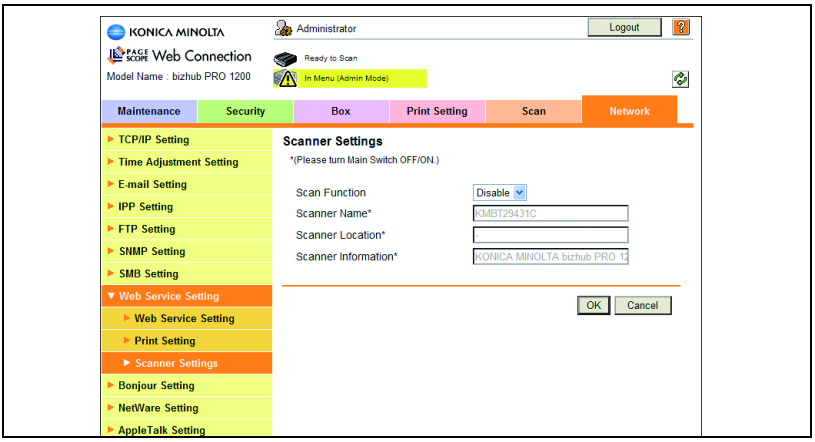


Use this screen to make settings concerning the printing function of Web service.

1. Select [Enable] or [Disable] from the drop-down list of Print Function.
2. Click the text box to make an entry for each.
3. Click [OK]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the setting and delete the entered information.
4. Click [OK] on the setting complete screen.
5. If any setting with an asterisk (*) has been changed, turn off then on the main power switch of the machine.

8.9.16 Web Service Setting - Scanner Settings

This screen appears when you click [Scanner Settings] on the [Network] tab.

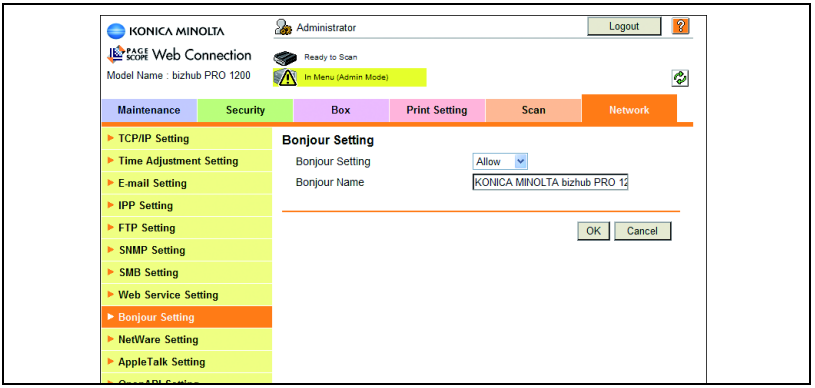


Use this screen to make settings concerning the scanning function of Web service.

1. Select [Enable] or [Disable] from the drop-down list of Scan Function.
2. Enter the corresponding information into each text box.
3. Click [OK]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the setting and delete the entered information.
4. Click [OK] on the setting complete screen.
5. If any setting with an asterisk (*) has been changed, turn off then on the main power switch of the machine.

8.9.17 Bonjour Setting

This screen appears when you click [Print Setting] on the [Network] tab.

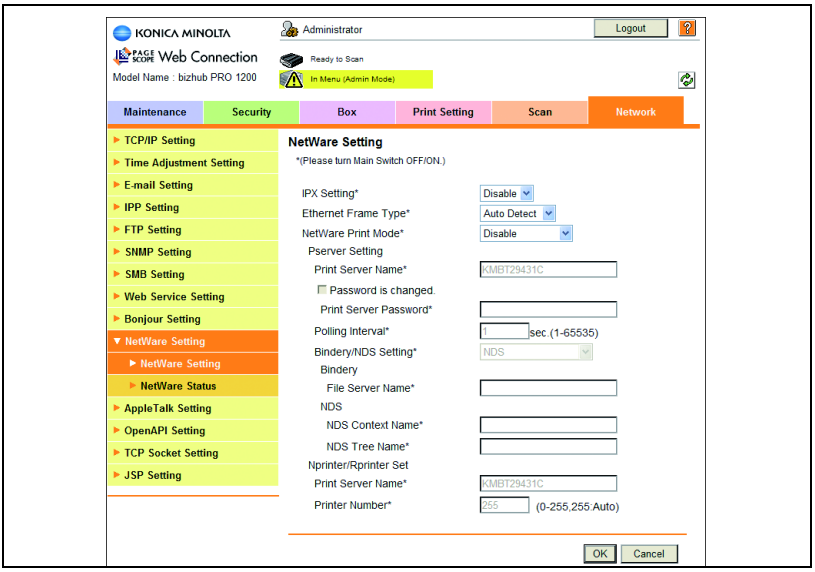


Use this screen to make settings concerning the Bonjour.

1. Select [Allow] or [Restrict] from the drop-down list of Bonjour Setting.
2. Enter the desired name into the Bonjour Name text box. Maximum 63 alphanumeric characters can be entered.
3. Click [OK]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the setting and delete the entered information.
4. Click [OK] on the setting complete screen.

8.9.18 NetWare Setting - NetWare Setting

This screen appears when you click [NetWare Setting] on the [Network] tab.

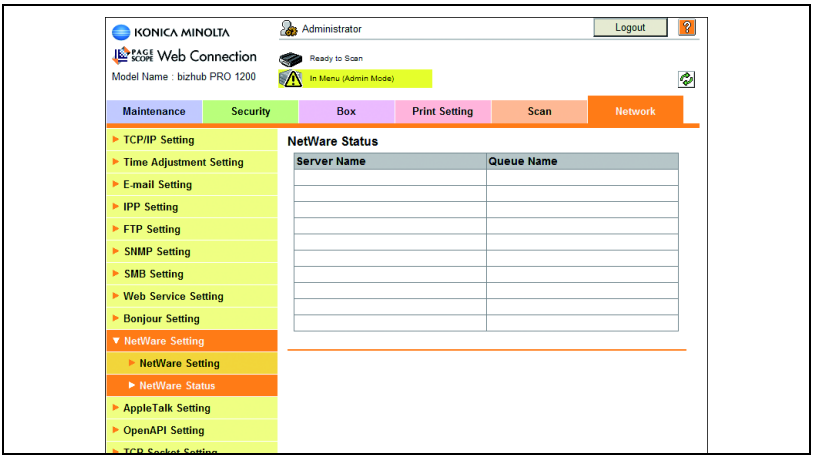


Use this screen to make settings concerning the NetWare setting.

1. Select the desired option from the drop-down list, or click the text box to make an entry for each. For details of these setting items, see page 6-87 to page 6-88 of Network Setting.
2. Click [OK]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the setting and delete the entered information.
3. Click [OK] on the setting complete screen.
4. If any setting with an asterisk (*) has been changed, turn off then on the main power switch of the machine.

8.9.19 NetWare Setting - NetWare Status

This screen appears when you click [NetWare Setting] on the [Network] tab.

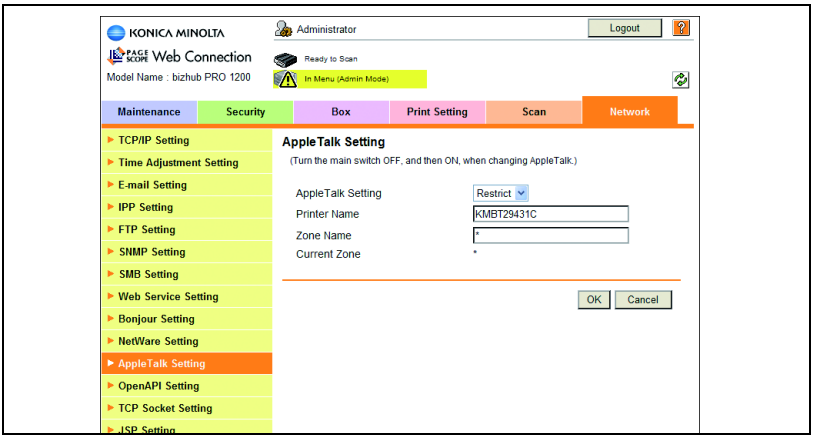


This screen displays the status of NetWare connection.

- Server Name:
  Displays the server name detected in NetWare connection.
- Queue Name:
  Displays the detected queue name.

8.9.20 AppleTalk Setting

This screen appears when you click [AppleTalk Setting] on the [Network] tab.

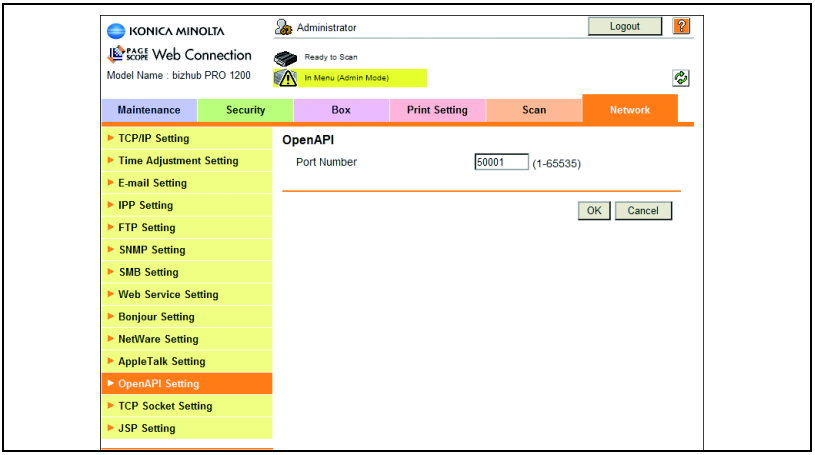


Use this screen to make settings concerning AppleTalk.

1. Select [Allow] or [Restrict] from the drop-down list of AppleTalk Setting.
2. Click the text box to make an entry for each. For details of these setting items, see page 6-91 of Network Setting.
3. Click [OK]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the setting and delete the entered information.
4. Click [OK] on the setting complete screen.
5. If any setting change has been made, turn off then on the main power switch of the machine.

8.9.21 OpenAPI Setting

This screen appears when you click [OpenAPI Setting] on the [Network] tab.

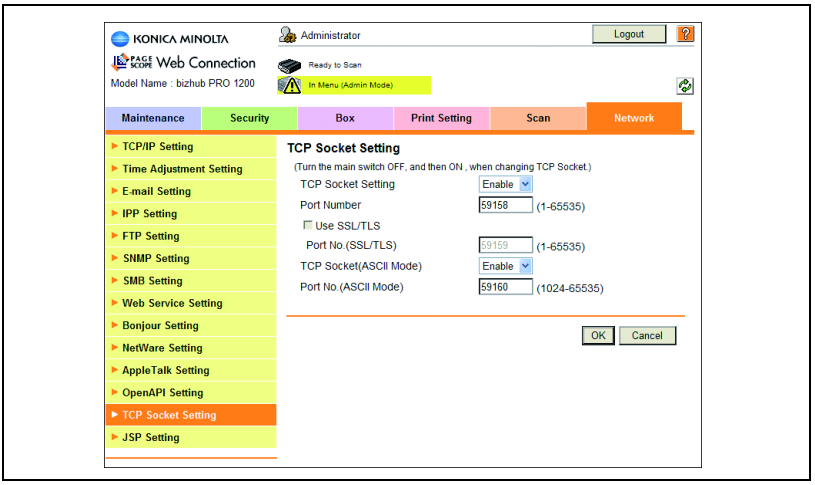


Use this screen to make the setting for Open API.

1. Enter the desired port number into the text box.
2. Click [OK]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the setting and delete the entered information.
3. Click [OK] on the setting complete screen.

8.9.22 TCP Socket Setting

This screen appears when you click [TCP Socket Setting] on the [Network] tab.



Use this screen to make settings concerning the TCP Socket.

1. Select the desired option from the drop-down list, or click the text box to make an entry for each. For details of these setting items, see page 6-93 of Network Setting.
2. Click [OK]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the setting and delete the entered information.
3. Click [OK] on the setting complete screen.
4. If any setting change has been made, turn off then on the main power switch of the machine.

8.9.23 JSP Setting

This screen appears when you click [JSP Setting] on the [Network] tab.



Use this screen to make initial settings for connecting the Tomcat server.

1. Select the desired option from the drop-down list, or click the text box to make an entry for each. For details of these setting items, see page 6-96 of Network Setting.
2. Click [OK]. Clicking [Cancel] will cancel the setting and delete the entered information.
3. Click [OK] on the setting complete screen.
4. If any setting change has been made, turn off then on the main power switch of the machine.

9 Appendix

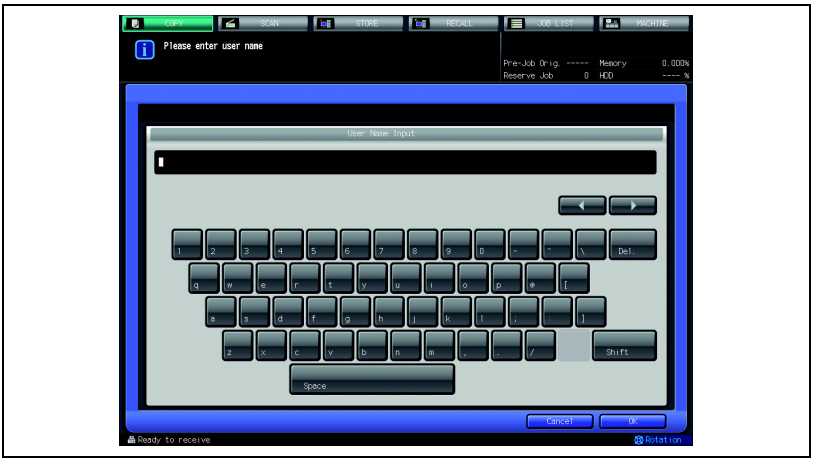
9 Appendix

9.1 How to Input Characters

As touching the item where you can input characters, the character input screen appears.
You can input alphanumerics and symbols. A character array is the same with the computer keyboards.

About keys on the character input screen

Keys on the character input screen are described here.



◀ / ▶
This key moves a cursor.

[Delete]
This key deletes the character on the left of the cursor.

[OK]
This key determines the characters you input, and the character input screen closes.

[Cancel]
This key cancels the characters you input, and the character input screen closes.

[Shift]
This key switches between an upper case letter and a lower case letter, and between numbers and signs.

About character input

The followings describe basic steps to input characters on the character input screen.

1 Touch the corresponding key to input the desired character.

2 Touch [OK].

The character input screen closes. The input characters are displayed on the corresponding column.

9.2 Importable/Exportable Setting Data - Devices

[1] Maintenance

Main menus	Sub menus	Target Items
Status Notification Setting		Register Notification Address
		Notification Address
		Port Number
		Community Name
		Alert
		Replenish Paper Tray
		JAM
		PM Call
		Replace Staples
		Replenish Toner
		Finisher Tray Full
		Service Call
		Hole-Punch Scrap Box Full
		Waste Basket of Trimming Unit is Full
		Out of Glue
		Replace Trim Receiver
Machine Setting		Device Name
		Device Location
		Administrator Name
		Extension No.
		Admin. E-mail Address
Online Assistance		Contact Name
		Contact Information
		Product Help URL
		Corporate URL
		Supplies and Accessories
		Online Help URL

[2] Security

Main menus	Sub menus	Target Items
Authentication		General Settings
		Account Track
		Account Track Input Method
		Synchronize User Authentication & Account Track
		Number of Counters Assigned for Users
SSL/TLS Setting	Action for Invalid Certificate	Action for Invalid Certificate
Auto Logout		Admin. Mode Logout Time
		User Mode Logout Time

[3] Printer Setting

Main menus	Sub menus	Target Items
Default Setting	Default Setting	Default Setting radio button
	Basic Setting	PDL Setting
		Paper Tray
		Output Tray
		2-Sided Print
		Bind Direction
		Staple
		Punch
		Fold/Trimming
		Offset
		Output Order
		Page Order
		Numbers of Sets
		Sort
		Default Paper Size
		Original Direction
		Resolution
		Banner Option
		Banner Tray
		A4/A3<->LTR/LGR Auto Switch
		Combine Originals/Image Repeat
		Booklet
		Adhesive Binding
		Print Position
		Full Bleed
		Pile Permission
	PCL Setting	Symbol Set
		Resident Font
		Download Font
		Font Size
		Scalable Font
		Bitmap Font
		Line/Page
		CR/LF Mapping
	PS Setting	PS Error Print
	TIFF Setting	Auto Paper Select
		Image Position
Spool Setting		Spool Setting
Interface Setting		Network Timeout
		USB Timeout
RAW Port Number List		Setting No

[4] Network

Main menus	Sub menus	Target Items
TCP/IP Setting	TCP/IP Setting	TCP/IP Setting
		Network Speed
		IP Address Setting Method
		DHCP
		BootP
		ARP/PING
		AutoIP
		IP Address
		Subnet Mask
		Default Gateway
		IPv6 Setting
		IPv6 Auto Setting
		IPv6 Global Address
		IPv6 Global Address Prefix Length
		IPv6 Gateway Address
		RAW Port Number Port 1～6
		Dynamic DNS Setting
		Host Name
		DNS Domain Name Setting
		DNS Domain Auto Obtain
		DNS Default Domain Name
		DNS Search Domain Name 1～3
		DNS Server Setting
		DNS Server Auto Obtain
		Primary DNS Server
		Secondary DNS Server 1～2
		LPD
	IP Filtering	Permit Access
		Set1
		Set2
		Set3
		Set4
		Set5
		Deny Access
		Set1
		Set2
		Set3
		Set4
		Set5

TCP/IP Setting (continued)	IPSec Setting	IPSec Setting
		IKE Setting
		Key Validity Period
		Diffie-Hellman Group
		Encryption Algorithm
		Authentication Algorithm
		IPsec SA Setting
		Lifetime After Establish SA
		Security Protocol
		ESP Encryption Algorithm
		ESP Authentication Algorithm
		AH Authentication Algorithm
		Peer
		Perfect Forward Secrecy
		IP Address
		Pre-Shared Key Text
		Encapsulation Mode
Time Adjustment Setting		Time Adjustment Setting
		NTP Server Address
		Port No.
E-mail Setting	E-mail RX (POP)	POP Server Address
		Login Name
		Password
		APOP Authentication
		Connection Timeout
		Port Number
		Use SSL/TLS
		Port No.(SSL/TLS)
	E-mail TX (SMTP)	E-mail TX Setting
		SMTP Server Address
		Port Number
		Use SSL/TLS
		Port No.(SSL/TLS)
		Connection Timeout
		Max Mail Size
		Server Capacity
		Authentication Setting
		POP before SMTP
		POP before SMTP Time
		SMTP Authentication
		User ID
		Password
		realm
		Binary Division
		Divided Mail Size

IPP Setting		IPP
		Accept IPP job
		Printer Name
		Printer Location
		Printer Information
		Suport Operation
		Print Job
		Valid Job
		Cancel Job
		Open Job Attributes
		Open Job
		Open Printer Attributes
		IPP Authentication Setting
		Authentication Method
		User Name
		Password
		realm
FTP Setting	FTP Server Setting	FTP Server Setting
SNMP Setting		SNMP Setting
		SNMP v1/v2c(IP)
		SNMP v3(IP)
		SNMP v1(IPX)
		UDP Port Number
		SNMP v1/v2c Setting
		Read Community Name
		Write Community Name
		SNMP v3 Setting
		Context Name
		Discovery User Name
		Read User Name
		Security Level
		auth-password
		priv-password
		Write User Name
		Security Level
		auth-password
		priv-password
		TRAP Setting
		TRAP Setting when Authentication Fails

SMB Setting	WINS Setting	WINS Setting
		WINS Auto Setting
		WINS Server Address 1～2
		Node Type Setting
	Print Setting	Print Setting
		NetBIOS Name
		Print Service Name
		Workgroup
Web Service Setting	Web Service Setting	Friendly Name
		SSL Setting
	Print Setting	Print Function
		Printer Name
		Printer Location
		Printer Information
Bonjour Setting		Bonjour Setting
		Bonjour Name
NetWare Setting	NetWare Setting	IPX Setting
		Ethernet Frame Type
		NetWare Print Mode
		Pserver Setting
		Print Server Name
		Print Server Password
		Polling Interval
		Bindery/NDS Setting
		File Server Name
		NDS Context Name
		NDS Tree Name
		Nprinter/Rprinter Set
		Print Server Name
		Printer Number
AppleTalk Setting		AppleTalk Setting
		Printer Name
		Zone Name
OpenAPI Setting		Port Number
		Use SSL/TLS
		Port No.(SSL/TLS)
TCP Socket Setting		TCP Socket(ASCII Mode)
		Port No.(ASCII Mode)
		Use SSL/TLS
		Port No.(SSL/TLS)
		TCP Socket(ASCII Mode)
		Port No.(ASCII Mode)
JSP Setting		JSP Setting
		Port Number
		Use SSL/TLS
		Port No.(SSL/TLS)
		User ID
		Password

9.3 Importable/Exportable Setting Data - Counters

Main menus	Sub menus	Target Items
Maintenance – Meter Count	Total Counter	Total
		Total Duplex
		# of Originals
		# of Used Paper
	Copy Counter	Total
		Large Size
	Print Counter	Total
		Large Size
	Scan Counter	Total
		Large Size

9.4 Importable/Exportable Setting Data - Authentication

[1] Security

Main menus	Sub menus	Target Items
User Registration		No.
		User Name
		User Password
		Account Name
		Function Permission
Account Track		No.
		Account Name
		Password
		Max. Allowance Set
Authentication Setting		User Authentication
		Account Authentication
		Account Authentication Method
		Synchronize User/Account Track
		User Distribute Number

9.5 Demo Page

PCL Demo Page Print

(Print Sample)

PS Demo Page Print

PostScript® Test Page

KONICA MINOLTA



PostScript Version: 3017.102(0)
Serial Number: 902002

System RAM: 16MB
PostScript VM: 15046912 bytes
Free VM: 1125884 bytes

Disk0: 9687.56 MB Total, 9091.42 MB Free
Disk1: 9687.56 MB Total, 9091.42 MB Free
Disk2: 9687.56 MB Total, 9091.42 MB Free

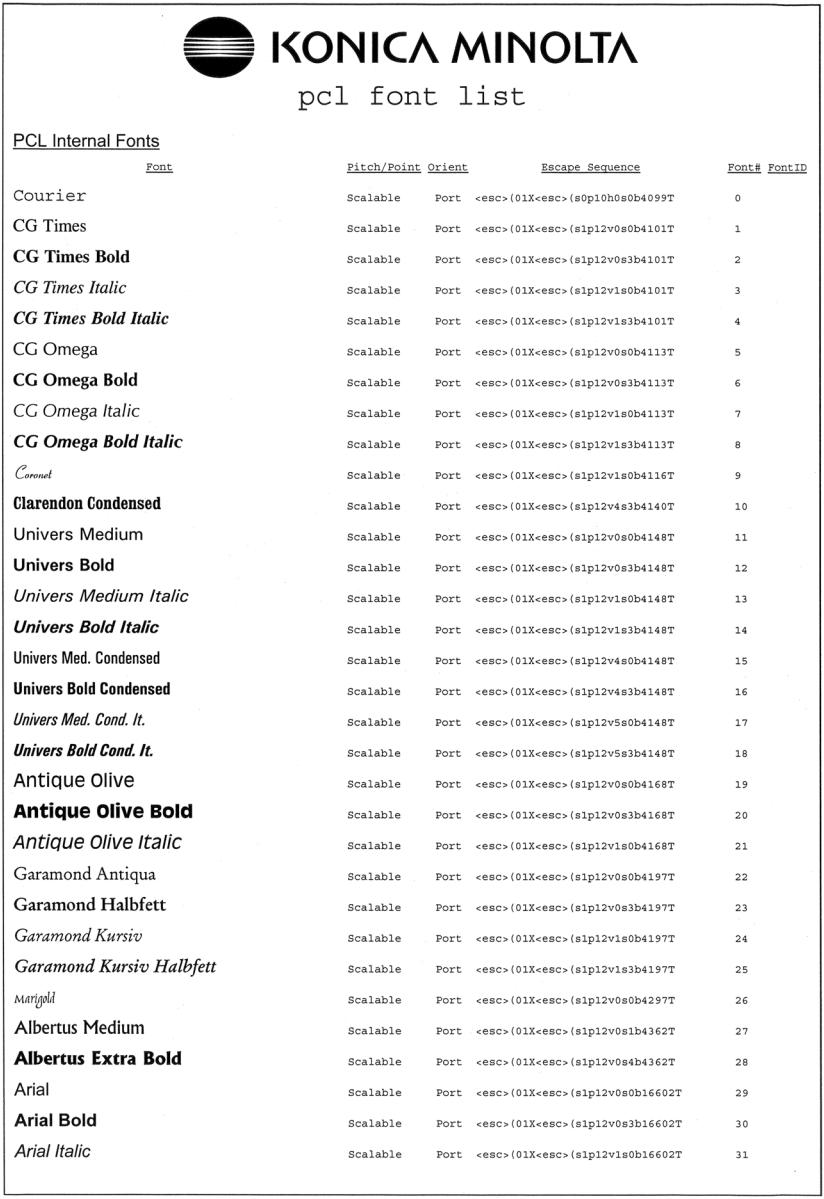
Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Mauris vel turpis vitae odio mattis rhoncus. Morbi a libero. In rutrum metus quis risus. Sed sit amet augue. Nulla vitae pede et massa ullamcorper hendrerit. Vestibulum ante ipsum primis in faucibus orci luctus et ultrices posuere cubilia Curae; Proin nec turpis in enim varius placerat. Class aptent taciti sociosqu ad litora torquent per conubia nostra, per inceptos himenaeos. Praesent hendrerit molestie pede. Nam ullamcorper, leo vitae mattis interdum, nunc ipsum auctor sem, non viverra augue libero a metus. Quisque metus. Nam lorem velit, vulputate molestie, aliquet sit amet, tempus nec, purus. Suspendisse pulvinar turpis et mauris ullamcorper pellentesque. Curabitur tincidunt, lorem sit amet eleifend semper, quam massa aliquet mauris, eget lobortis enim nisi vitae mi. Ut leo tellus, mattis eu, sagittis at, tincidunt et, massa. Mauris lorem ipsum, adipiscing ut, auctor vitae, vulputate nec, dui. Suspendisse potenti. Morbi urna sem, faucibus non, luctus vel, mattis molestie, leo.

POSTSCRIPT® Software From Adobe

Adobe, PostScript, the Adobe logo and the PostScript logo are registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

(Print Sample)

PCL Font List



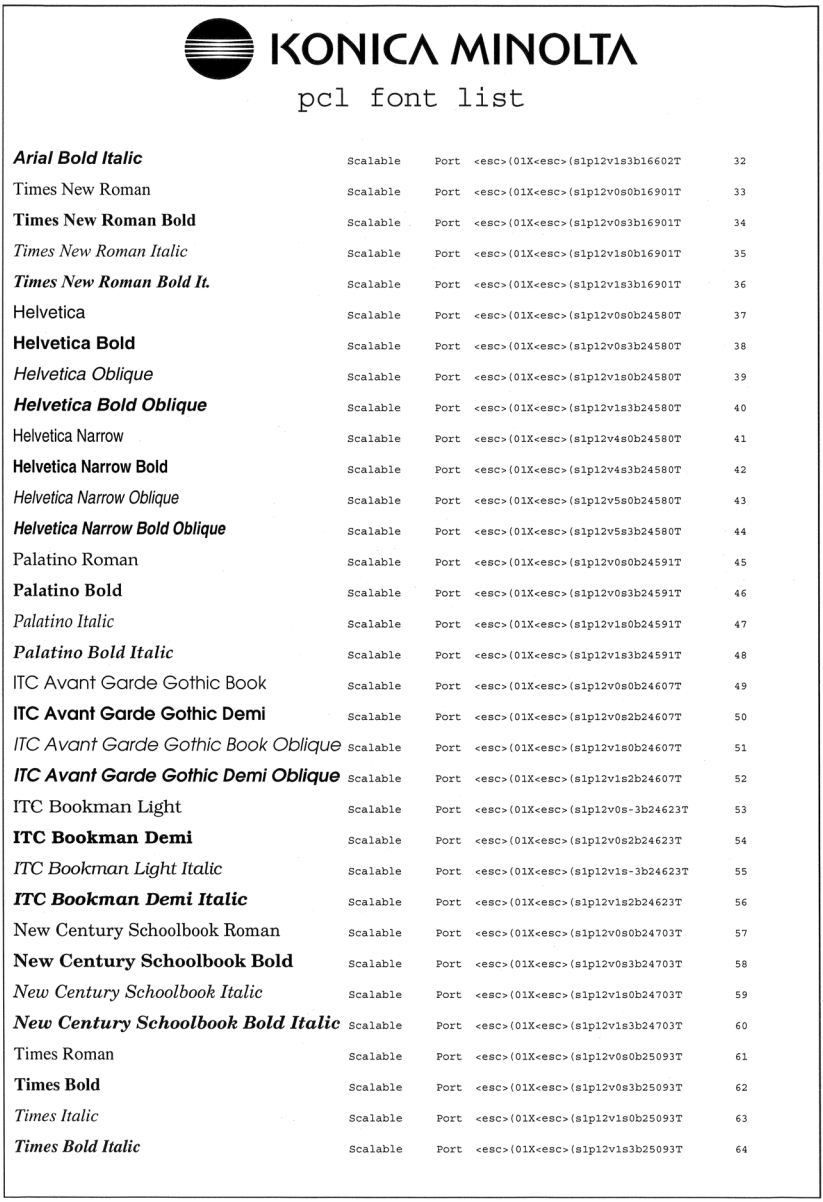
KONICA MINOLTA

pcl font list

PCL Internal Fonts

Font	Pitch/Point	Orient	Escape Sequence	Font#	FontID
Courier	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s0p10h0s0b4099T	0	
CG Times	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s0b4101T	1	
CG Times Bold	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s3b4101T	2	
CG Times Italic	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v1s0b4101T	3	
CG Times Bold Italic	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v1s3b4101T	4	
CG Omega	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s0b4113T	5	
CG Omega Bold	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s3b4113T	6	
CG Omega Italic	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v1s0b4113T	7	
CG Omega Bold Italic	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v1s3b4113T	8	
Coronet	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v1s0b4116T	9	
Clarendon Condensed	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v4s3b4140T	10	
Univers Medium	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s0b4148T	11	
Univers Bold	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s3b4148T	12	
Univers Medium Italic	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v1s0b4148T	13	
Univers Bold Italic	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v1s3b4148T	14	
Univers Med. Condensed	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v4s0b4148T	15	
Univers Bold Condensed	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v4s3b4148T	16	
Univers Med. Cond. It.	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v5s0b4148T	17	
Univers Bold Cond. It.	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v5s3b4148T	18	
Antique Olive	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s0b4168T	19	
Antique Olive Bold	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s3b4168T	20	
Antique Olive Italic	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v1s0b4168T	21	
Garamond Antiqua	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s0b4197T	22	
Garamond Halbfett	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s3b4197T	23	
Garamond Kursiv	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v1s0b4197T	24	
Garamond Kursiv Halbfett	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v1s3b4197T	25	
Marigold	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s0b4297T	26	
Albertus Medium	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s1b4362T	27	
Albertus Extra Bold	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s4b4362T	28	
Arial	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s0b16602T	29	
Arial Bold	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s3b16602T	30	
Arial Italic	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v1s0b16602T	31	

(Print Sample)

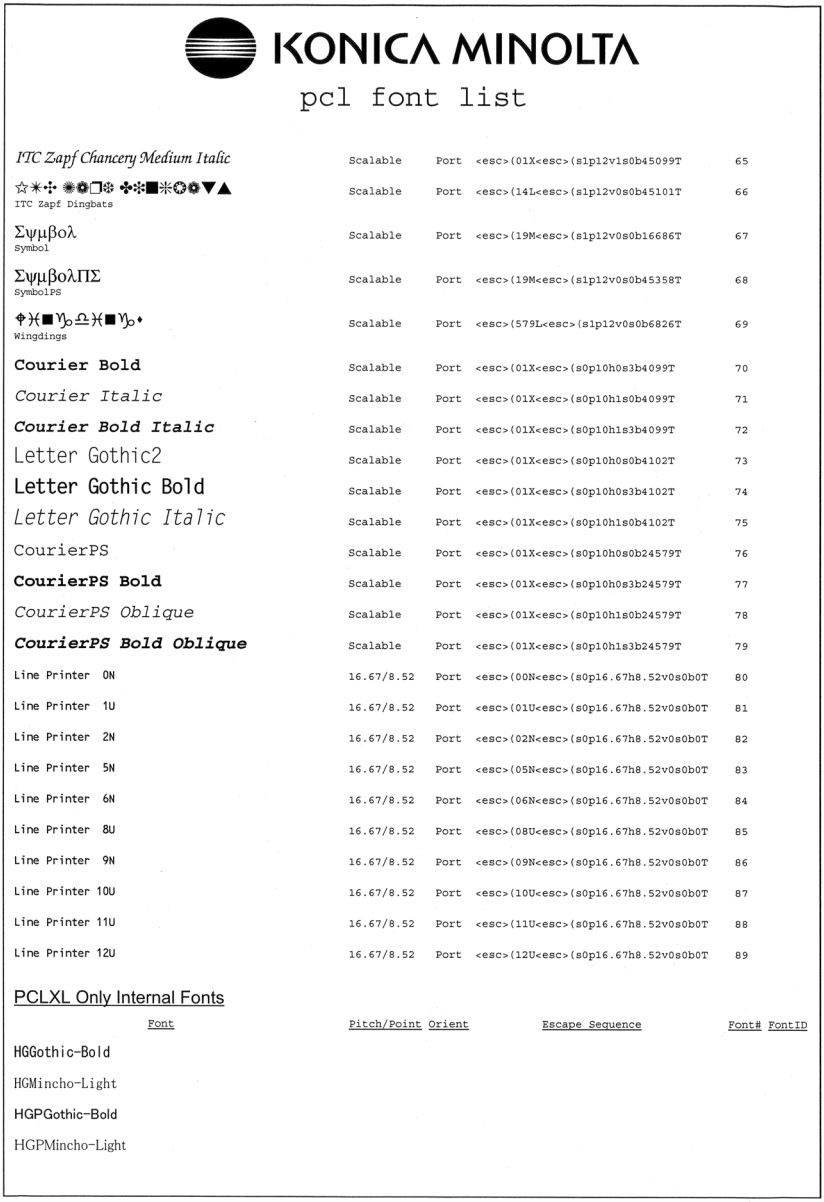


KONICA MINOLTA

pcl font list

Arial Bold Italic	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v1s3b16602T	32
Times New Roman	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s0b16901T	33
Times New Roman Bold	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s3b16901T	34
Times New Roman Italic	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v1s0b16901T	35
Times New Roman Bold It.	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v1s3b16901T	36
Helvetica	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s0b24580T	37
Helvetica Bold	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s3b24580T	38
Helvetica Oblique	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v1s0b24580T	39
Helvetica Bold Oblique	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v1s3b24580T	40
Helvetica Narrow	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v4s0b24580T	41
Helvetica Narrow Bold	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v4s3b24580T	42
Helvetica Narrow Oblique	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v5s0b24580T	43
Helvetica Narrow Bold Oblique	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v5s3b24580T	44
Palatino Roman	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s0b24591T	45
Palatino Bold	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s3b24591T	46
Palatino Italic	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v1s0b24591T	47
Palatino Bold Italic	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v1s3b24591T	48
ITC Avant Garde Gothic Book	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s0b24607T	49
ITC Avant Garde Gothic Demi	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s2b24607T	50
ITC Avant Garde Gothic Book Oblique	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v1s0b24607T	51
ITC Avant Garde Gothic Demi Oblique	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v1s2b24607T	52
ITC Bookman Light	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s-3b24623T	53
ITC Bookman Demi	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s2b24623T	54
ITC Bookman Light Italic	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v1s-3b24623T	55
ITC Bookman Demi Italic	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v1s2b24623T	56
New Century Schoolbook Roman	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s0b24703T	57
New Century Schoolbook Bold	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s3b24703T	58
New Century Schoolbook Italic	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v1s0b24703T	59
New Century Schoolbook Bold Italic	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v1s3b24703T	60
Times Roman	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s0b25093T	61
Times Bold	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s3b25093T	62
Times Italic	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v1s0b25093T	63
Times Bold Italic	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v1s3b25093T	64

(Print Sample)



KONICA MINOLTA

pcl font list

ITC Zapf Chancery Medium Italic	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v1s0b45099T	65
☆✶✣ ✺✹❑❄ ✤❇■✳❁✪▼▲ ITC Zapf Dingbats	Scalable	Port	<esc>(14L<esc>(s1p12v0s0b45101T	66
Σψμβολ Symbol	Scalable	Port	<esc>(19M<esc>(s1p12v0s0b16686T	67
ΣψμβολΠΣ SymbolPS	Scalable	Port	<esc>(19M<esc>(s1p12v0s0b45358T	68
⌖✈■♈♎✈■♈♦ Wingdings	Scalable	Port	<esc>(579L<esc>(s1p12v0s0b6826T	69
Courier Bold	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s0p10h0s3b4099T	70
Courier Italic	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s0p10h1s0b4099T	71
Courier Bold Italic	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s0p10h1s3b4099T	72
Letter Gothic2	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s0p10h0s0b4102T	73
Letter Gothic Bold	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s0p10h0s3b4102T	74
Letter Gothic Italic	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s0p10h1s0b4102T	75
CourierPS	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s0p10h0s0b24579T	76
CourierPS Bold	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s0p10h0s3b24579T	77
CourierPS Oblique	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s0p10h1s0b24579T	78
CourierPS Bold Oblique	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s0p10h1s3b24579T	79
Line Printer 0N	16.67/8.52	Port	<esc>(00N<esc>(s0p16.67h8.52v0s0b0T	80
Line Printer 1U	16.67/8.52	Port	<esc>(01U<esc>(s0p16.67h8.52v0s0b0T	81
Line Printer 2N	16.67/8.52	Port	<esc>(02N<esc>(s0p16.67h8.52v0s0b0T	82
Line Printer 5N	16.67/8.52	Port	<esc>(05N<esc>(s0p16.67h8.52v0s0b0T	83
Line Printer 6N	16.67/8.52	Port	<esc>(06N<esc>(s0p16.67h8.52v0s0b0T	84
Line Printer 8U	16.67/8.52	Port	<esc>(08U<esc>(s0p16.67h8.52v0s0b0T	85
Line Printer 9N	16.67/8.52	Port	<esc>(09N<esc>(s0p16.67h8.52v0s0b0T	86
Line Printer 10U	16.67/8.52	Port	<esc>(10U<esc>(s0p16.67h8.52v0s0b0T	87
Line Printer 11U	16.67/8.52	Port	<esc>(11U<esc>(s0p16.67h8.52v0s0b0T	88
Line Printer 12U	16.67/8.52	Port	<esc>(12U<esc>(s0p16.67h8.52v0s0b0T	89

PCLXL Only Internal Fonts

Font	Pitch/Point	Orient	Escape Sequence	Font#	FontID
HGGothic-Bold					
HGMincho-Light					
HGPGothic-Bold					
HGPMincho-Light					

(Print Sample)

PS Font List

PostScript® Fonts

Resident Fonts

AdobeSansMM	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
AdobeSerifMM	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
AlbertusMT	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
AlbertusMT-Italic	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
AlbertusMT-Light	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
AntiqueOlive-Bold	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'**
AntiqueOlive-Compact	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<**
AntiqueOlive-Italic	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
AntiqueOlive-Roman	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
Apple-Chancery	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
Arial-BoldItalicMT	***ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'***
Arial-BoldMT	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'**
Arial-ItalicMT	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
ArialMT	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
AvantGarde-Book	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
AvantGarde-BookOblique	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
AvantGarde-Demi	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'**
AvantGarde-DemiOblique	***ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'***
Bodoni	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
Bodoni-Bold	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'**
Bodoni-BoldItalic	***ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'***
Bodoni-Italic	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
Bodoni-Poster	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'**
Bodoni-PosterCompressed	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
Bookman-Demi	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'**
Bookman-DemiItalic	***ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'***
Bookman-Light	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
Bookman-LightItalic	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
Carta	❄♟▟▲☆✲✉✈✂♟⊕▲★▟♟0123456789⅄⎯↖○□△◇☆✸✦◩□✕✲◎
Chicago	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'**
Clarendon	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'**
Clarendon-Bold	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'**
Clarendon-Light	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
CooperBlack	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'**
CooperBlack-Italic	***ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'***
Copperplate-ThirtyThreeBC	**ABCDEFGABCDEFG0123456789[]{}!@#$% ^&*?<>~"'**
Copperplate-ThirtyTwoBC	ABCDEFGABCDEFG0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
Coronet-Regular	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
Courier	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
Courier-Bold	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'**
Courier-BoldOblique	***ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'***
Courier-Oblique	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
Eurostile	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'

(Print Sample)

PostScript® Fonts

Eurostile-Bold	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'**
Eurostile-BoldExtendedTwo	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#**
Eurostile-ExtendedTwo	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$
Geneva	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
GillSans	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
GillSans-Bold	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'**
GillSans-BoldCondensed	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'**
GillSans-BoldItalic	***ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'***
GillSans-Condensed	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
GillSans-ExtraBold	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'**
GillSans-Italic	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
GillSans-Light	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
GillSans-LightItalic	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
Goudy	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
Goudy-Bold	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'**
Goudy-BoldItalic	***ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'***
Goudy-ExtraBold	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'**
Goudy-Italic	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
Helvetica	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
Helvetica-Bold	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'**
Helvetica-BoldOblique	***ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'***
Helvetica-Condensed	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
Helvetica-Condensed-Bold	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'**
Helvetica-Condensed-BoldObl	***ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'***
Helvetica-Condensed-Oblique	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
Helvetica-Narrow	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
Helvetica-Narrow-Bold	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'**
Helvetica-Narrow-BoldOblique	***ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'***
Helvetica-Narrow-Oblique	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
Helvetica-Oblique	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
HoeflerText-Black	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'**
HoeflerText-BlackItalic	***ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'***
HoeflerText-Italic	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
HoeflerText-Ornaments	❧❧❧

PostScript® Fonts

LubalinGraph-BookOblique	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
LubalinGraph-Demi	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'**
LubalinGraph-DemiOblique	***ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'***
Marigold	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
MonaLisa-Recut	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
Monaco	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
NewCenturySchlbk-Bold	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'**
NewCenturySchlbk-BoldItalic	***ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'***
NewCenturySchlbk-Italic	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
NewCenturySchlbk-Roman	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
NewYork	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
Optima	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
Optima-Bold	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'**
Optima-BoldItalic	***ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'***
Optima-Italic	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
Oxford	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
Palatino-Bold	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'**
Palatino-BoldItalic	***ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'***
Palatino-Italic	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
Palatino-Roman	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
StempelGaramond-Bold	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'**
StempelGaramond-BoldItalic	***ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'***
StempelGaramond-Italic	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
StempelGaramond-Roman	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
Symbol	ABXΔΕΦΓαβχδεφγ0123456789[]{}!≅#∃%⊥&*?<>~∀ə
Tekton	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"*
Times-Bold	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'**
Times-BoldItalic	***ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'***
Times-Italic	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
Times-Roman	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
TimesNewRomanPS-BoldItalicMT	***ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'***
TimesNewRomanPS-BoldMT	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'**
TimesNewRomanPS-ItalicMT	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
TimesNewRomanPSMT	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
Univers	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
Univers-Bold	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'**
Univers-BoldExt	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?**
Univers-BoldExtObl	***ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?***
Univers-BoldOblique	***ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'***
Univers-Condensed	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
Univers-CondensedBold	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'**
Univers-CondensedBoldOblique	***ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'***
Univers-CondensedOblique	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
Univers-Extended	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<

(Print Sample)

PostScript® Fonts

Univers-ExtendedObl	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<*
Univers-Light	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
Univers-LightOblique	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
Univers-Oblique	***ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'***
Wingdings	✌✍☜☞☝♋♌♍♎♏♐♑♒♓🗀🗁🗎🗐🗏🗒🗓🗔🖱🖲☯☸✠❝✎✁
Wingdings-Regular	✌✍☜☞☝♋♌♍♎♏♐♑♒♓🗀🗁🗎🗐🗏🗒🗓🗔🖱🖲☯☸✠❝✎✁
ZapfChancery-MediumItalic	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
ZapfDingbats	✡✢✣✤✥✦✧❁❂❃❄❅❆✐✑✒✓✔✕✖✗✘✙✚✛✜❝❞✂✃✄✆✇

Adobe, PostScript, the Adobe logo and the PostScript logo are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated which may be registered in certain jurisdictions.

Fonts contained in this product may be copyrighted, trademarked or licensed by:
Adobe Systems Incorporated, AlphaOmega Typography, Apple Computer, Inc., H. Berthold AG, Ludlow Type Foundry
International Typeface Corporation, Kingsley/ATF Type Corporation, Letraset Typeface
Linotype-Hell AG and/or its subsidiaries, Marcel Olive, Microsoft Corporation, The Monotype Corporation, Nebiolo,

(Print Sample)

9.6 PCL Font List

Font#	Font	Pitch/Point
000	Courier	scalable
001	CG Times	scalable
002	CG Times Bold	scalable
003	CG Times Italic	scalable
004	CG Times Bold Italic	scalable
005	CG Omega	scalable
006	CG Omega Bold	scalable
007	CG Omega Italic	scalable
008	CG Omega Bold Italic	scalable
009	Coronet	scalable
010	Clarendon Condensed	scalable
011	Univers Medium	scalable
012	Univers Bold	scalable
013	Univers Medium Italic	scalable
014	Univers Bold Italic	scalable
015	Univers Medium Condensed	scalable
016	Univers Bold Condensed	scalable
017	Univers Medium Condensed Italic	scalable
018	Univers Bold Condensed Italic	scalable
019	Antique Olive	scalable
020	Antique Olive Bold	scalable
021	Antique Olive Italic	scalable
022	Garamond Antiqua	scalable
023	Garamond Halbfett	scalable
024	Garamond Kursiv	scalable
025	Garamond Kursiv Halbfett	scalable
026	Marigold	scalable
027	Albertus Medium	scalable
028	Albertus Extra Bold	scalable
029	Arial	scalable
030	Arial Bold	scalable
031	Arial Italic	scalable

Font#	Font	Pitch/Point
032	Arial Bold Italic	scalable
033	Times New	scalable
034	Times New Bold	scalable
035	Times New Italic	scalable
036	Times New Bold Italic	scalable
037	Helvetica	scalable
038	Helvetica Bold	scalable
039	Helvetica Oblique	scalable
040	Helvetica Bold Oblique	scalable
041	Helvetica Narrow	scalable
042	Helvetica Narrow Bold	scalable
043	Helvetica Narrow Oblique	scalable
044	Helvetica Narrow Bold Oblique	scalable
045	Palatino Roman	scalable
046	Palatino Bold	scalable
047	Palatino Italic	scalable
048	Palatino Bold Italic	scalable
049	ITC Avant Garde Gothic Book	scalable
050	ITC Avant Garde Gothic Demi	scalable
051	ITC Avant Garde Gothic Book Oblique	scalable
052	ITC Avant Garde Gothic Demi Oblique	scalable
053	ITC Bookman Light	scalable
054	ITC Bookman Demi	scalable
055	ITC Bookman Light Italic	scalable
056	ITC Bookman Demi Italic	scalable
057	New Century Schoolbook Roman	scalable
058	New Century Schoolbook Bold	scalable
059	New Century School Book Italic	scalable
060	New Century Schoolbook Bold Italic	scalable
061	Times Roman	scalable
062	Times Bold	scalable
063	Times Italic	scalable
064	Times Bold Italic	scalable
065	ITC Zapf Chancery Medium Italic	scalable

Font#	Font	Pitch/Point
066	ITC Zapf Dingbats	scalable
067	Symbol	scalable
068	Symbol	scalable
069	Wingdings	scalable
070	Courier Bold	scalable
071	Courier Italic	scalable
072	Courier Bold Italic	scalable
073	Letter Gothic	scalable
074	Letter Gothic Bold	scalable
075	Letter Gothic Italic	scalable
076	CourierPS	scalable
077	CourierPS Bold	scalable
078	CourierPS Oblique	scalable
079	CourierPS Bold Oblique	scalable
080	Line Printer	16.67/8.52
081	Line Printer	16.67/8.52
082	Line Printer	16.67/8.52
083	Line Printer	16.67/8.52
084	Line Printer	16.67/8.52
085	Line Printer	16.67/8.52
086	Line Printer	16.67/8.52
087	Line Printer	16.67/8.52
088	Line Printer	16.67/8.52
089	Line Printer	16.67/8.52

9.7 Glossary

Button	Function
10BASE-T/100BASE-TX/1000BASE-TX	Types of specifications in compliance with the Ethernet standard. Cables made of two stranded copper wire rods are used. Communication speed is 10Mbps with 10Base-T, 100Mbps with 100Base-TX, and 1000Mbps with 1000Base-TX.
APOP	Abbreviation of Authenticated Post Office Protocol. An authentication method of improved safety by encrypting the password; ordinary POP uses an unencrypted password which is used to receive E-mails.
Client	A computer which uses services provided by servers through the network.
DHCP	Abbreviation of Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol. A protocol for a client machine on the TCP/IP network to automatically read the setting for the network from a server. Only by controlling the IP addresses for the DHCP clients collectively with the DHCP server, a network can be easily constructed avoiding duplicate addresses.
DNS	Abbreviation of Domain Name System. A system to allow to acquire an appropriate IP address from the host name in the network environment. Users can specify the name of the host instead of the IP address which is difficult to memorize and distinguish and access the other personal computer on the network.
FTP	Abbreviation of File Transfer Protocol. A protocol used to transfer files on the TCP/IP network such as Internet, Intranet, etc.
Gateway	Hardware or software serving as a point connecting networks. Not only connecting, it converts the format, address, protocol, etc. of the data according to the network to be connected.
Hard disk	Mass storage device to save data. The data is maintained even if the power is turned OFF.
HTTP	Abbreviation of HyperText Transfer Protocol. A protocol used to transmit or receive data between a web server and client (web browser, etc.). Files of image, voice, animation, etc. correlated with the document can be exchanged including the expression form and other information.
IP address	A code (address) to identify individual network devices on the Internet. Comprises 4 sets of figures of 3 digits at the maximum such as 192.168.1.10. An IP address is allocated to all computers and other devices connected to the Internet.
IPP	Abbreviation of Internet Printing Protocol. A protocol to control the transmission and reception of printing data or printing devices through the Internet or other TCP/IP networks. Data can be transmitted to a remote printer through the Internet and printed there.
LAN	Abbreviation of Local Area Network. A network connecting computers on the same floor, in the same building, in the buildings nearby, etc.
LPR/LPD	Abbreviation of Line Printer Request/Line Printer Daemon. A type of printing through a network of the WindowsNT system or UNIX system. Printing data from Windows or UNIX can be transmitted to a printer on a network using TCP/IP.
Memory	Unit to save data temporarily. Data in some memory is erased when the power is turned OFF and not erased in others.

Button	Function
NDS	Abbreviation of Novell Directory Service. Shared resources such as servers, printers, user information, etc. on the network or information such access authority of each user to those resources can be centrally controlled in a hierarchical structure.
NetWare	Network OS developed by Novel. Uses NetWare IPX/SPX as the communication protocol.
OS	Abbreviation of Operating System. Basic software to control the computer system. Windows, MacOS, and Unix are examples.
PDF	Abbreviation of Portable Document Format. One of electronic documents (extension; .pdf) in the format based on PostScript which can be accessed using Adobe Acrobat Reader, software free of charge.
ping	Abbreviation of Packed Internet Groper. A command used to confirm the communication situation with a distant device under the TCP/IP network environment.
POP	Abbreviation of Post Office Protocol. A protocol to receive electronic mails from a mail server. Currently, POP3, version 3 of POP, is mainly used.
Port number	Number to distinguish each communication port of multiple processes working in the computers on the network. A same port cannot be used for multiple processes.
PostScript	Representative page description language generally used for printing requiring specifically high quality, developed by US Adobe.
Printer driver	Software acting as an intermediate between the computer and printer.
Proxy Server	A server provided to act as the connecting point with the outside instead of each client in the connection with Internet and to secure the security of the whole system efficiently.
Pserver	Print server module under the NetWare environment. Monitors, alters, pauses, resumes or stops the print job.
Resolution	Degree how correctly the details of images or prints can be reproduced.
SMB	Abbreviation of Server Message Block. A protocol used mainly to realize sharing of files or printers through the network between Windows.
SMTP	Abbreviation of Simple Mail Transfer Protocol. A protocol to transmit or transfer the electronic mails.
SNMP	Abbreviation of Simple Network Management Protocol. A control protocol using TCP/IP in the network environment.
SSL/TLS	Abbreviation of Secure Socket Layer/Transport Layer Security. An encryption system to transmit data in safe between an Web server and browser.
TCP/IP	Abbreviation of Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol. Substantially the standard protocol used for the Internet. Uses IP address to identify each network device.
TIFF	Abbreviation of Tagged Image File Format. One of the file formats to save image data (extension; .tif). Various types of image information can be saved in one image data with the “tag” representing the data type.
Web browser	Software to access web pages. Internet Explorer, Netscape Navigator, etc. are examples.

10 Index

2 Index

Numerics

1 Shot Message Indication Time *5-14*

A

Access *8-4*
Account Track *6-64*
Account track data setting file *7-30*
Account Track Registration *8-18*
Account Track Setting *6-62*
Action for Invalid Certificate *8-26*
Adding Account Track *7-4*
ADF Auto Size Select *5-47*
ADF Frame Erase Setting *6-32*
ADF Restart Timing Adjustment *3-24*
Admin./Machine Setting *6-53*
Administrator Password *6-125*
Administrator Password Setting *8-28*
Administrator Setting (controller) *4-8*, *4-23*
Administrator Setting Menu Screen *5-3*, *6-3*
Annotation Setting *6-36*
AppleTalk Setting *8-58*
ATS Permit *5-27*
ATS Setting *5-28*
Audit log report *6-25*
Authentication *8-15*
Authentication Method *6-59*
Authentication Setting *6-59*
Auto Logout *8-27*
Auto Paper Type *5-30*
Auto Reset Setting *5-16*
Auto Select of Booklet Copy *5-47*
Auto Zoom (ADF) *5-47*
Automatic Image Rotation *6-108*

B

Basic Settings (controller) *4-10*
Blank Insert *2-5*
Bonjour Setting *8-56*
Book/News *2-5*
Box Explorer *7-32*
Box Tab *8-29*
Buzzer for Job Stop Set *5-13*
Buzzer On/Off, Volume Set *5-12*
Buzzer Setting *5-12*

C

Centering Adjustment *3-26*
Change Address Registration *6-27*
Change HDD Lock Password *6-131*
Change Registered Overlay *6-27*
Change User Password *5-18*
Change User Preset Zoom *6-27*
Clamp CD Width Adjustment *3-111*
Clamp FD Position Adjustment *3-116*
Client Setting *8-51*
Coat *2-4*
Composition of User's Guide *1-2*
Configuration of Administrator Mode Screen *8-6*
Continuation Print (Copy) *6-112*
Continuation Print (Printer) *6-102*
Controller NIC Setting *6-84*
Controller Setting *4-2*

Controller Setting Menu Screen *4-2*
Copy Application Register *5-20*
Copy Output Setting Register *5-21*
Copy Reserve Operation *6-110*
Copy Screen Customize Setting *6-50*
Copy Setting *5-43*
Copy/Printer Setting *6-99*
Cover Lead Edge Adjustment *3-93*
Cover Trimming Adjustment *3-91*
Cover Up/Down CD Width Adjustment *3-114*
Curl Reform Direction *5-34*
Custom Size Reg. *2-63*

D

Default Destination Setting *5-49*
Default Screen Setting *5-15*
Default Setting *8-30*
Delete All Data *6-134*
Delete Temporary Data *6-133*
Delete Type/Weight *2-61*
Density by Original Type *5-37*
Density Setting *5-37*
Displaying Job History *7-44*
Double Parallel Position Adjustment *3-57*

E

Editing Account Track Data *7-7*
E-mail (mail address) *6-116*
E-mail data *7-24*
E-mail data setting file *7-30*
E-Mail Initial Setting *6-83*
E-Mail RX (POP) *8-45*
E-Mail TX (SMTP) *8-46*
Embossed *2-5*
Erase Outside of Original *6-31*
Except Orig. Glass (1:1) *6-31*
Exit Guide Center Position Adjustment *3-36*
Exit Guide Paper Width. Adjustment *3-40*
Exit key *1-11*
Expert Adjustment *6-30*, *6-34*

F

Feed Tray Auto Selection *5-25*
Feed Tray Setting *5-25*
File Form Setting (E-Mail) *5-52*
File Form Setting (FTP) *5-52*
File Form Setting (HDD) *5-52*
File Form Setting (SMB) *5-52*
Fine *2-5*
Finisher Adjustment (FD-503) *3-43*
Finisher Adjustment (FS-521) *3-31*
Finisher Adjustment (LS-505) *3-66*
Finisher Adjustment (PB-502/PB-503) *3-91*
Finisher Adjustment (SD-506) *3-70*
Fixing Prerotation Setting *6-104*
Fold Paper Width Adjustment *3-83*
Folder/User Box List Delete *6-127*
Font pattern list *6-25*
FTP (FTP server address) *6-116*, *7-24*
FTP data setting file *7-30*
FTP Send Setting *8-48*
FTP Server Setting *8-49*
FTP Setting *8-48*, *8-49*
Function Key Register *5-22*
Function Setting *5-25*

G

Gap Adjustment between LPH Chips *3-28*

Gate Position Adjustment *3-63*
Gateway Address *6-81*
Glue *3-101*
Glue Finish Position Adjustment *3-101*
Glue Form Finish Position Adjustment *3-104*
Glue Start Position Adjustment *3-98*

H

Half Fold Position Adjustment *3-48*, *3-78*
HDD (Box No.) *6-116*, *7-24*
HDD Data Auto Delete Period *6-130*
HDD data setting file *7-30*
HDD Encryption Setting *6-135*
HDD Management Setting *6-127*
Hole-Punch Vertical Position Adjustment *3-45*
http communication setting *6-82*

I

I/F Timeout (controller) *4-7*, *4-18*
Image Density Selection *5-41*
Import/Export *8-9*
Individual Function Change Setting *5-31*
Individual Function Change Setting (Copy Setting) *5-47*
Individual Function Change Setting (Scan Setting) *5-52*
Initial by Key Counter Insert *5-46*
Initial Setting *5-43*
Interface Setting *8-34*
Interruption Suspend Setting *6-109*
Introduction *1-2*
IP Address *6-81*
IP Address (Tandem) *6-81*
IP Filtering *8-41*
IP NIC Setting *6-85*
IPP Setting *8-47*
IPsec Setting *8-42*

J

Job History Setting *7-15*
Job Spool Setting *8-33*
JSP Setting *8-61*

K

Key Response Time *5-17*
Keyboard Type Setting *6-48*

L

Language Setting *5-10*
Line Speed Setting *6-81*
Lock/Delete Mode Memory *6-27*
LPH Adjustment *3-28*
Lunch Hour Off Setting *6-22*

M

Machine Adjustment *3-10*
Machine NIC Setting *6-80*
Machine Setting *8-12*
Machine Status Screen *1-4*
Magnification Adjustment *3-10*
Maintenance Tab *8-8*
Management List Print *6-24*
Meter Count *8-8*
Multi Folder (Fold) Adjustment *3-48*
Multi Folder (Hole-Punch) Adjustment *3-43*
Multi Monitor functions *7-15*

N

NetWare Setting *8-57*
NetWare Status *8-58*
Network Setting *6-80*
Network Setting Clear *8-14*

Network Tab *8-40*
Non Registered User/Output Setting *6-79*
Non-Image Area Erase Setting *6-33*

O

On - APS/AMS Only *6-31*
Online Assistance *8-13*
OpenAPI Setting *8-59*
Orig. Glass Auto Size Select *5-47*
Orig. Scan Area Setting *6-31*
Orig./Out Bind Direction Set *5-47*
Original Bind Direction *5-47*
Original Glass AMS *5-47*
Original Glass SDF Method *6-113*

P

Page No. Position (Booklet) *6-103*
PageScope Web Connection *1-13*
PageScope Web Connection Outlines *8-2*
PageScope Web Connection Setting *8-2*
Paper Count Limit *6-46*
Paper Length Adjustment *3-68*, *3-121*
Paper Setting *2-2*
Paper Type Specifications *2-4*
Paper Weight Conversion Chart *2-6*
Paper Width Adjustment *3-43*, *3-66*, *3-118*
Paper Width Adjustment (Staple *3-33*
Password for Non-Business Hours Setting *6-23*
PCL Setting (controller) *4-10*
Perfect Binder Adjustment *3-91*
Perfect Binding Setting *6-44*
PFU Preliminary Dry Setting *5-29*
Photo Mode Density Selection *5-40*
Plain *2-5*
Plug-in Form Password (controller) *4-8*, *4-19*
Power Save Setting *6-12*
PrePrinted *2-4*
Preset Density Setting *5-39*
Print Setting (SMB) *8-52*
Print Setting (Web Service Setting) *8-54*
Print Setting Tab *8-30*
Printer CD-Mag. Adjustment 3-14, 3-16
Printer Centering Adjustment *3-26*
Printer FD-Mag. Adjustment 3-10, 3-12
Printer Restart Timing 3-18, 3-20
Printer Setting (controller) *4-3*, *4-10*
Proof Print (1st Sheet) Setting *6-107*
PS Setting *4-10*

R

Register Administrator *6-53*
Register Type/Weight *2-54*
Relay Stacker Adjustment *3-118*
Remote Monitor functions *7-15*
Remote Panel functions *7-15*
Remote Panel Setting *7-15*
Report Type (controller) *4-2*, *4-9*
Reset *8-14*
Reset Function Setting *5-45*
Reset Setting *5-43*
Restrict User Access Setting *6-27*
ROM Version *8-9*

S

Saddle Stitcher Adjustment *3-70*
Sample Print Setting *6-105*
Scan Application Register *5-24*

Scan Destination Register *6-116*
Scan Function (E-mail) *6-27*
Scan Function (FTP) *6-27*
Scan Function (HDD) *6-27*
Scan Function (SMB) *6-27*
Scan Screen Customize Setting *6-51*
Scan Setting *5-49*
Scan Setting (controller) *4-8*, *4-21*
Scan Stop by Pulling Out Tray *6-111*
Scan Tab *8-36*
Scanner Restart Timing Adjustment *3-22*
Scanner Setting *8-39*
Scanner Settings *8-55*
Screen Customize Setting *6-49*
SDF Auto Setting *6-114*
Security Setting *6-125*
Security Strengthen Mode *6-136*
Security Tab *8-15*
Select Printer Setting *8-35*
Select Printer Setting (controller) *4-7*, *4-16*
Select Tray When APS Cancel *5-47*
Send Address Edit/Delete *6-116*
Sensitive Drum Memory Recovery Mode *3-125*
Setting Account Track Data *7-4*
Setting Scan Transmission Function *7-18*
Shortcut Key Register *5-20*
Size Memory Recovery Mode *3-123*, *3-124*
Size Setting *6-35*
Skew Detection Threshold *5-35*
SMB *7-24*
SMB (shared folder) *6-116*
SMB data setting file *7-30*
SMB Setting *8-50*
SNMP Setting *8-50*
Specifications for Each Machine Setting File Type *7-30*
Spine Corner form Position Adjustment *3-96*
Spool Print Jobs in HDD before RIP (controller) *4-7*, *4-17*
SSL/TLS Setting *8-20*
Stacker Adjustment *3-66*
Staple Auto Reset *5-47*
Staple Center Adjustment *3-70*
Staple Center Position Adjustment *3-31*
Staple Paper Width Adjustment *3-72*
Staple Pitch Adjustment *3-75*
Stapler Position Adjustment *3-31*
Status Hold When Auto Reset *5-47*
Status Notification Setting *8-10*
Store Screen Customize Set *6-52*
Sub Compile CD Width Adjustment *3-109*
Subject *8-36*
Subnet Mask *6-81*
Synchronize User/Account Track *6-59*
System Connection *6-115*
System Requirements *8-2*
System Setting *5-10*
System Setting (Administrator) *6-12*

T

TCP Socket Setting *8-60*
TCP/IP Setting *6-80*, *8-40*
Temperature Adjustment *3-106*
Text *8-37*
TIFF Setting (controller) *4-10*
Time Adjustment Setting *8-45*

Time and Date Setting *6-14*
Timer Action On/Off Set *6-20*
Timer Reserve Setting *6-18*
Timing Adjustment *3-18*
Touch Panel Adjustment *5-54*
Transmitting Machine Setting File *7-24*
Tray Setting *2-7*
Tri-Fold Position Adjustment *3-80*
Tri-Fold-in Position Adjustment *3-50*
Tri-Fold-out Position Adjustment *3-54*
Trimming Adjustment *3-85*
Trimming Receiver Adjustment *3-88*

U

Unfitting Cover Stop *6-47*, *6-49*
Unit Setting *5-11*
Use management list *6-25*
Useful Paper Weight *6-44*
User Auth./ Account Track *6-56*
User Authentication Setting *6-71*
User Call *6-115*
User management list *6-24*
User Preset Zoom Setting *5-42*
User Registration *8-16*
Utility Menu Screen *1-10*, *5-2*
Utility/Counter key *1-10*

W

Web Browser Settings *8-3*
Web Service Setting *8-53*
Web Utilities *1-12*
Web Utilities Setting *7-2*
Weekly Timer On/Off Setting *6-16*
Weekly Timer Setting *6-16*
WINS Setting *8-50*

Z

Z-Fold Position Adjustment *3-60*



KONICA MINOLTA

http://konicaminolta.com

Copyright
2010 KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC.

A0G6956222

Printed in China
2010. 7